

Secure Perfect®

Access Control and Integrated
Security Management System

Installation Manual

v6



imagination at work



Secure Perfect® 6.1 Installation Manual

*GE Infrastructure, Security
791 Park of Commerce Boulevard
Suite 100
Boca Raton, Florida 33487
(561) 998-6100*

Part Number: 460558004A
November 2004

**Copyright © 2004 GE Security, Inc.
All Rights Reserved
Printed in the USA**

This publication may contain examples of windows and reports used in daily operations. Examples include fictitious names of individuals and companies. Any similarity to names and addresses of actual business enterprises and persons is entirely coincidental.

This document contains proprietary information of General Electric Company, USA and is furnished to its customer solely to assist that customer in the installation, testing, operation, and/or maintenance of the equipment described. This document shall not be reproduced in whole or in part nor shall its contents be disclosed to any third party without the written approval of GE.

Secure Perfect is a registered trademark of GE Security, Inc.

Access, Active Directory, Directory File Services, DirectX, Internet Explorer, Microsoft, .NET, SQL Mail, SQL Server, Windows, Windows NT, and Windows XP are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Adobe and Acrobat are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Citrix is a trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc.

Crystal Reports is a registered trademark of Crystal Decisions.

Dell is a registered trademark of Dell Computer Corporation.

Digi is a registered trademark of Digi International.

FlashPoint is a registered trademark of Integral Technologies.

Intel and Pentium are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.

Netscape and Netscape Navigator are registered trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation in the United States and other countries.

PassagePoint is a trademark of Stopware, Inc.

pcANYWHERE is a trademark of Symantec Corporation.

Yahoo is a registered trademark of Yahoo! Inc.

Contents

1. Introduction to Secure Perfect 6.1	1.1
Quick Start Guide	1.2
Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software	
Requirements	1.3
Hardware	1.3
Software	1.4
Operating Systems and Configuration Summary	1.5
Before You Begin	1.6
What's New in Secure Perfect 6.1?	1.7
Installation and Setup Outlines	1.11
Preparing a Windows 2000 Professional	
or Windows XP Professional	
as a Secure Perfect Server or Client	1.12
Preparing a Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced	
and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server	1.14
Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1	1.16
Notational and Typographical	
Conventions in this Manual	1.19
Related Documentation	1.20
Newly Removed Sections from this Manual	1.21
Training Sources	1.21
 2. Preparing the Windows 2000 Professional	
 or XP Professional Computer	2.1
Pre-Installation Checklist	2.2
Supported Microcontrollers	2.2
Installing the Network Board	2.3
Determining Computer Type	2.3
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain	2.3
OPTIONAL: Installing the Capture Card	2.4
Preparing the Operating System	2.4
Setting Up Your Monitor	2.5
Setting the Network Properties	2.5
Defining User Accounts	2.6
Assigning User Passwords	2.7
Item Specific to Windows 2000 Professional	2.7
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration	2.7
Items Specific to Windows XP Professional	2.8
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration	2.8
Windows XP User Password	2.9

Matching User Information	2.9
User Logon Modifications.....	2.9
Enable Network Folder Sharing.....	2.9
Disable Simple File Sharing.....	2.10
What's Next?	2.10
3. Preparing the Windows 2000 Standard Edition Server or 2003 Standard Edition Server	3.1
Pre-Installation Checklist	3.2
Installing the Network Board	3.3
Determining Server Type	3.3
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain	3.3
Setting the Network Properties	3.4
Setting Up Your Monitor	3.5
Defining User Accounts	3.5
Assigning User Passwords	3.6
Preparing the Operating System	3.6
Setting Up Your Monitor	3.7
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration	3.8
Items Specific to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server	3.8
Enabling Distributed COM Configuration	3.8
Windows User Password.....	3.9
Matching User Information	3.9
User Logon Modifications.....	3.10
Enable Network Folder Sharing.....	3.10
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000	3.10
Verifying Microsoft SQL Server Installation	3.13
Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Enterprise Manager	3.14
Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Service Manager	3.16
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack	3.18
What's Next?	3.19
4. Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ or Professional Edition Server Software.....	4.1
Prepare to Install	4.2
Selecting Installation Type	4.4
TYPICAL Installation	4.5
Installation of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a	4.5
CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ/Professional Edition	4.6
Windows 2000 Professional	4.10
Windows XP Professional:	4.10

For Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 Users	4.10
Configuring Windows Firewall	4.10
Configuring Launch and Access Permissions	4.14
Configuring Local Security Settings	4.16
Creating a New Registry Key	4.17
Restart Computers	4.18
Licensing Your Secure Perfect System	4.19
Setting Services to Automatic Startup	4.20
Server Folder Structure	4.22
Server Folders	4.23
Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts	4.25
Adding Additional Clients to the Database	4.25
Pinging Additional Client Computers	4.25
Adding Clients to the Database	4.27
What's Next?	4.29
5. Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition	
Server Software	5.1
Prepare to Install	5.2
Selecting Installation Type	5.5
TYPICAL Installation	5.6
CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition	5.10
Custom Configuration Options	5.12
When Enterprise Custom Configurations are Complete:	5.70
Licensing Your Secure Perfect System	5.71
Setting Services to Automatic Startup	5.72
Server Folder Structure	5.74
Server Folders	5.75
Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts	5.77
Adding Additional Clients to the Database	5.77
Pinging Additional Client Computers	5.77
Adding Clients to the Database	5.79
What's Next?	5.81
6. Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition:	
Global Database Server	6.1
Benefits of Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition	6.2
Sample Configuration Overview	6.3
Global Edition Definitions	6.4
Pre-Installation Checklist	6.6
Sequence of Global System Installation	6.7
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain	6.8
Prepare to Install	6.9
Selecting Installation Type	6.12

CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Database	
Server	6.13
Instructions Specific to Windows 2000, Windows 2003, and Advanced Server:	6.13
Custom Configuration Options	6.17
When Global Custom Configurations are Complete:	6.90
Licensing Your Secure Perfect System	6.91
Setting Services to Automatic Startup	6.92
Server Folder Structure	6.94
Server Folders	6.95
Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts	6.96
Adding a New User Account	6.97
What's Next?	6.99
7. Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition:	
Regional Database Server	7.1
Pre-Installation Checklist	7.2
Sequence of Global System Installation	7.3
Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain	7.4
Prepare to Install	7.5
Selecting Installation Type	7.8
CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Regional Database	
Server	7.9
Instructions Specific to Windows 2000, Windows 2003, and Advanced Server:	7.9
Custom Configuration Options	7.14
When Global Custom Configurations are Complete:	7.85
CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.1 Global Edition on a Windows	
Professional Operating System	7.86
Instructions Specific to Windows Professional Operating System Installations	7.86
Licensing Your Secure Perfect System	7.91
Setting Services to Automatic Startup	7.92
Server Folder Structure	7.94
Server Folders	7.95
Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts	7.97
Adding a New Global Group to the Domain	7.97
What's Next?	7.99
8. Configuring File Replication and Global Edition	
Options	8.1
Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft Directory File	
Services	8.2
Creating Dfs Root	8.3

Creating a New Dfs Link.....	8.8
Creating a New Replica.....	8.11
Converting a Secure Perfect Stand-Alone Database to a Global Edition Database	8.13
Upgrading a Global Edition Global Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1	8.16
Before You Begin	8.16
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	8.17
Stop Secure Perfect Services on the SP 6.0 Global Database Server Computer	8.17
Back Up Entire Secure Perfect Folder	8.18
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager	8.18
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard	8.18
Install Secure Perfect 6.1	8.20
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	8.24
Upgrade Regional Database Server Computers	8.25
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code	8.25
Upgrading a Global Edition Regional Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1	8.26
Before You Begin	8.27
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	8.27
Stop Secure Perfect Services on the SP 6.0 Regional Database Server Computer	8.27
Back Up Entire Secure Perfect Folder	8.28
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Regional Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager	8.28
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard	8.29
Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System.....	8.30
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	8.33
Upgrade Additional Client Computers to Each Regional Database Server Computer	8.35
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code	8.35
Backup of Global Edition Databases	8.35
Backing Up the Global Server Databases	8.35
Backing Up the Regional Server Databases	8.36
Restoring Global Edition Databases	8.36
Restoring at the Global Database Server	8.36
Restoring at the Regional Database Server	8.37
Adding Additional Clients to the Database	8.38
Pinging Additional Client Computers	8.38
Adding Clients to the Database	8.40
Uninstalling a Global Edition System	8.42
What's Next?	8.44

9. Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients	9.1
Defining Additional Clients	9.2
Pinging the First Time License Computer	9.2
Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Additional Client Computer	9.4
Selecting Installation Type	9.6
TYPICAL Installation	9.7
CUSTOM Installation	9.8
Licensing the Client Computer	9.13
Setting Services to Automatic Startup	9.13
Global Edition Client Installations	9.15
What's Next?	9.15
Logging On to Client Computer	9.15
Viewing Imaging Status	9.17
Windows 2000 Imaging Login Setup	9.17
Setting Share Permissions on the Secure Perfect Server if Using a Domain	9.19
Client Folder Structure	9.20
Client Folders	9.20
What's Next?	9.21
10. Licensing the Secure Perfect System.....	10.1
Licensing Capacities	10.2
Licensing Secure Perfect	10.3
Obtaining the License	10.3
Entering the License Key	10.6
About Secure Perfect: License Summary	10.12
What's Next?	10.13
11. Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1.....	11.1
Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview	11.2
Starting Secure Perfect 6.1 and Logging On	11.4
Accessing Help	11.6
Defining Additional User Accounts	11.6
Adding Yourself as an Operator in Secure Perfect 6.1	11.7
Initial Setup of Secure Perfect Records	11.7
Setting E-mail Accounts	11.7
Changing the Secure Perfect Server Computer Name	11.7
Server Computer Name in System Properties.....	11.8
Server Computer Name Change using SPServer.exe Utility.....	11.9
Re-Creating a Microsoft SQL Server Registration	11.11

12. Logging Off and Shutting Down.....	12.1
Exiting Secure Perfect 6.1	12.2
Quitting Secure Perfect Application	12.2
Shutting Down	12.2
Logging Off of Windows	12.3
Automatic Client Shutdown	12.3
 13. Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server.....	 13.1
Overview	13.2
Professional System Recovery Checklist	13.2
Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Recovery	13.2
Backing Up	13.3
Backing Up the Entire Secure Perfect Folder	13.4
Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Databases	13.5
Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos	13.6
Restoring	13.6
Restoring Databases on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server	13.7
Restoring Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos ..	13.8
 14. Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server.....	 14.1
Overview	14.2
Enterprise System Recovery Checklist	14.2
Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Recovery	14.2
Backing Up	14.3
Backing Up the Entire Secure Perfect Folder	14.5
Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfect Database	14.5
Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive	14.7
Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory	14.8
Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos	14.10
Backing Up the Secure Perfect Folder	14.10
Restoring	14.11
Restoring Secure Perfect 6.1 SecurePerfect Database	14.11
Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfect Database from Tape	14.13
Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive	14.14
Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive from Tape - SQL 2000	14.15
Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory	14.16
Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory from Tape	14.18
Restoring the Secure Perfect Folder	14.19
Reclaiming Hard Drive Space	14.19

Shrinking the Database	14.20
Other Maintenance Options	14.20
15. Uninstalling Secure Perfect or Deleting a Database. 15.1	
Uninstalling Secure Perfect 6.1 Software	15.2
Before You Begin	15.2
Uninstalling	15.2
Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall	15.4
Deleting the Database	15.6
Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Server	15.6
Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Server	15.7
Removing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition	15.8
Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE)	
- Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional	15.9
16. Upgrading Your 6.0 System to Secure Perfect 6.1..... 16.1	
Upgrading Versions Prior to Secure Perfect 6.0	16.2
Upgrading Secure Perfect Global Edition Computers	16.2
Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1	
- PROFESSIONAL SERVERS ONLY	16.2
Scenario 1 - Same Computer	16.3
Before You Begin	16.4
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	16.4
Stop Secure Perfect Services	
on Secure Perfect 6.0	16.4
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder	16.5
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases	16.5
Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System.....	16.7
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	16.8
Upgrade Client Computers	16.10
Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code.....	16.10
Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers	16.10
Before You Begin	16.11
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	16.11
Set Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Server	16.12
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server	16.12
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder	16.13
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.0	
Server.....	16.14
Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases on	
Secure Perfect 6.1 Server	16.15
Run Create SP Database.....	16.16
License Your Secure Perfect 6.1 System	16.17
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos	
to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server.....	16.17

Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	16.18
Upgrade Client Computers	16.19
Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code	16.20
Uninstall SP 6.0 from Original Computer	16.20
Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1	
- ENTERPRISE SERVERS ONLY	16.21
Scenario 1 - Same Computer	16.21
Before You Begin	16.22
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	16.22
Stop Secure Perfect Services on	
Secure Perfect 6.0 Server	16.23
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder	16.24
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL	
Server Enterprise Manager.....	16.24
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard.....	16.26
Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases	16.27
Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System.....	16.27
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	16.29
Upgrade Client Computers	16.30
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code	16.31
Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers	16.31
Before You Begin	16.32
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords.....	16.32
Set Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Server	16.32
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server	16.33
Back Up Secure Perfect Folder	16.34
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL	
Server Enterprise Manager.....	16.34
Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.1	
Server.....	16.36
Run Create SP Database.....	16.40
License Your Secure Perfect 6.1 System.....	16.41
Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos	
to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server.....	16.41
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	16.41
Upgrade Client Computers	16.43
Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code	16.43
Uninstall Secure Perfect 6.0 from Original Computer	16.43
Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1	
- CUSTOM SPLIT INSTALLATION	16.44
Before You Begin	16.46
Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords	
on the Application Computer	16.46
Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server	
on the Application Computer	16.46

Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer	16.47
Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager	16.47
OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard	16.49
Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System.....	16.51
Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number	16.52
Upgrade Client Computers	16.54
Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code	16.54
Upgrading Client Computers	16.54
Stop Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Client Computer	16.55
Install Secure Perfect 6.1 Software	16.56
Upgrade Configuration Notes - Ensuring Success	16.56
Appendix A: UL Certification Requirements	A.1
UL Specifications and Requirements	A.2
Index	
Software Defect Report	
Customer Survey	

Chapter 1: Introduction to Secure Perfect 6.1

Welcome to Secure Perfect 6.1! This manual provides information for system administrators to set up, install, and configure the Secure Perfect 6.1 system.

Throughout this manual, reference to Secure Perfect is represented as “SP” in text content to avoid repetition where the product name and /or version may have already been established.



In this chapter:

[“Quick Start Guide” on page 1.2](#)

[“Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements” on page 1.3](#)

[“Operating Systems and Configuration Summary” on page 1.5](#)

[“Before You Begin” on page 1.6](#)

[“What’s New in Secure Perfect 6.1?” on page 1.7](#)

[“Installation and Setup Outlines” on page 1.11](#)

[“Notational and Typographical Conventions in this Manual” on page 1.19](#)

[“Related Documentation” on page 1.20](#)

[“Training Sources” on page 1.21](#)

Quick Start Guide

New Installation

1. Install Operating System (choose one)

"Preparing the Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Computer" on page 2.1

"Preparing the Windows 2000 Standard Edition Server or 2003 Standard Edition Server" on page 3.1



2. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 (choose one)

"Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ or Professional Edition Server Software" on page 4.1

"Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition Server Software" on page 5.1

"Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Global Database Server" on page 6.1

"Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Regional Database Server" on page 7.1



3. License

"Licensing the Secure Perfect System" on page 10.1



Also, refer to **"Installation and Setup Outlines"** on page 1.11.

Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements

Note: Your Secure Perfect 6.1 system *WILL NOT* install unless minimum requirements have been met.

Hardware

The following are recommended minimum hardware requirements:

- ☐ Intel® Pentium® III 9xx MHz
- ☐ 512 MB RAM for Server Computers
256 MB RAM for Client Computers
- ☐ SVGA Monitor, 1024 by 768 resolution, 16-Bit High Color
- ☐ 101 Keyboard
- ☐ Mouse or Trackball device
- ☐ Network card
- ☐ 150 MB hard drive space for Secure Perfect with a default database
- ☐ Client Computer: If using Imaging and a video camera (as the image source), an approved image capture card

Hard drive space will vary depending on your system environment. If you elect to partition your hard drive, verify that sufficient space remains in your system drive for your program files to load properly.

Note: If using the Digital Video Surveillance option, increasing the processor speed and memory may be required to increase performance in your specific system.

The following items are recommended:

- ☐ Approved modem(s) if using dial-up micro(s)

- ☐ Support modem for pcANYWHERE
- ☐ Tape drive
- ☐ Digi® serial-port expander to provide additional ports if using micro(s) and/or CCTV devices

Software

The following are recommended minimum software requirements:

- ☐ One of the following, based on the system that you purchased:
 - Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional (Service Pack auto installs with Secure Perfect 6.1.) or Windows XP Professional
 - OPTIONAL: Microsoft Office Windows XP Access 2002 or Microsoft Access 2002
 - Microsoft Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server and applicable Service Packs
 - Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition (Service Pack auto installs with Secure Perfect 6.1.)
- ☐ Internet Explorer (6.1 or later with applicable Service Pack)

The following item is recommended:

- ☐ Symantec pcANYWHERE Version 9.3 or higher

Operating Systems and Configuration Summary

The Secure Perfect 6.1 software is supported by operating systems as listed in [Table 1-1: “Operating Systems and Configuration Summary”](#).

Table 1-1: Operating Systems and Configuration Summary

Operating System	Configuration
Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Secure Perfect Server or client Software Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine (MSDE) and applicable SQL Service Pack (installed automatically with Secure Perfect software). Imaging: The feature is installed automatically on the Server as an Imaging workstation. Clients: The system supports five system-wide clients (any of these clients can be configured as communications clients for hosting micros). Micros: The system supports 32 system-wide micros (32 on the Server or up to 16 per communications client). <p>(Also, review “Licensing Capacities” on page 10.2.)</p>
Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Secure Perfect Server or client Software Cluster technology or Global Edition selections in the custom-level installation provide new architecting options. Allows database and file Server to be placed on separate Windows Server computers. Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition Database (user provided) and applicable Service Pack (installs automatically with Secure Perfect 6.1). Imaging: The feature is installed but not recommended for production as an Imaging workstation. Clients: Secure Perfect supports 25 system-wide clients (any can be configured as communications clients for hosting micros). Micros: Secure Perfect supports 256 system-wide micros (32 on the Server and up to 64 per communications client). <p>(Also, review “Licensing Capacities” on page 10.2.)</p>
Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Secure Perfect Client Software Imaging: The option is installed automatically. <p>(Also, review “Licensing Capacities” on page 10.2.)</p>

Before You Begin

Note: You will not be able to successfully complete your Secure Perfect 6.1 installation without access to the GE security business Web site. If you do not have Web access, call GE Customer Support at 1-800-428-2733 for assistance.

1. You will need a valid GE Customer Support Web site login in order to enable the Secure Perfect 6.1 licensing program. The steps for obtaining a login are detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#), in the section entitled “Obtaining the License” on page 10.3.
2. If you received a Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE:
 - Your Server computer is preloaded with the operating system, hardware, Symantec™ pcANYWHERE™, Microsoft SQL Server 2000® Standard Edition or MSDE, default Secure Perfect 6.1 database, Internet Explorer®, and Secure Perfect 6.1 application.
 - Your client computer is preloaded with the operating system, pcANYWHERE, Internet Explorer, and Secure Perfect 6.1 application.
 - Your system is licensed according to your purchased items such as number of clients, number of readers, and number of Imaging clients.

At this time, you are ready to go to [Chapter 11 - Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1](#).

3. Several optional features are available for your Secure Perfect system:
 - DVR Surveillance is an integrated event-driven video recording option, enabling you to access live and recorded video, and initiate camera control at any workstation within a Secure Perfect system.
 - CCTV interfaces are available for your Secure Perfect 6.1 system. You can automatically control supported CCTV cameras based on alarm events within Secure Perfect 6.1. For details, refer to the document, *Secure Perfect CCTV Interfaces*, on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format.
 - Microsoft Access 2002 can be installed and used solely in creating custom reports. Refer to the document, *Secure Perfect and*

Microsoft Access 2002, on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format.

- Visitor System Interface Capability Powered by PassagePoint Software of Stopware, Inc OR Access Sentry CI³ enables visitor badging and lobby management software to interface with Secure Perfect. This interface is purchased separately and licensed through Secure Perfect. For complete details, contact your GE security business sales representative.
- Report Commander for Secure Perfect, Web browser based reporting feature for designing custom reports using Internet Explorer, using multiple data sources, and accessing through Secure Perfect. This option is purchased separately and licensed through Secure Perfect. For complete details, contact your GE security business sales representative.
- Support for Thin Client virtual workstation technology. The Thin Client installation executable is included on the Secure Perfect CD.

What's New in Secure Perfect 6.1?

Guard Tour: This feature makes use of two new forms in Secure Perfect, Guard Tours and Tour Point. A Guard Tour is an inspection of your facility premises, by a security guard. The officer stops at pre-determined tour points along the way, where a digital input (DI) is triggered or a badge is presented to a reader so that the Secure Perfect system can track the tour progress. Each time a badge is presented to a reader, a tour point is 'hit.' DIs can also be assigned as tour points. An additional tab has been added to the Manual Control form. The Guard Tour tab of the Manual Control form displays the status of Guard Tours configured in your Secure Perfect system. Select a Guard Tour to display tour details and tour points. An occasion may arise that requires a tour to be started, paused, resumed, or stopped manually. This feature and related forms are not available for input if you are not licensed for Guard Tour.

Global Edition Enhancements:

- **Database Server and Fileserver Redundancy:** Global Editions systems can be configured for database redundancy, at the Region level. A Regional Database Server can be configured to have backup servers. Refer to the Backup Regions tab of the Region Form. If a client is not able to connect to its Regional Database Server for any reason, it fails

over to the backup Regional Server. Regional database redundancy and fileserver redundancy operate independently. One or the other, or both can fail at the same time, whether they reside on the same server computer or are configured to reside on separate computers.

- **Client Region Failover:** If you have Region backups configured, all clients in that region, by default, will fail over to the backup Region when the system detects that it cannot access the database. You might choose to clear this checkbox on the Client tab of the Client form, to prevent nonessential client failover and keep extra traffic on your system network to a minimum.

Alarms:

- **Alarm Bumping and Routing:** The Client Group Form allow you to assign Secure Perfect computers into logical Client Groups. Then, alarms can be routed to these Client Groups by time schedule or at all times. Additionally, alarms can be 'bumped' (forwarded) to one or more additional Client Groups when alarms are unacknowledged and unpurged within configured time limits.
- **Alarm Graphics Enhancements:** Alarm Graphics can now be configured for digital inputs and digital outputs. The Alarm Graphics Viewer displays active status. Right-click menu options display newly enhanced functionality. Operators for the Alarm Graphics Viewer must be assigned 'Update' and facility permissions in order to select right-click menu options. For shortcut menu functionality, rest your mouse pointer on an assigned point and right-click. The shortcut menu that displays with a right-click mouse button depends on the Point Type assigned to the point. The options allow manual control of doors.
- **Duress:** This selection determines whether the door will open when a duress PIN code (with the final digit incremented by + 1) is entered with a valid badge. This feature is configured for your Secure Perfect system on the Parameters Form, Settings Tab.

Event Trigger Updates:

- **Assigning Intrusion Zones to an Event Trigger:** The Intrusion Zone tab on the Event Trigger form allows you to assign Intrusion Zones and Intrusion Zone transaction type(s) that will trigger an event.

Extended Unlock Time Options: Extended unlock time is enabled on the Personnel Tab of the Person Form. When this option is selected, enabled badges associated with a Person record allow extra time to gain access to an

entry or exit point. Extended times (in minutes and seconds) are configured and assigned on the Door Functions tab of the Reader Form. For example, if a door is used by disabled persons or the reader is mounted at a distance from the door, a longer unlock time may be required to exit or enter.

Real-Time Digital Output Status: Digital output status is reflected in real-time updates on the Alarm Graphics Viewer if this option is selected on the Micro Definition tab of the Micro Form.

UL Certification: Secure Perfect is a UL-listed Grade A system (UL 1076 Grade A Proprietary Burglary Requirements/UL 294 Access Control Requirements). Your installation must adhere to the requirements listed in the Certification section of this, in order to qualify as UL-listed Grade A certified.

Badge Designer Upgrade: The integrated Badge Designer program is an upgraded version with many new features. On the Secure Perfect Badge Design Form, click **Edit Badge Design** to display a new windowpane. This is a separate program with its own toolbar. If you had a previous version of badge designer that created files with a .gdr extension, you will be prompted to save the file as a .dgn when you edit a badge design for the first time. Access the extensive Online Help system from the Badge Designer toolbar. Additionally, refer to the Badge Designer User Manual, and review the "What's New" section. A PDF file of the manual is provided on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system.

Badge Format: This option on the Administration menu allows an operator to design, import, or export custom badge formats for your Secure Perfect system. Custom magnetic stripe or Wiegand formats can be loaded and stored in the Secure Perfect database. After identifying the required custom format, the format is flashed to the micro. A new tab on the Micro Flash and Micro Parameter Configuration window allows you to configure custom badge formats.

Auto Shutdown of Secure Perfect Services: This is a default option on the Client tab of the Client form. If selected, Secure Perfect Services will automatically shut down when the client application is closed. A list of prerequisite criteria must be met.

Manual Control Form:

- **Shortcut from Client Monitor Form to Manual Control Form:** This feature allows the current operator to quickly locate a client, right-click and select the Manual Control form, and manually perform operations of the Secure Perfect system.

- **Mode Tab on the Manual Control Form:** This feature allows the operator to select all or individual micros or clients for immediate change of mode.

Report Generation Upgrades:

- **Guard Tour History Report:** This option on the Administration menu allows you to generate a report of completed Guard Tours, displaying tour activities such as start points, hits, invalid points, pauses, resumes, tour end points, tour time exceeded, manual start, and manual stops.
- **Administration Report:** The list of report types has been expanded to include details of Alarm Routing and Bumping configurations and Badge Format (UBF) custom badge configurations.

Installation and Setup Outlines

Before you proceed, make sure that your peripheral system hardware (such as micros, readers, and network lines) is installed and running.

The tables that follow outline the steps to set up a Secure Perfect 6.1 system.

Refer to the appropriate table for the system that your purchased.

- ☐ **Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client:** Refer to [“Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client”](#) on page 1.12.
- ☐ **Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:** Refer to [“Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition Computer”](#) on page 1.14.
- ☐ **Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1:** Refer to [Table 1-4, “Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1,”](#) on page 1.16.
- ☐ **Windows Clustering Technologies:** Refer to the document, *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*, included on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system.
- ☐ **Secure Perfect Global Edition:** Refer to [“Pre-Installation Checklist”](#) on page 6.6.

Unless otherwise noted, details for each step can be found in the chapters that follow.

Preparing a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client

Note: If you are converting from a previous version of Secure Perfect software, refer now to the appropriate upgrade section of this manual or the upgrade PDF document.

Table 1-2: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client *

Task	Reference
A. Check minimum hardware and software requirements.	page 1.3
B. Install network board.	page 2.1
C. If this Server will be part of an existing domain, you will need to add it to the primary domain controller of that domain.	page 2.3
D. If you will be using a video camera as the image source, install the capture board.	page 2.4
E. Prepare operating system.	page 2.4
F. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 Software (includes MSDE 2000 with Service Pack 3a).	page 4.1
G. Obtain license.	page 10.1
H. Enter the Secure Perfect 6.1 license key.	page 10.6
I. Setting Services to Automatic Startup	page 4.20
J. Log on to the Secure Perfect Server computer.	page 11.4
K. If applicable, set up Imaging Logins.	page 9.17
L. Add clients to Secure Perfect 6.1 database from Secure Perfect Server computer.	page 4.25
M. OPTIONAL: Install Microsoft Office XP or Microsoft Access 2002.	See PDF Doc on CD
N. OPTIONAL: If you are planning to add micros or use CCTV, set up the serial port expander.	See PDF Doc on CD

Table 1-2: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional as a Secure Perfect Server or Client * (Continued)

Task	Reference
O. OPTIONAL: Install and set up Symantec pcANYWHERE.	See PDF Doc on CD
P. OPTIONAL: If you plan on using dial-up micros on this computer, set up the modems.	See PDF Doc on CD
Q. If purchased, install and set up the CCTV software and hardware.	See PDF Doc on CD
R. Install and set up printers.	See PDF Doc on CD
S. Set up a tape drive.	Refer to instructions shipped with the tape drive.
T. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 on additional clients, if applicable.	page 9.1.

*. Repeat the applicable steps in this table for each additional communication client computer.

Preparing a Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server

Note: If you are converting from a previous version of Secure Perfect software, refer now to the appropriate upgrade section of this manual or the PDF upgrade document.

Table 1-3: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition Computer

Task	Reference
A. Check minimum hardware and software requirements.	page 1.3
B. Install network board.	page 3.1
C. Determine Server type.	page 3.3
D. If it is part of an existing domain, you need to add this Server to the primary domain controller of that domain.	page 3.3
E. Prepare operating system.	page 3.6
F. Install Microsoft SQL Server 2000.	page 3.10
G. Verify SQL Server is running.	page 3.13
H. Set SQL Server Agent service.	page 3.14
I. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 software. - Create Secure Perfect database - Typical - Create Secure Perfect database - Custom - License the system.	page 5.1 page 5.7 page 5.16 , page 5.23 , page 5.36 , page 5.48 , page 5.59 , page 5.71
J. Verify that Secure Perfect Services are running.	page 5.72
K. Log on to the Server computer.	page 11.4

Table 1-3: Steps to Prepare a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition Computer (Continued)

Task		Reference
L.	OPTIONAL: Set up serial port expander.	See PDF Doc on CD
M.	OPTIONAL: Install and set up Symantec pcANYWHERE.	See PDF Doc on CD
N.	OPTIONAL: Set up the modems.	See PDF Doc on CD
O.	If purchased, install and set up CCTV software and hardware.	See PDF Doc on CD
P.	Install and set up printers.	See PDF Doc on CD
Q.	Set up a tape drive.	Refer to instructions shipped with the tape drive.
R.	Add client computers, if applicable.	page 5.77

Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1

Table 1-4: Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1

Task	Menu/Form	Information Source
1. Log on.	File/Login	page 11.4
2. Set system parameters.	Administration/ Parameters	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
3. OPTIONAL: Create facilities.	Administration/ Facility	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
4. Set up clients.	Administration/ Client	Refer to appropriate section in the Chapter for your system.
5. Create permissions and operators.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
A. Determine the permissions you require and create them.	Administration/ Permission	
B. Create operator records.	Administration/ Operator	
6. Set up schedules and events.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
A. Determine what schedules and events you need.		
B. Set up the time schedules.	Administration/Time Schedule	
C. Set up the event schedules.	Administration/ Event Schedule	
D. Set up mode schedules.	Administration/ Mode Schedule	

Table 1-4: Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1 (Continued)

Task	Menu/Form	Information Source
7. Set up devices.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
A. Configure the micro.	Devices/Micro	
B. Configure readers.	Devices/Readers	
C. Set up digital inputs (DI).	Devices/Digital Input	
D. Create alarm instructions.	Administration/Alarm Instruction	
E. Set up alarm groups.	Devices/Alarm Groups	
F. Activate alarms to be used on this micro.	Devices/Alarms	
G. Create digital output (DO) groups.	Devices/Digital Output Groups	
H. If necessary, modify DOs used on this micro.	Devices/Digital Outputs	
I. Configure DVRs	Devices/Digital Video Recorder	
J. Flash (download) firmware to the micro.	Flash Tool Application or Operations/Micro Utilities	See PDF Doc on CD
K. Put the micro online and monitor communications.	Operations/Micro Utility	Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help.

Repeat Step 7. for each micro.



Table 1-4: Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1 (Continued)

Task	Menu/Form	Information Source
8. Create access rights, persons, and badges.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
A. Determine which access rights you need and create them.	Personnel/Access Right	
If this is a new installation, complete B and C.		
B. Create person records.	Personnel/Person	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
C. Create badge records.	Personnel/Badge	
OPTIONAL:		
D. Create intrusion zones.	Administration/ Intrusion Zone	Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.
9. Back up the system.		Refer to the <i>Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual</i> on CD or Online Help.

Notational and Typographical Conventions in this Manual

This manual uses certain notational and typographical conventions to make it easier for you to identify important information.

Table 1-5: Notational and Typographical Conventions

Item	Example
Menu Titles, Menu Items, Field Names, Form Titles	Administration
Keys	Enter
Buttons	OK
Text you enter	Micro 1 To reduce the confusion between similar numbers and letters, namely the number 1 and the lowercase letter l along with the number 0 and the letter O, refer to the following list: 1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
Side-bar or callout text	<i>Provides important information. When not part of a graphic, the text is displayed on the left side of the page.</i>
"Must Read" Sections	Recommended "Must Read" text blocks are shaded.
	This graphic is displayed to advise the user that failure to take or avoid a specified action could result in loss of data.
	This graphic is displayed to warn the user that failure to take or avoid a specific action could result in electrical damage.

Related Documentation



For more information, refer to the following:

Information about menus, windows, and fields.

Secure Perfect Online Help System

The Online Help system provides reference information, such as window and field descriptions, along with instructions for system administrator duties, such as configuring micros.

All you want to know about the Micro/5.

Micro/5 Installation Guide

This guide provides mounting and installation instructions for the Micro/5 controller and its associated boards.

All you want to know about the Micro/PX-2000.

Micro/PX-2000 and PXN-2000 Installation Guide

This guide provides mounting and installation instructions for the PX-2000 and PXN-2000 microcontrollers.

PDFs on CD.

These documents and others are included on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format. You must have Adobe Acrobat Reader installed on your computer to view PDF documents. For your convenience, a copy of the Adobe Acrobat Reader software is included on the CD.

Microsoft®

We recommend that you investigate the wide range of information available from Microsoft, covering such topics as Windows 2000 or Windows 2003, Microsoft SQL Server 2000, and networking in print and electronic format.

Dell®

If applicable, refer to your Dell documentation for hardware installation instructions.

Follow specific installation instructions for your brand of hardware.

Newly Removed Sections from this Manual

Sections of this manual were removed and are now available on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, as white papers in PDF format:

- *Secure Perfect 6.1 Diagnostics and Troubleshooting*
- *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*
- *Secure Perfect Optional Hardware and Software*
- *Secure Perfect CCTV Interfaces*
- *Installing FlashTool and Flashing Micros with Secure Perfect*

Training Sources



You may want to take advantage of the *XtremeLearning* library of convenient, comprehensive, and interactive Web-based training courses available through your GE security business sales representatives.

NOTES:

Chapter 2: Preparing the Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Computer

This chapter provides specific information about setting up a Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional computer as a Secure Perfect Server computer or client computer. We recommend that you read these sections carefully BEFORE you begin the installation. Perform the steps in the order they display. Each client computer will run the Secure Perfect 6.1 application and Imaging package.



In this chapter:

- ["Pre-Installation Checklist" on page 2.2](#)
- ["Supported Microcontrollers" on page 2.2](#)
- ["Installing the Network Board" on page 2.3](#)
- ["OPTIONAL: Installing the Capture Card" on page 2.4](#)
- ["Preparing the Operating System" on page 2.4](#)
- ["Setting Up Your Monitor" on page 2.5](#)
- ["Setting the Network Properties" on page 2.5](#)
- ["Defining User Accounts" on page 2.6](#)
- ["Assigning User Passwords" on page 2.7](#)
- ["Item Specific to Windows 2000 Professional" on page 2.7](#)
- ["Items Specific to Windows XP Professional" on page 2.8](#)
- ["What's Next?" on page 2.10](#)

Pre-Installation Checklist

If you purchased this system from GE, these tasks were completed for you.

➤ **To prepare your Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional computer, refer to this checklist of reminders:**

- ☐ Meet minimum recommended hardware and software requirements.
- ☐ Install the network board.
- ☐ Install Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional with appropriate Service Packs.
- ☐ Set monitor resolution to a minimum of 1024 by 768 pixels.
- ☐ Set the Network Properties.
- ☐ Enable **Distributed COM** Configuration Properties.
- ☐ Add Client computers to the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server Database.

Supported Microcontrollers

Secure Perfect 6.1 supports the following GE microcontrollers:

- Micro/5-PX
- Micro/5-PXN
- Micro/PX-2000
- Micro/PXN-2000

Serial-port expanders can be installed at any of the client computers to provide additional serial COM ports. COM ports can be used for either wiring direct-connect, communicating with dial-up micros via modems, or LAN connection to the microcontrollers. You **MUST** use GE-approved serial-port expanders. Currently, 8 and 16-port expanders are supported.

Installing the Network Board

If you purchased this system from GE, the network board is installed for you.

If you have not already done so, install the network board now. Follow the instructions included with the board. Verify that you are using the same network card speed as the existing network. Refer to the **Microsoft Installation Guide** for details of a network card configuration or obtain information at www.microsoft.com/technet.

Determining Computer Type

Before you continue, consult with the network administrator before adding any computers to an existing network.

The Professional computer can be:

1. Part of a new or existing workgroup.
2. Part of an existing domain. (See [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain”](#) .)

Since the setup will be different depending on which option you choose, you will need to decide which type applies before you can continue with the installation.

Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

If the Professional computer will be part of an existing domain, you will need to add the computer to the network. Since network configuration varies from company to company, see your network administrator for assistance.

Note: *If your Secure Perfect Server computer and client computers participate in a workgroup, add the workgroup name during the installation. We suggest using SECUREPERFECT. Write down the Server name and workgroup name as these are required during the client installation.*

It is important that the Secure Perfect Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on page 2.5](#) for more information or consult with your network administrator.

OPTIONAL: Installing the Capture Card

If you purchased this system with Imaging from GE, the FlashPoint card is installed and set up for you.

A capture card is required only if you are using the capture feature of Imaging and you are using a video camera as the image source. Imaging installs with each Secure Perfect application installation. If you have not done so already, install the capture card now.

Note: *You must use a GE-approved capture card.*

Currently, GE supports the Integral Technologies capture cards. Contact your GE security business sales representative for supported models. For directions on installing this card, refer to the appropriate GE documents.

Preparing the Operating System

If you purchased this system from GE, the operating system is installed for you.

The Professional Secure Perfect Server computer **MUST** be running Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional with any applicable Service Packs. If it is not already installed on your system, you will need to install it now.

Insert the Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Installation CD in your CD-ROM drive and follow the instructions provided by the Microsoft documentation.

This section represents an overview of the installation procedure and does not provide step-by-step instructions to install the operating system.

► **During the installation of the operating system, review the following items:**

- You will be asked to select a file system type. For added security, we recommend that you select **NTFS**.
- Under the **Networking Settings** window, we recommend that you select **Typical Settings**. If you need to select **Custom Settings**, please consult your network administrator.
- For network services and binding, leave the default settings.

- At the **Workgroup or computer domain** window, select one:
 - **No**, this computer is not on a network, or is on a network without a domain. Type a workgroup name in the following box.
 - **Yes**, make this computer a member of the following domain.
- Enter the workgroup or domain name in the **Workgroup or computer domain** field.

For additional information, consult your Microsoft documentation.

Setting Up Your Monitor

The minimum recommended monitor resolution required for Secure Perfect 6.1 is 1024 by 768. Small Fonts **MUST** be selected on the **General** tab of the **Advanced** properties. If using Imaging, the minimum color resolution is High Color (16-bit).

➤ **To access the display settings:**

1. Right-click your mouse on the desktop.
2. Select **Properties** from the menu.
3. Click the **Settings** tab in the **Display Properties** window.
4. Change the **Screen Area settings** to at least 800 by 600. (GE recommends 1024 by 768 pixels.)
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

Setting the Network Properties

It is important that the same network properties are used for both the Secure Perfect Server and Client systems.

► **To check the network settings:**

1. Right-click **My Network Places**.
2. Select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
3. Right-click the **Local Area Connection** icon and select **Properties**.
4. Select **Internet Protocol TCP/IP**.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Select one:
 - **Obtain an IP address automatically**
 - **Use the following IP address**

Secure Perfect 6.1 computers do not require static IP addresses.

***Note:** If you selected **Use the following IP address** option, you must obtain a valid IP address from the network administrator, or use a local IP address that no other computer is using in your network. Consult your network administrator for detailed instructions.*

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to exit **Local Area Connection Properties**.
9. After Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional is installed, reboot the computer and make sure it is connected to the network. Verify that you do not have any hardware errors under **Device Manager**.

Defining User Accounts

Windows 2000 requires that a user account be set up for each user on that computer and for each user accessing the Server remotely. This section addresses adding additional user accounts and assigning user passwords.

The **Users and Passwords** selection in **Control Panel** allows you to add users to your computer and to add users to a group. In Windows 2000 and

Windows XP, permissions and user rights are usually granted to groups. By adding a user to a group, you give the user all the permissions and user rights assigned to that group.

For instance, a member of the Users group can perform most of the tasks necessary to do the job, such as logging on to the computer, creating files and folders, running programs, and saving changes to files. However, only a member of the Administrators group can add users to groups, change user passwords, or modify most system settings.

Adding additional users is **optional** but recommended since this clearly identifies each user in Windows.

***Note:** If you do choose to add additional users, you must assign them to the group 'SPAdmin' after Secure Perfect is installed.*

Assigning User Passwords

GE recommends that you assign a password to all user accounts. This will avoid security permission issues when attempting to access remote client computers.

Refer to your Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional documentation for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.

Item Specific to Windows 2000 Professional

This item is unique to Windows 2000 Professional.

Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If **DCOM** is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.

2. On the **Distributed COM Configuration Properties** window, select the **Default Properties** tab, if not already selected.
3. Verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections. If not set, select the check box to enable.
4. Verify that the Default Authentication Level is set to **Connect** and the Default Impersonation Level is set to **Identify**.
5. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
6. Click **OK** and close the window.

Items Specific to Windows XP Professional

These items are unique to Windows XP Professional.

1. Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If **DCOM** is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections on Windows XP Professional:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.
Result: **Component Services** displays.
2. Double-click **Components Services** and then click **Computers**.
3. Right-click **My Computer** and then scroll to **Properties**.
Result: **My Computer Properties** window displays.
4. Click the **Default Properties** tab.
5. Verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections.

6. Verify that the Default Authentication Level is set to **Connect** and the Default Impersonation Level is set to **Identify**.
7. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
8. Click **OK** and close the window.

2. Windows XP User Password

When installing and configuring Windows XP Professional, the user Administrator **MUST** be assigned a password. For Secure Perfect to work correctly once installed, all Windows login IDs used with Secure Perfect should have an assigned password. DO NOT leave blank.

3. Matching User Information

If any computer within the Secure Perfect system is running Windows XP, then ALL computers in that system must use a matching user name and password at login in order to communicate.

4. User Logon Modifications

In the **Control Panel**, select **User Accounts**, and then **Change the way users log on or off**. Clear the following check boxes:

- **Use the Welcome Screen**
- **Use Fast User Switching**

If needed, these settings can be re-enabled after installation of Secure Perfect is complete.

5. Enable Network Folder Sharing

In the **Control Panel**, **Network Connections**, run the **Network Setup Wizard**, and enable network file/folder sharing.

6. Disable Simple File Sharing

In **Windows Explorer**, select **Tools, Folder Options**, and then the **View** tab. Scroll through the **Advanced settings** to display **Use simple file sharing**. Clear the check box to disable this feature.

What's Next?

You are ready to install Secure Perfect 6.1. Refer to [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ or Professional Edition Server Software](#).

Chapter 3: Preparing the Windows 2000 Standard Edition Server or 2003 Standard Edition Server

This chapter provides instructions for a sample configuration of a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server computer. We recommend that you review the [“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 3.2](#), then review the sample configuration carefully BEFORE you begin the installation.

If you are installing to a Cluster environment, refer to your Microsoft documentation and the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*, in PDF format.



In this chapter:

[“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 3.2](#)

[“Installing the Network Board” on page 3.3](#)

[“Preparing the Operating System” on page 3.6](#)

[“Setting Up Your Monitor” on page 3.7](#)

[“Enabling Distributed COM Configuration” on page 3.8](#)

[“Items Specific to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server” on page 3.8](#)

[“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 3.10](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 3.19](#)

Pre-Installation Checklist

If you purchased this system from GE, these tasks were completed for you.

➤ **To prepare your Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server computer, refer to this checklist of reminders:**

- ☐ Meet minimum recommended hardware and software requirements.
- ☐ Install the network board.
- ☐ Determine Server type.
- ☐ Install Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server.
 - Sections of this chapter include instructions specific to Windows 2003 Server.
 - When assigning a Server type, choose ‘Stand-alone’ or ‘Member.’
- ☐ Set monitor resolution to a minimum of 1024 by 768 pixels.
- ☐ Enable **Distributed COM** Configuration Properties.
- ☐ Install MS SQL Server 2000.
 - You must have SQL Server installed prior to installing Secure Perfect 6.1 software.
 - In ‘Server and Client Tools,’ you must enter SPSQL in the ‘Instance Name’ field.
- ☐ Verify SQL Server installation.
- ☐ Set SQL Server Agent properties.

Important!

Important!

Important!

SQL Server Agent must be running to keep the databases in optimal condition.

Note: You may experience other behavior based on the version of Windows you have installed. These are guidelines and these instructions are based on a SAMPLE configuration.

Installing the Network Board

If you purchased this system from GE, the network board is installed for you.

If you have not already done so, install the network board now. Follow the instructions included with the board.

Determining Server Type

Before you continue, you will need to decide what type of server the Server computer will be in the network. Always consult with the network administrator before adding any computers to an existing network.

The Server computer can be:

1. Part of a new or existing workgroup.
2. Part of an existing domain. (See [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain”](#) .)

Since the setup will be different depending on which option you choose, you will need to decide which Server type applies before you can continue with the installation.

Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

If the Server computer will be part of an existing domain, you will need to add the Server computer to the network. Since network configuration varies from company to company, see your network administrator for assistance.

Note: *If your Server and client computers participate in a workgroup, add the workgroup name during the installation. We suggest using SECUREPERFECT. Write down the Server name and workgroup name as these are required during the client installation.*

It is important that the Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties”](#) on page 3.4 for more information or consult with your network administrator.

Setting the Network Properties

It is important that the same network properties are used for both the Secure Perfect Server and Client systems.

► **To check the network settings:**

1. Right-click **My Network Places**.
2. Select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
3. Right-click the **Local Area Connection** icon and select **Properties**.
4. Select **Internet Protocol TCP/IP**.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Select one:

- **Obtain an IP address automatically**
- **Use the following IP address**

Secure Perfect 6.1 computers do not require static IP addresses.

***Note:** If you selected **Use the following IP address** option, you must obtain a valid IP address from the network administrator, or use a local IP address that no other computer is using in your network. Consult your network administrator for detailed instructions.*

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to exit **Local Area Connection Properties**.
9. After Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional is installed, reboot the computer and make sure it is connected to the network. Verify that you do not have any hardware errors under **Device Manager**.

Setting Up Your Monitor

The minimum recommended monitor resolution required for Secure Perfect 6.1 is 1024 by 768. Small Fonts **MUST** be selected on the **General** tab of the **Advanced** properties. If using Imaging, the minimum color resolution is High Color (16-bit).

➤ **To access the display settings:**

1. Right-click your mouse on the desktop.
2. Select **Properties** from the menu.
3. Click the **Settings** tab in the **Display Properties** window.
4. Change the **Screen Area settings** to at least 1024 by 768.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

Defining User Accounts

Windows 2000 requires that a user account be set up for each user on that computer and for each user accessing the Server remotely. This section addresses adding additional user accounts and assigning user passwords.

The **Users and Passwords** selection in **Control Panel** allows you to add users to your computer and to add users to a group. In Windows 2000 and Windows XP, permissions and user rights are usually granted to groups. By adding a user to a group, you give the user all the permissions and user rights assigned to that group.

For instance, a member of the Users group can perform most of the tasks necessary to do the job, such as logging on to the computer, creating files and folders, running programs, and saving changes to files. However, only a member of the Administrators group can add users to groups, change user passwords, or modify most system settings.

Adding additional users is **optional** but recommended since this clearly identifies each user in Windows.

Note: *If you do choose to add additional users, you must assign them to the group 'SPAdmin.'*

Assigning User Passwords

GE recommends that you assign a password to all user accounts. This will avoid security permission issues when attempting to access remote client computers.

Refer to your Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional documentation for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.

Preparing the Operating System

If you purchased this system from GE, the operating system is installed for you.

The Server computer **MUST** be running Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server. If it is not already installed on your system, you will need to install it now, along with the latest applicable Service Packs.

Insert the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Installation CD in your CD-ROM drive and follow the instructions provided by the Microsoft documentation.

➤ **This section represents an overview of the installation procedure and does not provide step-by-step instructions to install the operating system. During installation of the operating system, review the following items:**

- You will be asked to select a file system type. For added security, we recommend that you select **NTFS**.
- On the **Licensing Modes** screen, select **Per Seat**.
- When selecting the **Networking Settings**, we recommend that you select **Typical Settings**. If you need to select **Custom Settings**, please consult your network administrator.
- For network services and binding, leave the default settings.
- At the **Server Type** window, you may select either **Stand-alone** or **Member**.

- If you selected a Server type of:
 - **Stand-alone**, this Server has its own database of users, and it processes logon requests by itself. It does not share account information with any other computer and cannot provide access to domain accounts.
 - **Member**, this Server participates in a domain, but does not store a copy of the directory database. For a member Server, permissions can be set on resources that allow users to connect to the Server and use its resources. Resource permissions can be granted for domain global groups and users as well as for local groups and users.

Example: If you wish to group computers by department, you could set up an Accounting Workgroup. When viewing the network, you would see the Accounting Workgroup. If you double-clicked on that Workgroup, all computers in that Workgroup would be displayed.

For additional information, consult your Microsoft documentation.

Setting Up Your Monitor

The minimum recommended monitor resolution required for Secure Perfect 6.1 is 1024 by 768. Small Fonts **MUST** be selected on the **General** tab of the **Advanced** properties. If using Imaging, the minimum color resolution is High Color (16-bit).

► **To access the display settings:**

1. Right-click the desktop.
2. Select **Properties** from the menu.
3. Click the **Settings** tab in the **Display Properties** window.
4. Change the **Screen area** at least 1024 by 768 resolution.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If DCOM is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

➤ **To enable and verify remote connections:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.

Result: The **Distributed COM Configuration Properties** window displays.

2. On the **Default Properties** tab, verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections. If not set, select the check box to enable.
3. Verify that the Default Authentication Level is set to **Connect** and the Default Impersonation Level is set to **Identify**.
4. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Proceed to [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 3.10.](#)

Items Specific to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server

These items are unique to Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:

1. Enabling Distributed COM Configuration

If **DCOM** is not enabled during the operating system software installation, a warning message displays when you insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD-ROM, **This application requires that DCOM is enabled.**

► **To enable and verify remote connections on Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server:**

1. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter `dcomcnfg`, and click **OK**.

Result: **Component Services** displays.

2. Double-click **Components Services** and then click **Computers**.
3. Right-click **My Computer** and then scroll to **Properties**.

Result: **My Computer Properties** window displays.

4. Click the **Default Properties** tab.
5. Verify that **Enable Distributed COM on this computer** is selected for remote connections.
6. Verify that the Default Authentication Level is set to **Connect** and the Default Impersonation Level is set to **Identify**.
7. DO NOT alter other settings on any other tabs unless instructed by your Information Systems Department.
8. Click **OK** to accept and close the window.

2. Windows User Password

When installing and configuring Windows 2003 Server, the user administrator MUST be assigned a password. For Secure Perfect to work correctly once installed, all Windows login IDs used in conjunction with Secure Perfect should have an assigned password. DO NOT leave blank.

3. Matching User Information

If any computer within the Secure Perfect system is running Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server, then ALL computers in that system must use a matching user name and password at login in order to communicate.

4. User Logon Modifications

In the **Control Panel, User Settings, Change the way users log on or off**, disable the Windows 2003 logon **Welcome Screen** and **Fast User Switching**. If needed, these settings can be re-enabled after installation of Secure Perfect is complete.

5. Enable Network Folder Sharing

In the **Control Panel, Network Connection**, run the **Network Setup Wizard**, and enable network file/folder sharing.

Proceed with [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000”](#).

Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000

The SQL Server program stores and controls the Secure Perfect 6.1 databases. If you do not have SQL Server installed on the Server computer that will store your databases, you must install it now.

***Note:** The SQL Server software is user supplied and is not included as part of a Secure Perfect 6.1 system.*

If you purchased this system from GE, SQL Server is installed and configured for you.

➤ To install Microsoft SQL Server:

1. Insert the SQL CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Result: The Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition window automatically displays.

2. We recommend that you select **Read the Release Notes**. This displays the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Readme file, in Notepad. When you are finished, exit and continue below.
3. Select **SQL Server 2000 Components**.
4. Select **Install Database Server**.

Result: The **SQL Server 2000 Welcome** window displays.

5. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Computer Name** window displays.

6. The local computer will be selected by default. The dialog box contains the name of the default local computer. Do not change the default setting since you want to install Microsoft SQL Server 2000 on the local computer.
7. Click **Next** to accept the **Local Computer** option.
8. On the **Installation Selection** window, select **Create a new Instance, or install Client Tools** and click **Next**.

Result: You are prompted for your User Information.

➤ **To enter the User Information:**

1. Enter a **Name** and **Company**, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Microsoft End User License Agreement** displays.

2. Review the agreement and click **Yes** to accept the agreement.

Result: The **License Key information for SQL Server 2000** window displays.

3. Enter the CD-Key number as displayed on the back of the CD jewel case, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Installation Definition** window displays.

4. Select **Server and Client Tools** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Instance Name** window displays with the **Default** check box selected.

5. Clear the check box.

Important!

6. Enter **SPSQL** in the **Instance Name** field. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Setup Type** window displays.

➤ **To configure a typical setup:**

1. Select **Typical** for setup type. You have the option to change the **Destination Paths** for the program files and data files. We recommend that you accept the default locations, and click **Next**.

Result: The **Services Accounts** window displays.

2. You are prompted to select an **Account Login** and **Service Setting**.
 - Select **Use the same account for each service (Autostart SQL Server Service)**.
 - Select **Use the Local System Account**.

Then, click **Next**.

3. From the **Authentication Mode** window, you MUST select **Mixed Mode (Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)**.

In **Add Password for the 'sa' login**, enter `master` or create a unique password as the password for the administrator account. Enter a second time to confirm. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of `master` was assigned.)

Important!

Note: *We strongly suggest that you assign a unique password of your choice.*

This is the 'sa' user password, used later in the installation, during creation of the Secure Perfect database.

4. Write the password down, then store it in a safe place as you will be asked for it again later.
5. Click **Next**.

Result: A dialog box displays a statement, Setup has enough information to prompt you for the Licensing Mode Information and then start copying the program files.

6. Click **Next** to proceed.

Result: The **Choose Licensing Mode** window displays. GE recommends selecting **Per Seat License**. (All GE-installed systems are

installed with **Per Seat License**.) Refer to your SQL Server 2000 license agreement to find out how many users you are authorized, according to the system you purchased. Enter that number as the number of devices.

However, if you purchased SQL Server 2000 with a processor license, select **Processor License** and enter the number of processors (CPUs) in your Server computer. If you have a problem choosing a licensing mode, refer to your Microsoft manuals or consult your network administrator for assistance.

7. Click **Continue**.

Result: A **Shutting Down Tasks** window may display.

8. Click **Next**.

Result: The system starts to copy files. Various installation windows display along with a progress bar. This step takes a considerable length of time.

9. A **Setup Complete** window displays, stating that the installation of this instance of SQL Server 2000 has completed on your computer.
10. Click **Finish** and remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.
11. You must shut down and restart your computer in order for the installation to take effect.

Verifying Microsoft SQL Server Installation

When restarted, the system will automatically start SQL Server. Log on as administrator. You may want to verify the installation. You have two options available:

- Check the taskbar.
- Check the Services Form.

Verify SQL Installation Using the Taskbar

➤ **To verify that SQL Server service is running:**

In the taskbar status area, an icon will display, a computer with a green arrow.



Verify SQL Installation Using the Services Form

➤ **To verify SQL Server using the Services window:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Component Services**.
2. Click **Services (Local)**.
3. Locate the service **MSSQL\$SPSQL**.
 - The status should read **Started** which means that the service is running.
 - If it is blank, then the service is not running. You cannot proceed with the installation unless the service is running. Check your SQL Server documentation for more information on troubleshooting.
4. Exit the window.

Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Enterprise Manager

The **SQL Server Agent** service must be running to keep the Secure Perfect 6.1 databases in optimal condition.

➤ **To set properties of the SQL Server Agent service:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.

2. Locate the Server computer name on which you will be installing Secure Perfect 6.1. Expand the folder by clicking on the plus sign.
3. Select and expand the **Management** folder.
4. A red dot on the **SQL Server Agent** folder indicates that it has not started. Select **SQL Server Agent**, then right-click and select **Start** on the menu to start the services.

Result: The red dot is replaced by a green arrow in the navigation tree.

5. Now, you have to set **SQL Server Agent** service properties. Select **SQL Server Agent**, then right-click and select **Properties** from the menu.

Result: The **SQL Server Agent Properties** window displays.

6. Do not change any settings on the **General** tab unless instructed by the Database Administrator. Select the **Advanced** tab and select the **Auto restart SQL Server if it stops unexpectedly** and **Auto Restart SQL Server Agent if it stops unexpectedly** check boxes.

7. Click **OK**.

Result: A message may display, **One or more of the changes you have made will not take effect until SQL Server Agent is restarted. Do you want to stop and restart SQL Server Agent now?** We recommend that you stop and restart SQL Server Agent now.

8. Click **Yes** to stop and restart SQL Server Agent.
9. When a dialog displays **SQL Server Agent was restarted successfully**, click **OK**.
10. Exit **Enterprise Manager**.
11. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Component Services**. Select and double-click to expand the list of services.
12. Scroll down the list of services to select **SQLAgent\$SPSQL**, then right-click and select **Properties** from the menu.

Result: The **SQLAgent\$SPSQL Properties** window displays.

13. On the **General** tab, select **Automatic** from the **Startup type** drop-down list. Do not change any other tab or setting.
14. Click **OK**.
Result: **SQLServerAgent Properties** exits.
15. Exit **Component Services**.
16. Continue with “[Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Service Manager](#)”

Setting *SQL Server Agent Service* Properties Through Service Manager

➤ **To verify and set SQL Server services:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Startup**, then **Service Manager**.
Result: The **SQL Server Service Manager** window displays.
2. If not displayed, from the **Server** drop-down list, select the correct computer name with the SPSQL instance name.
3. If not already displayed, from the **Services** drop-down list, select **SQL Server**.

Result: A green arrow displays on the computer image, indicating the service is running. Verify that **Auto-start service when OS starts** check box is selected.

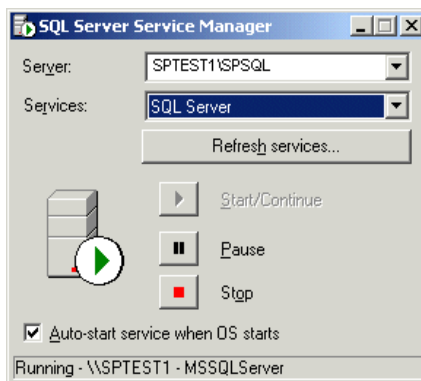


Figure 3-1. SQL Server Service Manager - Enterprise Server

4. Refer to [Figure 3-1](#). The Server computer name and service status display at the bottom of the dialog box.

► **To verify and set SQL Server Agent:**

1. From the **Services** drop-down list, select **SQL Server Agent**. The **SQL Server Agent** must be running to keep the Secure Perfect 6.1 databases in optimal condition.

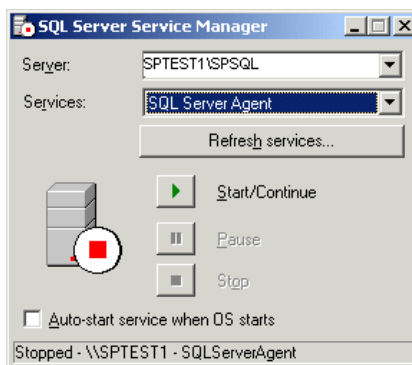


Figure 3-2. SQL Server Service Manager - SQL Server Agent

2. In [Figure 3-2](#), the Server computer name and service status are **Stopped**, as displayed at the bottom of the dialog box. To change the status, click **Start/Continue** and then select **Auto-start service when OS starts**.

Result: A green arrow displays on the computer image, indicating the service is running. In the future, the service will automatically start when the operating system shuts down and restarts.

3. Exit **SQL Server Services Manager**.
4. If you have not already done so, remove the Microsoft SQL CD from the CD-ROM drive.
5. We recommend that you DO NOT install the Microsoft SQL Service Pack at this time, if you are about to install Secure Perfect 6.1. The latest supported version is Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a, and auto installs during installation of the Secure Perfect 6.1 software. If you are about to install SP 6.1, continue with “[What’s Next?](#)” on page 3.19.
6. Continue with “[Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack](#)”, only if applicable.

Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack

Typical Server/Client Architecture

Note: We recommend that you do not install the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Service Pack if you are about to install SP 6.1. If you install the Service Pack OUTSIDE of the SP installation, this is an abbreviated list of instructions to assist you.

► **To install SQL Server Service Pack 3a on a typical Server/Client Architecture:**

1. Back up the SQL databases: master, model, and msdb.
2. Insert the Microsoft Updates CD into your CD-ROM drive.
3. Navigate to the drive, typically, D:\SP ENT SERVER\SQL Server 2000 Standard SP 3a\sql2ksp3a.exe

4. Follow instructions as prompted, using the recommended choices as described during the installation process.
5. When complete, AGAIN, back up your SQL master, model, and msdb databases, since installation of the Service Pack 3a has updated and altered their contents.
6. Reboot your computer. You are now ready to install the Secure Perfect software.

Cluster Environment

Contact the Enterprise Services Department of GE at (561) 998-6168, to discuss Windows Clustering setup and installation before installing Secure Perfect 6.1. GE security business sales representative or Customer Support, at (561) 998-6100, can provide additional details of these services and a quotation applicable to your system configuration.

If you are installing Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack to a Windows Cluster, you must apply the SQL Service Pack 3a before installing Secure Perfect 6.1. Consult the Microsoft documentation received with the SQL Server Service Pack, for instructions.

What's Next?

Proceed to [Chapter 5 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition Server Software](#).

NOTES:

Chapter 4: Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ or Professional Edition Server Software

This chapter includes instructions for installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 Server software on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional computers. Follow instructions in the order presented. These instructions pertain to Secure Perfect eZ Edition and Professional Edition.

Note: This Chapter is NOT for Enterprise Edition or Global Edition installations. If you are installing an Enterprise Edition, refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition Server Software” on page 5.1](#). If you are installing a Global Edition system, refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Global Database Server” on page 6.1](#).



In this chapter:

[“Prepare to Install” on page 4.2](#)

[“TYPICAL Installation” on page 4.5](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ/Professional Edition” on page 4.6](#)

[“For Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 Users” on page 4.10](#)

[“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.19](#)

[“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 4.20](#)

[“For Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 Users” on page 4.10](#)

[“Server Folder Structure” on page 4.22](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts” on page 4.25](#)

[“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 4.25](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 4.29](#)

Prepare to Install

Note: Your Secure Perfect 6.1 system *WILL NOT* install unless minimum requirements have been met. Before you begin, refer to “[Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements](#)” on page 1.3 and “[Pre-Installation Checklist](#)” on page 2.2.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!					

If you purchased this system from GE, Secure Perfect 6.1 is installed for you. Skip to “[Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1](#)” on page 11.1.

➤ **To prepare your computer for installation of the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 4.4.](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

Selecting Installation Type

➤ **To continue, your next step is to select ONE type of installation:**

Select **Typical** or **Custom**:

Typical Installation Type:

The installation requires little user interaction and you do not need to make any special choices. Follow instructions in ["TYPICAL Installation" on page 4.5](#).

Custom Installation Type:

If you need to accomplish any one of the following tasks, you must select Custom:

- Use Badge Aliasing.
- Change the password for the Windows logon USERID 'secure.'

***Note:** If you change the default Secure Perfect user password, all computers must use the identical Secure Perfect user replacement password.*

Continue by proceeding to ["CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ/Professional Edition" on page 4.6](#).

TYPICAL Installation

➤ **To continue with a Typical installation, follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Next**.
2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Server** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

3. The default program folder is indicated. You may want to install Secure Perfect in another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice, for placement of Secure Perfect files.

4. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop.

***Note:** This takes several minutes.*

5. To finish your installation, continue with [“Installation of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a”](#).

Installation of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a

At this point, the Secure Perfect installation determines if the SPSQL instance of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a need to be installed.

➤ **When the required software is not detected on your system:**

1. When the required software is not detected on your system, installation of MSDE and Service Pack 3a continues.

Result: When installation of MSDE is complete, the system automatically reboots. This process takes several minutes.

2. Log on as administrator user to continue the installation.

3. After the login, the database creation begins. This takes a few minutes to begin. Please wait.
4. A progress bar displays the process.
5. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created.
6. The **SP License Setup** window displays along with a **Welcome** dialog box. We recommend that you license your system at this time. Click **OK** in the dialog box to continue.
7. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.19.](#)

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ/Professional Edition

Recommended for experienced software installers.

Note: Secure Perfect 6.1 components *CANNOT* be individually installed on a Windows Professional operating system. However, you *MUST* select **Custom** as your installation type if you choose one of the following options:

- *Badge Aliasing*
- *Change the password for the Windows logon USERID 'secure.'*

- If you chose a Custom installation, follow the instructions below:
1. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.
 2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Server** and click **Next**.
 3. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 4-1](#).

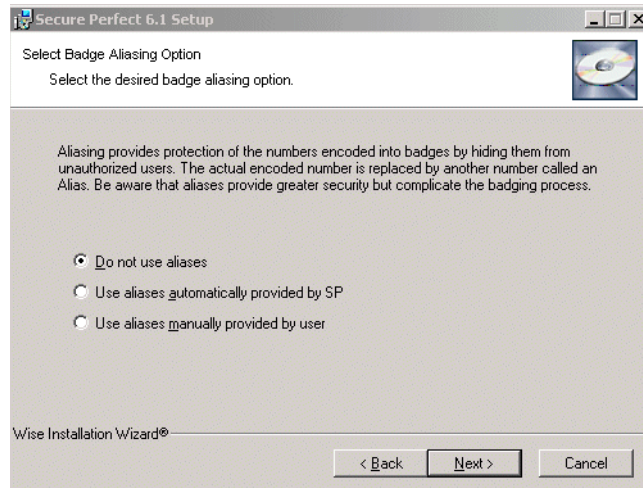


Figure 4-1. Badge Alias Window

4. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.

5. Choose one aliasing option and click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 4-2](#).



Figure 4-2. Change the 'secure' Password Window

6. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
7. Click **Next**.

8. The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Result: The default destination folder is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

9. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

11. At this point, the Secure Perfect installation determines if the SPSQL instance of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a needs to be installed.

► **Installing MSDE and Service Pack 3a when the required software is not detected on your system:**

1. When the required software is not detected on your system, installation of MSDE and Service Pack 3a continues.
2. When installation of MSDE is complete, the system **automatically** reboots. This takes several minutes.
3. After the reboot, the database is created. A progress bar displays the process.

Note: No user interaction is required. Please wait.

► **When the database creation is complete and the SP License Setup window displays:**

Continue with one of the following sections:

[“Windows 2000 Professional” on page 4.10](#)

[“Windows XP Professional!” on page 4.10](#)

Windows 2000 Professional

1. We recommend that you license your system at this time. Click **OK** in the dialog box to continue.
2. Proceed with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.19.](#)

Windows XP Professional:

Click **OK** in the dialog box and continue as follows:

➤ **If you DO NOT have Windows XP Professional, Service Pack 2 installed:**

We recommend that you license your system at this time. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 4.19.](#)

➤ **If you DO have Windows XP Professional, Service Pack 2 installed:**

1. Click **OK** to close the **LicenseSetup** Welcome window.
2. Click **Cancel** to close the **SP License Setup** window. (You cannot license at this time.)
3. Continue with [“For Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 Users”](#).

For Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 Users

If you installed Secure Perfect on a Windows XP Professional operating system with Service Pack 2, the following adjustments must be made to your configuration, in order for Secure Perfect to run successfully. We assume that this is a basic installation of Windows XP Service Pack 2, with no other policies configured other than the base configuration within Windows XP.

1. Configuring Windows Firewall

➤ **To configure your Windows Firewall for access to the Database Server from a Secure Perfect client computer:**

1. Log on as a user with administrator permissions.

2. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then double-click **Windows Firewall**.
3. When the **Windows Firewall** window opens, select ONE of TWO configurations options:
 - Select **Off**.
 - Select **On** and select the **Exceptions** tab.
4. If you select **Off** (turns off Windows Firewall):
 - Click **OK** to exit this window.
 - Skip Step 5. through Step 26.
 - Continue with [“Configuring Launch and Access Permissions” on page 4.14.](#)

If you select **On** and the **Exceptions** tab, configure the exceptions:

 - Proceed to [Step 5.](#), to configure the ports as indicated.

Add Programs

5. Click **Add Program**.
6. One at a time, add the following programs to the exceptions list by selecting from the list of programs:
 - Diagnostic Viewer
 - Flashtool
 - Secure Perfect
 - SPLicense
7. Click **OK** to display the selected programs in the **Programs and Services** list.

Add Ports

8. Click **Add Port**.

***Note:** To name the ports, type a short name for the port to help you remember for what it is used.*

- Name the port and enter the SQL Server port number

(This port number can be obtained from your Server Computer. At the Database Server computer for this client, click **Start**, then **Run** and enter `svrnetcn.exe`. Click **OK**. When the SQL Server Network Utility window displays, select **TCP/IP** and click **Properties**. The port number displays. Note this port number and return to the client computer.)

- Add Ports 6700 through 6715 for TCP filtering.
- Add Ports 6700 through 6715 for UDP filtering.
- Add Port 1024 for TCP DVR filtering.
- Add Port 135 for RPC filtering.
- When all entries are complete, click **OK** to exit this window.

Set Data Sources (ODBC)

***Note:** If the Database Server is not Windows XP, skip [Step 9.](#) through [Step 15.](#) and continue with “[Set dcomcnfg Properties](#)”.*

9. In the Control Panel, double-click **Administrative Tools**, then **Data Sources (ODBC)**.
10. On the **ODBC Data Source Administrator** window, select the **System DSN** tab.
11. Select **Secure Perfect SQL**.
12. Click **Configure** and click **Next**.
13. Click **Client Configure**.
14. De-select **Dynamically determine port**.

15. Enter SQL Server Port number, as obtained from the Server computer.
(See [Step 3.](#) above.)

Set dcomcnfg Properties

16. Click **Start**, select **Run**, enter dcomcnfg, and click **OK**.

Result: The **Component Services** window displays.

17. Click to expand the **Components Services** navigation tree.

Result: If the **Windows Firewall** is **Off**, a window displays the message, **Do you want to keep blocking this program?** Click **Unblock** and the window closes.

18. Again, click to expand the **Components Services** tree to display **My Computer** in the right window pane.

19. Right-click **My Computer** to display a shortcut menu and select **Properties**.

Result: **My Computer Properties** window displays.

20. Click the **Default Protocols** tab.

21. When the **Properties for COM Internet Services** window displays, if not already there, you must add categories to the **DCOM Protocols** window pane. Click **Add**.

22. A **Select DCOM protocol** window displays with a drop-down list of Protocol Sequences from which to choose.

- Select **Connection-oriented TCP-IP** and click **OK**.

- Select **Datagram UDP/IP** and click **OK**.

Result: Your selections display in the **DCOM Protocols** window pane.

23. Select **Connection-oriented TCP/IP Filtering** and click **Properties**, then **Add**. Proceed by adding port ranges 6700 through 6715 in the requested format.

24. Select **Datagram UDP/IP** and click **Properties**, then **Add**. Proceed by adding port ranges 6700 through 6715 in the requested format.
25. When all entries are complete, click **OK** to exit this window.
26. Continue with [“Configuring Launch and Access Permissions”](#).

2. Configuring Launch and Access Permissions

In this section, you will be configuring two permissions:

- Launch Permission
- Access Permission

In this section, you will be configuring services:

- Secure Perfect System Manager
- Secure Perfect Manager
- Secure Perfect Diagnostics

► To configure the Access and Launch permissions for ‘Secure Perfect System Manager’ service:

1. Log on as a user with administrator permissions.
2. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then double-click **Component Services**.
3. In the right windowpane, expand the Component Services navigation tree to display **Computers, My Computer**, then **DCOM Config**.
4. Select **Secure Perfect System Manager** and right-click to display the shortcut menu.
5. Select **Properties** to display the properties window.

Launch and Activation Permissions

6. Select the **Security** tab, and in the **Launch and Activation Permissions** grouping, select **Customize** and click **Edit**.

7. When the **Launch Permission** window displays, select the **Security** tab and click **Add**.
8. When the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** window displays, click **Advanced**.
9. If you are asked to log on to the Domain, enter your login ID and password and click **OK**.
10. When you are returned to the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** window, click **Find Now**.
11. When the **Name(RDN)** list displays in the lower windowpane, select **ANONYMOUS LOGON** and click **OK**, then **OK** in the window that follows.
12. Verify that all permission for **ANONYMOUS LOGON** are set to **Allow**. Click **OK**.

Access Permissions

13. You are returned to the **Security** tab, and in the **Access Permissions** group, select **Customize** and click **Edit**.
14. When the **Launch Permission** window displays, select the **Security** tab and double-click **Add**.
15. When the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** window displays, click **Advanced**.
16. If you are asked to log on to the Domain, enter your login ID and password and click **OK**.
17. When you are returned to the **Select Users, Computers, or Groups** window, click **Find Now**.
18. When the **Name(RDN)** list displays in the lower windowpane, select **ANONYMOUS LOGON** and click **OK**, then **OK** in the window that follows.

19. Verify that all permission for **ANONYMOUS LOGON** are set to **Allow**. Click **OK**.

*Note: Ignore the **Configuration Permissions** grouping of the Security tab.*

➤ **To configure the Access and Launch permissions for ‘Secure Perfect Manager’ service and Secure Perfect Diagnostics:**

Repeat the steps as listed, beginning with “[To configure the Access and Launch permissions for ‘Secure Perfect System Manager’ service:](#)” on page 4.14; however, you will select ‘Secure Perfect Manager’ OR ‘Secure Perfect Diagnostics’ in the **DCOM Config** navigation tree, [Step 4](#).

3. Configuring Local Security Settings

➤ **To configure the local security settings at each client computer:**

1. Log on as a user with administrator permissions.
2. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Administrative Tools**.
3. Double-click **Local Security Policy** in the right windowpane.
4. Expand the navigation tree to display Local Policies and select Security Options to display a list box of ‘Policies’ and ‘Security Settings.’
5. Double-click **DCOM Machine Launch Restrictions. . .**
6. Click **Edit Security** and then click **Add**.
7. Click **Advanced**.
8. If you are asked to log on to the Domain, enter your login ID and password and click **OK**.
9. Click **Find Now**.
10. When the **Name(RDN)** list displays in the lower windowpane, select **ANONYMOUS LOGON** and click **OK**, then **OK** in the window that follows.

11. Verify that all permission for **ANONYMOUS LOGON** are set to **Allow**. Click **OK**.
12. Double-click **DCOM Machine Access Restrictions. . .**
13. Click **Edit Security** and then click **Add**.
14. Click **Advanced**.
15. If you are asked to log on to the Domain, enter your login ID and password and click **OK**.
16. Click **Find Now**.
17. When the **Name(RDN)** list displays in the lower windowpane, select **ANONYMOUS LOGON** and click **OK**, then **OK** in the window that follows.
18. Verify that all permission for **ANONYMOUS LOGON** are set to **Allow**. Click **OK**.
19. Exit the **Local Security Setting** window.
20. Continue with [“Creating a New Registry Key”](#).

4. Creating a New Registry Key

- **To create a new system registry key and set a value that causes the system to bypass RPC interface restrictions:**
 1. Click **Start**, then **Run**, and enter `regedit`.
 2. Expand the navigation tree in the left windowpane to display `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Policies\Microsoft\Windows NT`.
 3. Right-click **Windows NT** to display a shortcut menu and select **New**, then **Key**.
 4. Enter `RPC` as the title of the new key, and then click **Enter**.

5. Right-click RPC to display a shortcut menu, select **New**, and then select **DWORD Value**.
6. Enter the DWORD Value as `RestrictRemoteClients` and click **Enter**.
7. Right-click **RestrictRemoteClients** and select **Modify**.
8. When the **Edit DWORD Value** window displays, verify that the value equals 0.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the Registry Editor.

5. Restart Computers

1. Any computers (Server computers or client computers) that had adjustments to the configuration because Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 is being used in your Secure Perfect system, must be restarted at this time.
2. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 4.19.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

Licensing Your Secure Perfect System

GE recommends that you license your system at this time. The reminder to license is placed at this point to maintain the proper sequence in completing your installation.

➤ **To license your Secure Perfect system:**

Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#). After obtaining your registered license key as instructed in [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#), follow one of the sequences listed:

- [“First Time License” on page 10.6](#)
- [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 10.8](#)
- [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 10.9](#)
- [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 10.10](#)

Important!

REMINDER: When you have completed a successful licensing sequence, return to this point and continue.

➤ **After a successful licensing sequence, or if you click Cancel to license at another time:**

1. You may receive an **SP 6.1 Installation Complete** dialog box. If so, click **Yes** to reboot your computer.
2. Log on as administrator and continue with [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup”](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
		You are here!			

Setting Services to Automatic Startup

Note: At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.

Now, you need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.1 services start. Refer to “[Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview](#)” on page 11.2, for additional information about Secure Perfect Services.

► **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays. Expand the list of services and scroll down.

2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.

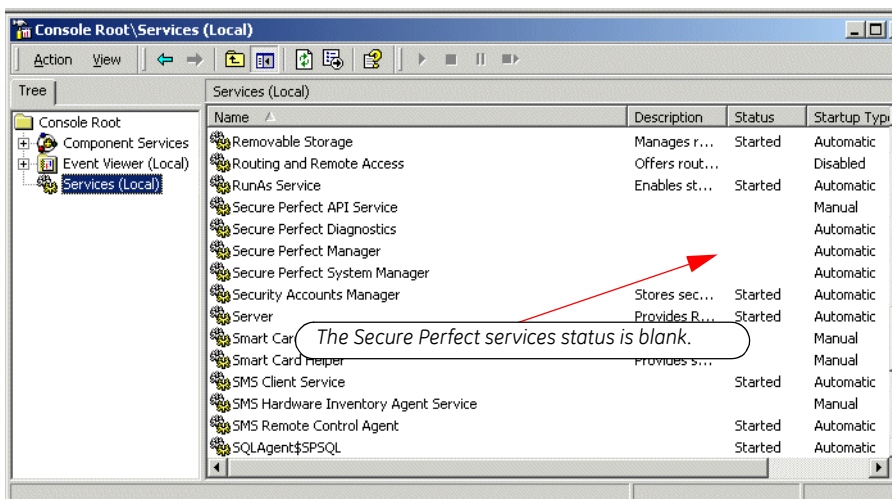


Figure 4-3. Secure Perfect Component Services

3. The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.
 4. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
 6. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
- **To start the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of an Application Program Interface (API) to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.1 and have been previously licensed.
- **When all services are configured:**
1. Close all windows and applications.
 2. Restart the Secure Perfect Server computer.
- **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
 - Secure Perfect Diagnostic
 - Secure Perfect System Manager
 - Secure Perfect Manager
 2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
 3. Exit the window.
 4. Continue with [“Server Folder Structure”](#).

Server Folder Structure

1. During installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software, the following folders are created: Client, Database, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Logs, MSDE2000 (if yours is a Windows Professional system), Rpt, SecureScripts, Signature and Video.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the Program Files/GE Interlogix/ Secure Perfect folder, or to the folder where your Secure Perfect application installed. The folders displayed here vary with the type of installation:
 - If **Typical Server Type** is selected, all folders are present.
 - If **Custom Server Type** is installed:
 - If only **Database Server** feature is installed, Database, Logs, and SecureScripts folders are present.
 - If only **File Server** feature is installed, Client, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Rpt, Signature, and Video folders are present.
 - If only **Secure Perfect Application** is installed, Client, English, Logs, and Rpt folders are present.
 - The MSDE2000 folder will display only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Server.
3. Some of the folders are shared. (Refer to the example in [Figure 4-4](#).) This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, when logged in as an authorized user.

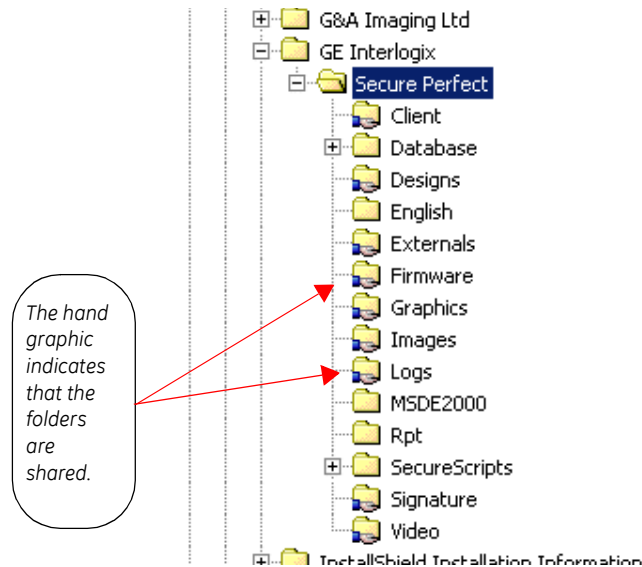


Figure 4-4. Typical Server Folder Structure

Server Folders

- **To learn more about the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, review these descriptions:**

Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions. This folder also contain an MSDEAdmin utility, used to access the Secure Perfect databases.

Database

A folder that contains the system database file along with the archive and history database files. SQL Server log files for each database are also found in this folder.

Designs

A shared folder that contains all badge designs used by the imaging stations and sample badge designs.

English

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.1 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

Externals

A shared, empty folder created to store reports created by third party report generators.

Firmware

A shared folder that contains the firmware or application code needed to flash the micros.

Graphics

A shared folder that contains maps and icons used for Alarm Graphics.

Images

A shared folder that contains graphics files of captured, badge holder pictures. Sample images are included if you installed the sample database.

Logs

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.1 diagnostic log files.

MSDE2000

This folder displays ONLY following Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ/ Professional Server Typical installation. The user may use these files if re-installation of MSDE is required. These files (Microsoft SQL Desktop Engine (MSDE) with Service Pack 3a) are used by the system during installation of Secure Perfect 6.1.

Rpt

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

SecureScripts

The scripts and programs used to create the database in SQL Server. It also contains subfolders required for converting and upgrading Secure Perfect systems to Secure Perfect 6.1.

Signature

A shared folder that contains a sample graphic signature file and the graphic files of captured signatures.

Video

A shared folder that contains captured video files.

When you have completed your review of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, continue with [“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts”](#).

Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts

Default local group is SPAdmin. Default local user name is secure and the password is master.

1. During the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer installation, a default Secure Perfect 6.1 local user account was set up for you. If you choose to add users and assign or change user passwords, review [“Defining User Accounts” on page 2.6](#).
2. Refer to documentation you received when you purchased your Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or Windows XP operating system, for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.
3. Continue with [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 4.25](#).

Adding Additional Clients to the Database

Pinging Additional Client Computers

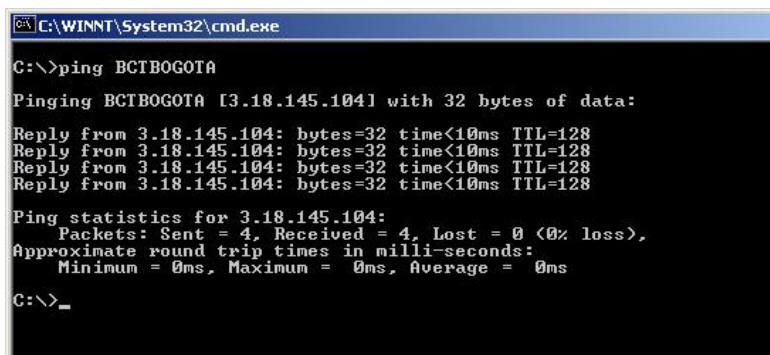
In order to add an additional client computer in the database, you must verify that the computer can be reached by name.

➤ **To communicate with the client computer from the Server computer:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

Result: A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <name>` where `<name>` is the name of the client computer. Press **Enter**.



```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping BCTBOG0TA

Pinging BCTBOG0TA [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128

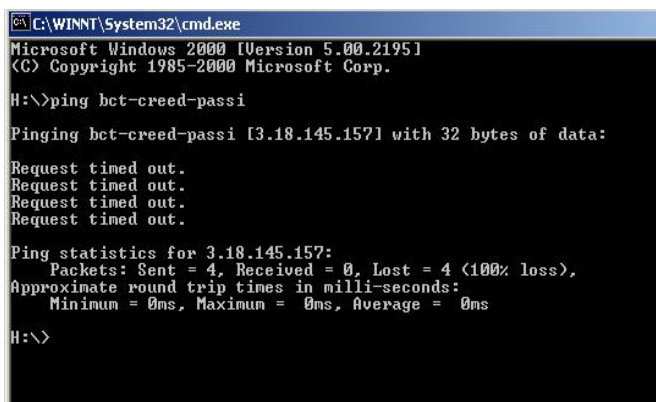
Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\>_
```

Figure 4-5. Successful Ping to Client Computer

Result: A successful ping reveals the client computer address was reached. Your window displays similar to [Figure 4-5](#). Proceed with “Adding Clients to the Database” on page 4.27.

OR



```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping bct-creed-pass1

Pinging bct-creed-pass1 [3.18.145.157] with 32 bytes of data:
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.157:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

H:\>
```

Figure 4-6. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer

Result: If the client computer could not be reached, your window will display similar to [Figure 4-6](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup, (see “Setting the Network Properties” on page 2.5) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

Note: You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved. Contact your network administrator.

4. Continue with [“Adding Clients to the Database”](#).

Adding Clients to the Database

You need to add all client computers to your Secure Perfect database that will be in your Secure Perfect system. To do this, log on to Windows using your Windows Logon USERID ‘secure’ and start the Secure Perfect 6.1 application.

➤ **To add clients to the Secure Perfect 6.1 database:**

1. When you have installed and licensed the Secure Perfect application for the first time (this is the First Time License computer), start the Secure Perfect 6.1 application by double-clicking the Secure Perfect desktop icon. The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Login**.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
			You are here!		

3. Log on as `secure` with a password of `master`.
4. If client computers have Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional installed and if they are on the network, you can access the Client Form in the Secure Perfect application, and proceed with adding clients to the database.


Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
				You are here!	


➤ **To access the Client Form:**

1. Select **Client** from the **Administration** menu.

Result: A new client form is displayed.

2. Click **Add**  from the Secure Perfect main menu.
3. Enter data describing your new client. Refer to Online Help for details of each individual field.

***Note:** If a client computer is currently offline or connected to the network by a gateway or hub, you may not see that computer. You may need to correct network issues with the client computer before proceeding. You may also see computers that cannot be clients if they do not use TCP/IP protocols.*

4. Click **Save**  .
5. Repeat [Step “2.” on page 4.28](#), through [Step 4.](#), for all clients.
6. You can add as many clients as you want. However, only the licensed maximum number can connect to the Server at the same time. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 10.12](#).

What's Next?

If you have not already removed the CD from your CD-ROM drive, do so now. You have completed the Server computer setup. Proceed with one or more of the following:

- If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#).
- Proceed to set up the additional client computers on your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients” on page 9.1](#).
- Proceed to configure your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1” on page 11.1](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
					<i>You are here!</i>

NOTES:

Chapter 5: Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition Server Software

This chapter includes instructions for installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 Server software on Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server computers. Follow instructions in the order presented. These instructions pertain to Secure Perfect Enterprise Edition.

Note: This Chapter is NOT for Global Edition installations. If you are installing a Secure Perfect Global Edition system, refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Global Database Server”](#) on page 6.1.



In this chapter:

[“Prepare to Install”](#) on page 5.2

[“TYPICAL Installation”](#) on page 5.6

[“CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition”](#) on page 5.10

[“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 5.71

[“Setting Services to Automatic Startup”](#) on page 5.72

[“Server Folder Structure”](#) on page 5.74

[“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts”](#) on page 5.77

[“Adding Additional Clients to the Database”](#) on page 5.77

[“What’s Next?”](#) on page 5.81

Prepare to Install

Note: Your Secure Perfect 6.1 system *WILL NOT* install unless minimum requirements have been met. Before you begin, refer to “[Recommended Minimum Hardware and Software Requirements](#)” on page 1.3 and “[Pre-Installation Checklist](#)” on page 3.2.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!					

If you purchased this system from GE, Secure Perfect 6.1 is installed for you. Skip to “[Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1](#)” on page 11.1.

► To prepare your computer for installation of the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select SPSQL instance of SQL Server.
- When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the sa password `master`.
- When the **Backward Compatibility Checklist** displays, select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.

4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins.”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

Selecting Installation Type

➤ To continue, your next step is to select **ONE** type of installation:

1. Select **Typical** or **Custom**.

Typical Installation Type:

The installation requires little user interaction and you do not need to make any special choices. Follow instructions in [“TYPICAL Installation” on page 5.6](#).

Custom Installation Type:

If you need to accomplish any one of the following tasks, you must select Custom:

- Use Badge Aliasing.
- Change the password for the Window logon USERID 'secure.'

Note: *If you change the default Secure Perfect user password, all computers must use the identical Secure Perfect user replacement password.*

- Select options for Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from the Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by the customer. Refer to [“Custom Configuration Options” on page 5.12](#) for a list of possible configuration options.

Continue by proceeding to the section appropriate to your operating system:

TYPICAL Installation

➤ **To continue with a Typical installation, follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Next**.
2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Server** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Important!

3. An SQL Server Password dialog box displays. You must enter the SQL Server 'sa' password in the dialog box. This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#). Enter your previously assigned SQL password here. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of `master` was assigned for you.)
4. The default program folder is indicated. You may want to install Secure Perfect in another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice, for placement of Secure Perfect files.
5. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This takes several minutes.

➤ **To finish your installation, continue with one of the following Typical installation instructions, depending on the system you are installing:**

1. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 5-1 on page 5.7](#)

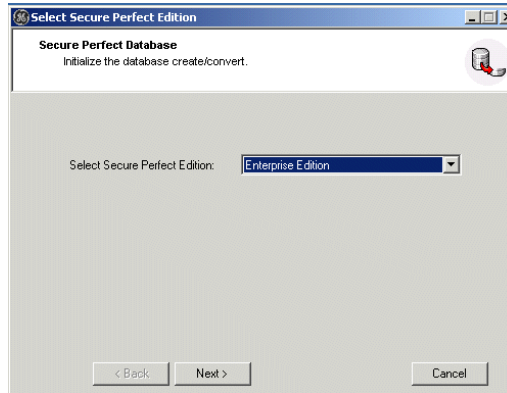


Figure 5-1. Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select **Enterprise Edition** and click **Next**.

If you purchased this system from GE, the database is created for you.

➤ **To create a database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-2](#).

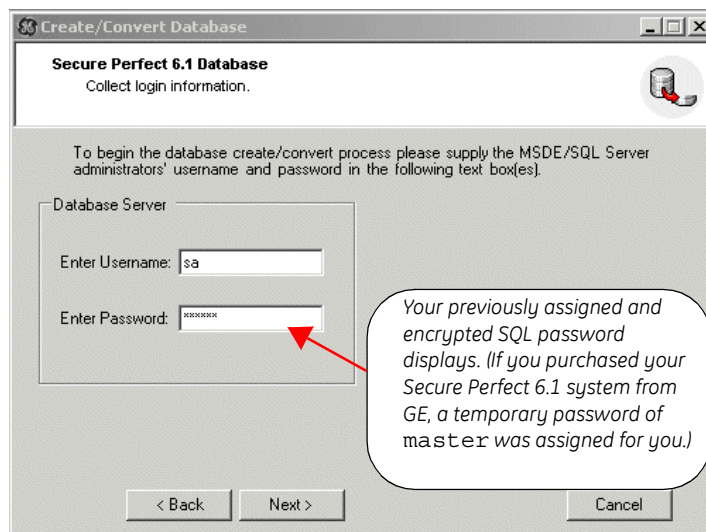


Figure 5-2. Create/Convert Database Window

2. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL **sa** password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of `master` was assigned for you.)
3. Click **Next** to display the **Create Database** window, as in [Figure 5-3](#).

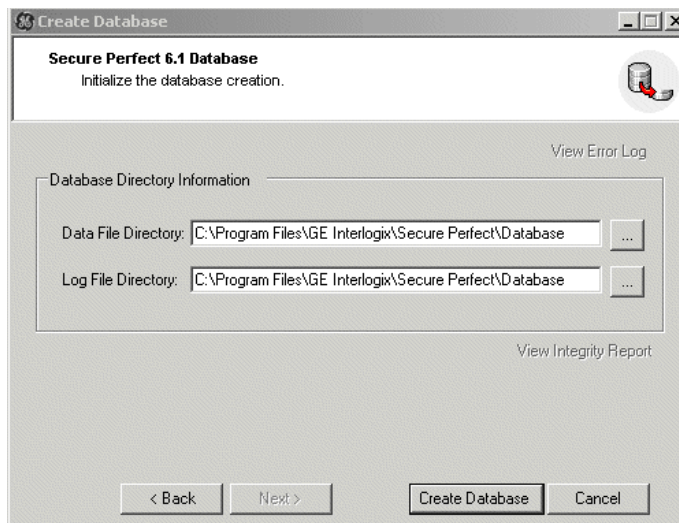




Figure 5-3. Create Database Window

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
 - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.
6. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

7. Click **OK**.

Result: The dialog box closes. Installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 is complete. An **SP License Setup** window displays.

8. Operation of your Secure Perfect 6.1 system is possible at this time; however, the system will start and remain in Demo Mode until you properly license Secure Perfect. (Refer to [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence”](#) on page 10.10 for a description of Demo Mode.)
9. Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 5.71.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!					

CUSTOM Installation for Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition

Recommended for experienced software installers.

***Note:** You **MUST** select **Custom** to achieve any of the following:*

- *Badge aliasing*
- *Change the password for the Window logon USERID 'secure.'*
- *Selectively installing **Database Server**, **File Server**, or **Secure Perfect Application**. These configuration options allow Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by you.*

*Installing Secure Perfect in a Cluster environment requires special configuration. Refer to the document, *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*, included on your Document CD that shipped with your Secure Perfect system. Contact the Enterprise Services Department of GE, at (561) 998-6168, to discuss Windows Clustering setup and installation before installing Secure Perfect 6.1. GE security business Sales or Customer Support, at (561) 998-6100, can provide additional details of these services and a quotation applicable to your system configuration.*

➤ **To begin your Custom installation:**

1. When you select **Custom** as the type of installation and click **Next**, the **Custom Configuration** window displays for you to choose which Secure Perfect features to configure on this computer. The **Custom Configuration** window displays similar to [Figure 5-4 on page 5.11](#).

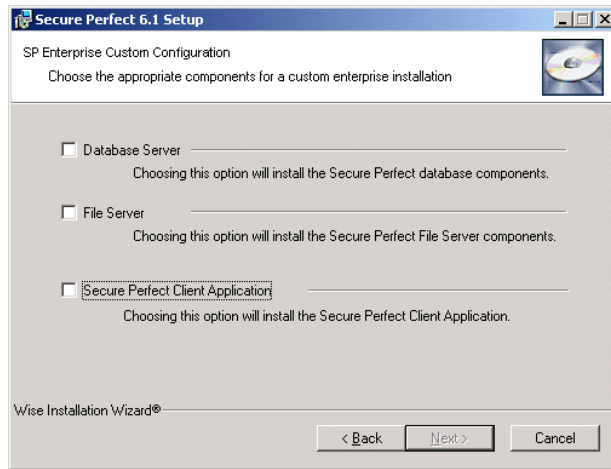


Figure 5-4. Enterprise Server - Custom Configuration

2. Select one or more of the options pertaining to the system you are installing:

***Note:** Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin.*

Database Server: Selecting this option designates this Server as the Database Server. This Server is then used to store the three databases, SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory. An additional selection divides data files and transaction logs. The **Database Server** option is a prerequisite in order to install **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Application**.

File Server: Selecting this option designates this Server as the Secure Perfect File Server. This Server stores the data files shared by clients on the Secure Perfect network. File shares include graphics, images, signatures, designs, and firmware. The File Server option is a prerequisite in order to install Secure Perfect Application.

Secure Perfect Application: Selecting this option designates this Server for the Secure Perfect application. Secure Perfect client file

shares install. This includes the executable file, Secure Perfect services, and Secure Perfect DLLs.

3. When you have selected the appropriate options, click **Next**.

Custom Configuration Options

Recommended for experienced software installers.

The scenarios in the following custom configurations are the result of selections made on the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window. Refer to [Figure 5-4 on page 5.11](#).

Table 5-1: Custom Configuration Options




NOTE: Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin. (Windows that display during installation are similar to the sample configurations presented.)

Scenario	Begin on Page:
1.	"Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application Configuration" on page 5.13
2.	"Database Server and File Server Configuration" on page 5.20
3.	"Database Server and Secure Perfect Application Configuration" on page 5.32
4.	"Database Server Configuration" on page 5.43
5.	"Each Component on a Separate Computer" on page 5.55

IMPORTANT: When you select a scenario, be sure to complete all instructions for that scenario.

1. Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application Configuration

Scenario 1: All Components on One Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server	◆		
Secure Perfect Application	◆		

Note: This configuration has all components installed on Computer 1. Although these are the same components as **Typical**, you chose **Custom** to use badge aliasing or change the secure password.

► If you selected Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:

1. The Select Badge Aliasing Option window displays as in [Figure 5-5](#).

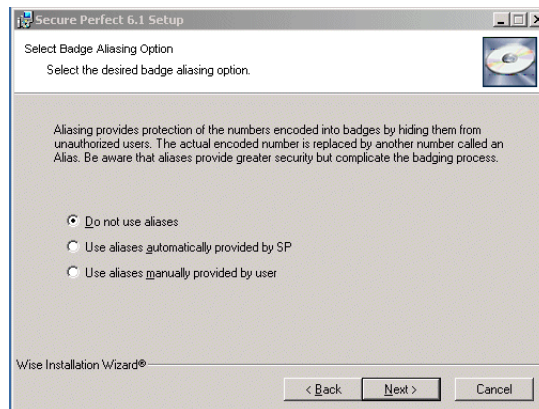


Figure 5-5. Badge Alias Window

2. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
3. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 5-6](#).



Figure 5-6. Change the 'secure' Password Window

4. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

5. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Enter your previously assigned SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).
7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: A series of Access Control and Security Management windows display as Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 5-7 on page 5.16](#).

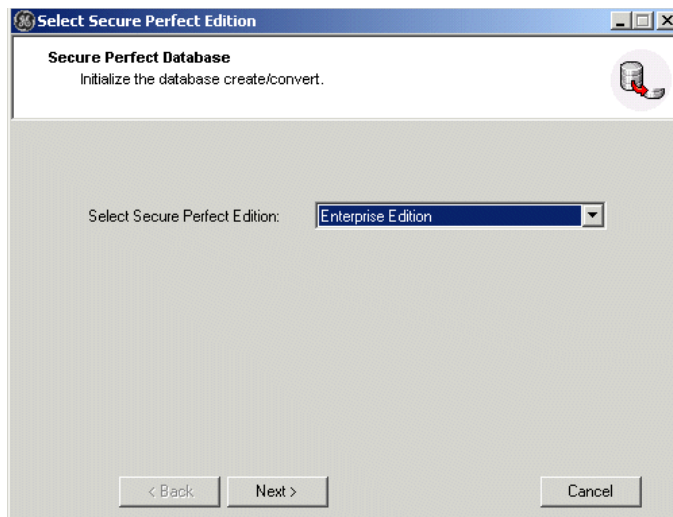


Figure 5-7. Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Click **Next**.

► **To create a database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-8 on page 5.17](#).

Important!

Note: We recommend that you *DO NOT* select **Cancel** in this window. However, if you must exit at this time and plan to create your database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 11.5](#) to complete a database creation outside of the installation sequence, from the Run menu.

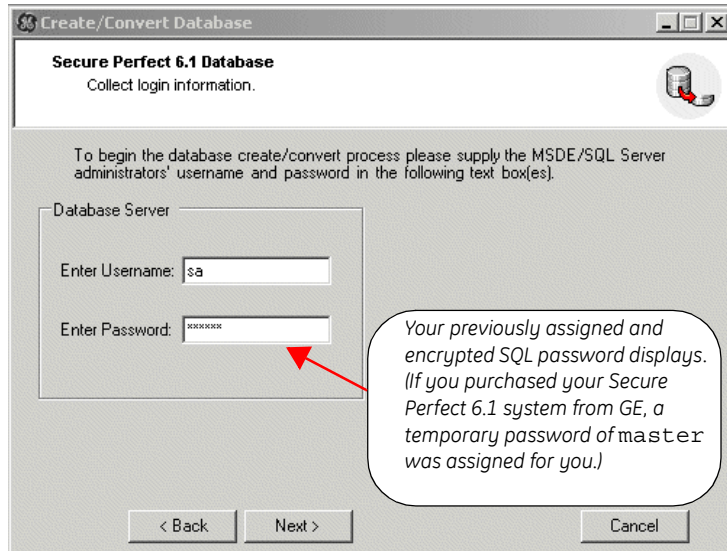


Figure 5-8. Create/Convert Database Window

If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.

2. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
3. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Database Directory Information** window displays, as in [Figure 5-9 on page 5.18](#).

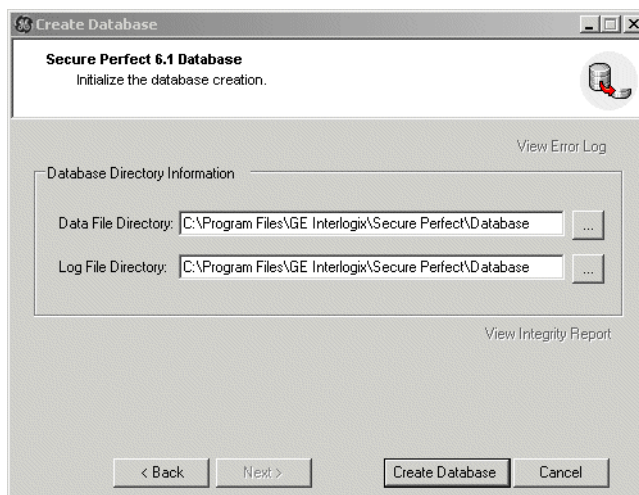




Figure 5-9. Secure Perfect 6.1 Database Window

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
 - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.
- Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*
5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

6. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

Note: *A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

7. Click **OK**.

Result: The dialog box closes. You may receive a message informing you that Installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 is complete. If you get a message to restart the system, click **Yes** to restart your system at this time.




Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!					

Note: *Be sure to complete all instructions for the scenario you are installing.*

2. Database Server and File Server Configuration

Scenario 2: Database Server and File Server on One Computer Secure Perfect Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server	◆		
Secure Perfect Application		◆	

***Note:** This configuration has the Database Server and the File Server installed on Computer 1, then the Secure Perfect application is installed on Computer 2.*

➤ **If you selected Database Server and File Server on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 5-10](#).

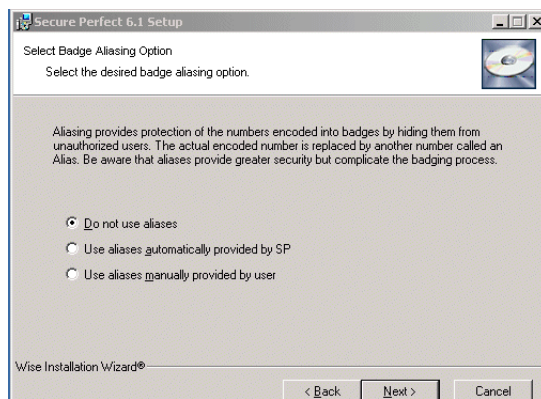


Figure 5-10. Badge Alias Window

2. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
3. Choose one aliasing option and click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-11](#).



Figure 5-11. Change the 'secure' Password Window

4. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

5. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user.

7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

8. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 5-12 on page 5.23](#).

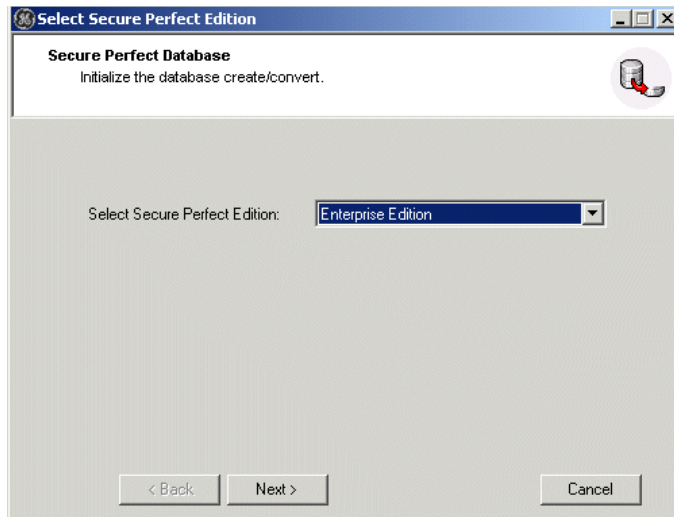


Figure 5-12. Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Click **Next**.
- **To create a database:**
1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-13 on page 5.24](#).

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window. However, if you must exit at this time and plan to create your database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 11.5](#) to complete a database creation outside of the installation sequence, from the Run menu.

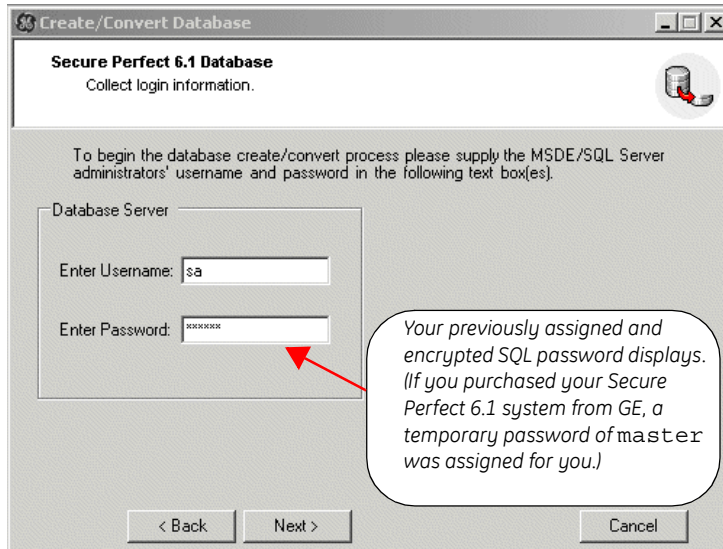


Figure 5-13. Create/Convert Database Window

If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.

2. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
3. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Database Directory Information** window displays, as in [Figure 5-14 on page 5.25](#).

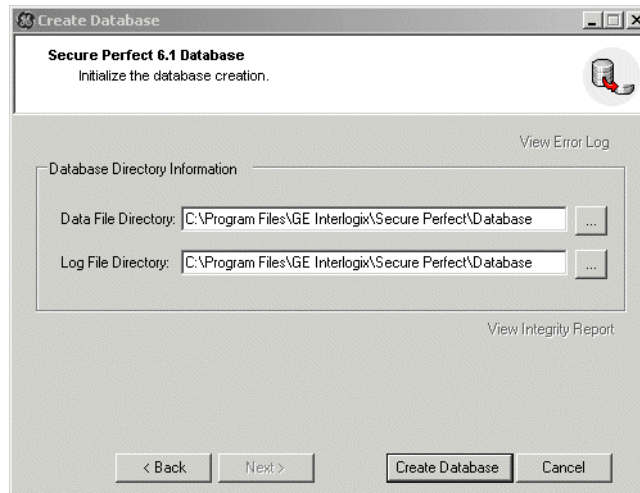




Figure 5-14. Secure Perfect 6.1 Database Window

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
 - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*
5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

6. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

Note: *A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

➤ **After creating your database:**

Important!

1. Remove the Secure Perfect installation CD, and continue with instructions to install **Secure Perfect Application**. Follow instructions for the operating system installed on second computer:

- “If you install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system.”

OR

- “If you install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system.” on page 5.27

➤ **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

Note: *Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

Continue with instructions as listed in “Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients” on page 9.1.

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system, but DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer
- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select SPSQL instance of SQL Server.

- When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password master.
 - Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:”](#).

► **When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:**

Note: A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, as in [Figure 5-15](#), select the type of installation as **Custom**.

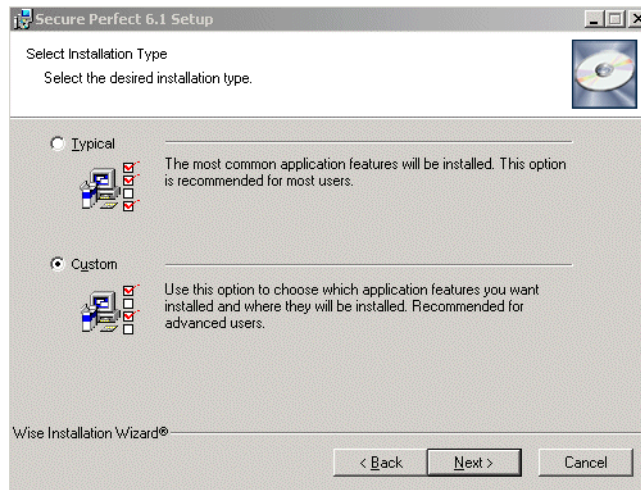


Figure 5-15. Select Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.
5. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Application**.
6. The **Database and File Server** window displays as in [Figure 5-16 on page 5.30](#).

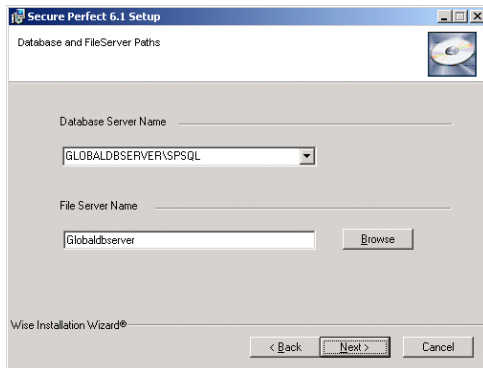


Figure 5-16. Database and File Server Paths

7. If the name displayed in **Database Server Name** is not appropriate, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the name displayed in **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-17 on page 5.31](#).



Figure 5-17. Change the 'secure' Password Window

9. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

10. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.




12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
13. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 5.71.](#)

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

3. Database Server and Secure Perfect Application Configuration

Scenario 3: Database Server and Secure Perfect Application on One Computer File Server on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Application	◆		
Note: This configuration has the Database Server and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 1, while the File Server is installed on Computer 2.			

► **If you selected Database Server and Secure Perfect Application on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. A window displays similar to [Figure 5-18](#).

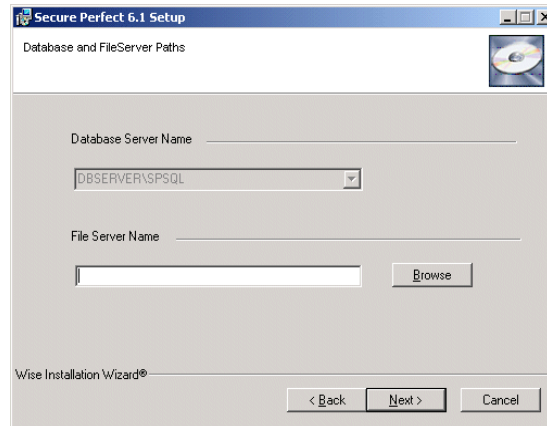


Figure 5-18. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry. (If there is more than one Server with SPSQL, the Database Server Name field is enabled. Select the appropriate Server name.)
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to another computer that will serve as **File Server** for your system, and then select that computer to display the computer name in this dialog box.

***Note:** You must install **File Server** on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.*

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays, as in [Figure 5-19 on page 5.34](#).

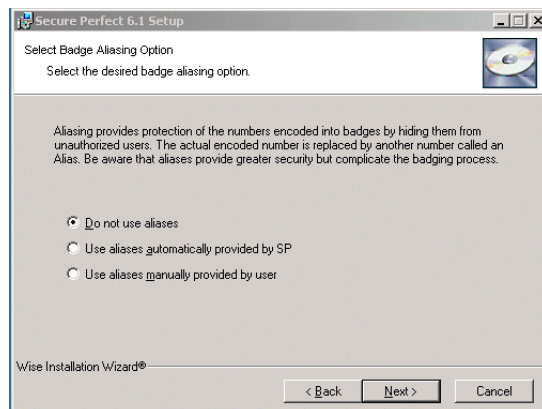


Figure 5-19. Badge Alias Window

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option and click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-20 on page 5.35](#).



Figure 5-20. Change the 'secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called *secure*. By default, the password is *master*. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the *secure* user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

9. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
10. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 5-21](#).

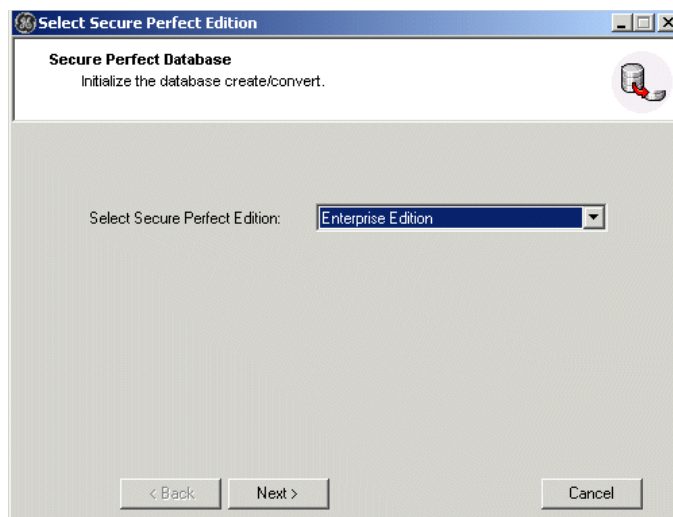


Figure 5-21. Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Click **Next**.

➤ **To create a database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-22 on page 5.37](#).

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window. However, if you must exit at this time and plan to create your database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 11.5](#) to complete a database creation outside of the installation sequence, from the Run menu.

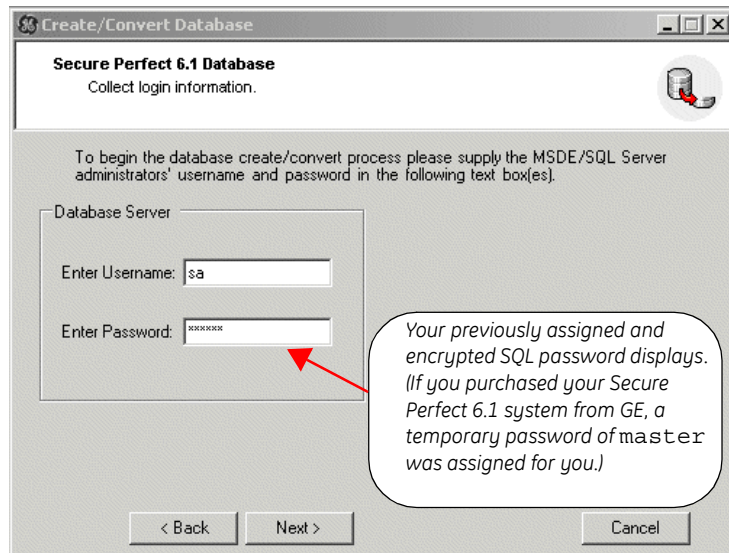


Figure 5-22. Create/Convert Database Window

If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.

2. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
3. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Database Directory Information** window displays, as in [Figure 5-23 on page 5.38](#).

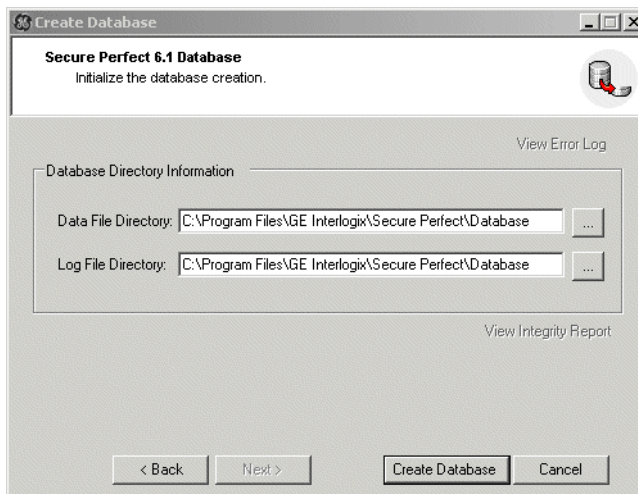




Figure 5-23. Secure Perfect 6.1 Database Window

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
 - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

6. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

Note: *A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

7. However, YOU CANNOT LICENSE AT THIS TIME. Click **Cancel** to exit **License Setup**.

➤ **After creating your database:**

Important!

1. Click **Yes** to reboot your system at this time. After the reboot, log on as administrator.
2. Continue with configuration of the File Server on a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer.

➤ **Now, you must select and install ONLY the File Server component on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

Note: *Prerequisite: Database Server and Secure Perfect Application installation already complete.*

If you do not install the File Server at this time, you will not be able to license your system.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.

3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later

- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#).

► **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

4. Select **ONLY File Server**. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the ‘secure’ Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-24 on page 5.42](#).



Figure 5-24. Change the 'secure' Password Window

5. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator.
6. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
7. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

8. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

Important!




11. Proceed to license your system at this time. Refer to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 5.71.](#)

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	<i>You are here!</i>				

4. Database Server Configuration

Scenario 4: Database Server on One Computer File Server and Secure Perfect Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Application		◆	

***Note:** This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, then the File Server and the Secure Perfect application are installed on Computer 2.*

➤ **If you selected ONLY Database Server component on the SP Enterprise Custom Configuration window:**

1. A window displays similar to [Figure 5-25](#).

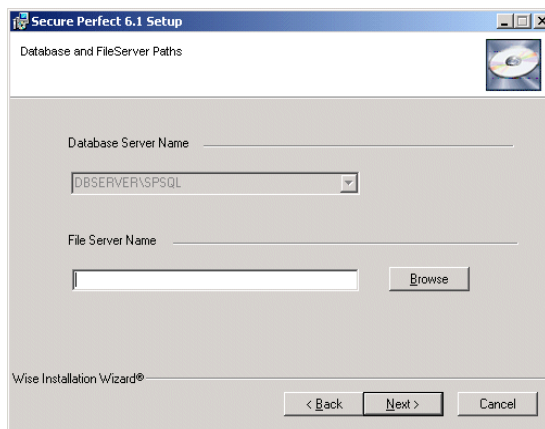


Figure 5-25. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Enter the computer name or click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer for your system, and then select the computer to display the name in this field.

***Note:** You must install the **File Server** component on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.*

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays, as in [Figure 5-26 on page 5.45](#).

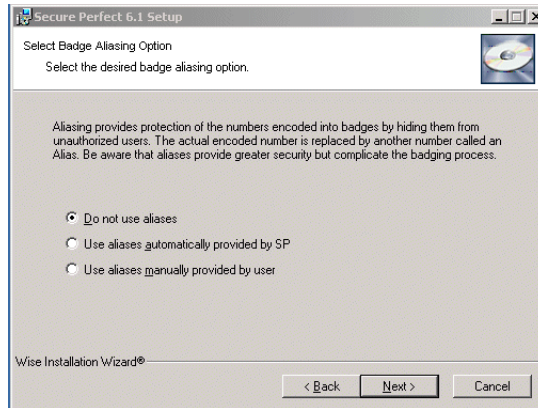


Figure 5-26. Badge Alias Window

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option and click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-27 on page 5.46](#).



Figure 5-27. Change the 'secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator.
8. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
9. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

10. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)

11. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

12. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: SP 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

13. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

14. Remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 5-28](#).

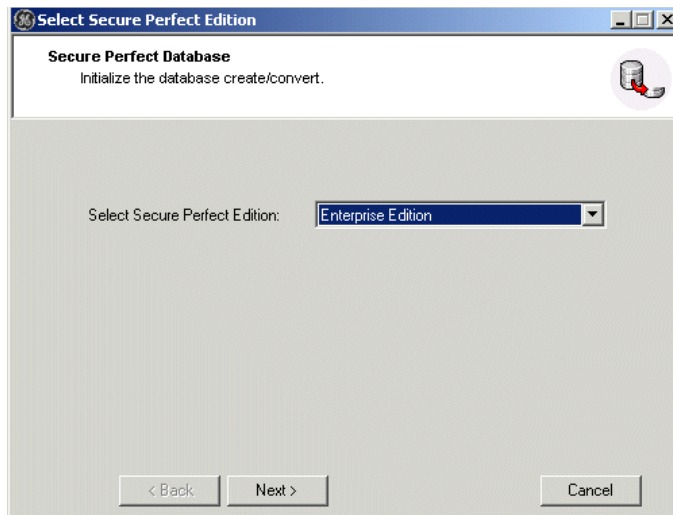


Figure 5-28. Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Click **Next**.

► **To create a database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-29](#).

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window. However, if you must exit at this time and plan to create your database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 11.5](#) to complete a database creation outside of the installation sequence, from the Run menu.

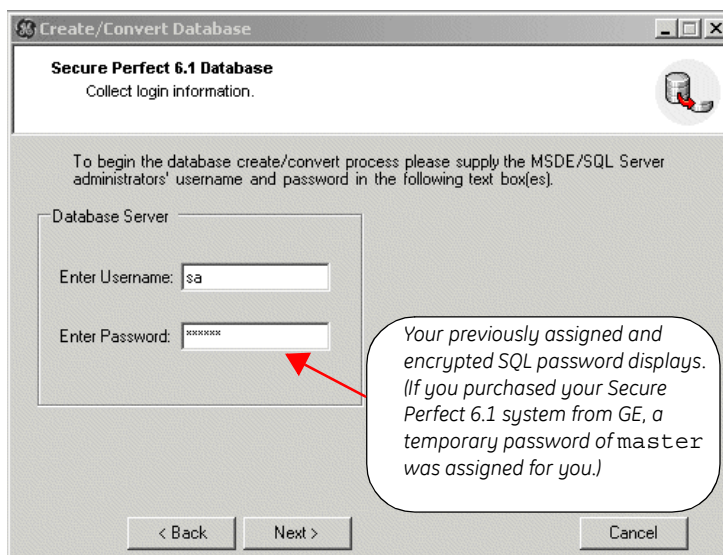


Figure 5-29. Create/Convert Database Window

If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.

2. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
3. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Database Directory Information** window displays, as in [Figure 5-30 on page 5.49](#).

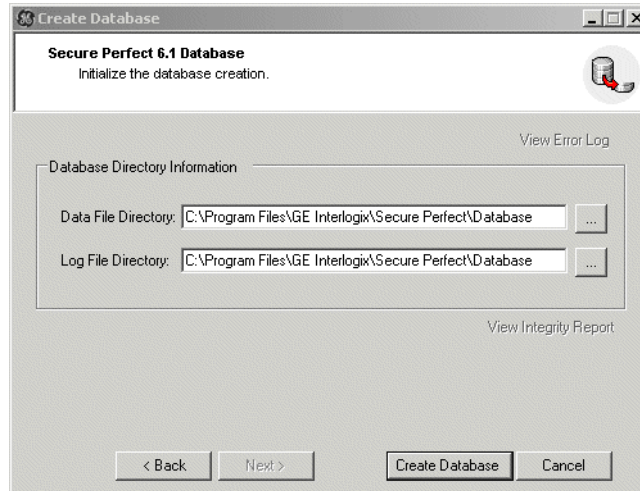




Figure 5-30. Secure Perfect 6.1 Database Window

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
 - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

6. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

Note: *A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

7. Click **OK**.

Important! ➤ **After creating your database, you are ready and must install File Server and Secure Perfect Application on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

Note: *Prerequisite: Database Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.

8. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins. The Welcome window displays.
9. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#).

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, as in [Figure 5-31](#), select the type of installation as **Custom**.

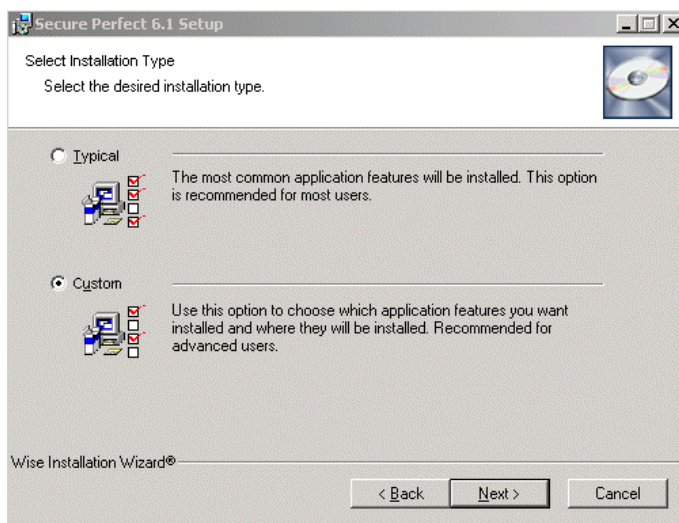


Figure 5-31. Selection Installation Type - Custom

- Click **Next**.

Result: The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

- Select **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Application**. Click **Next**.

Result: A window displays similar to [Figure 5-32](#).

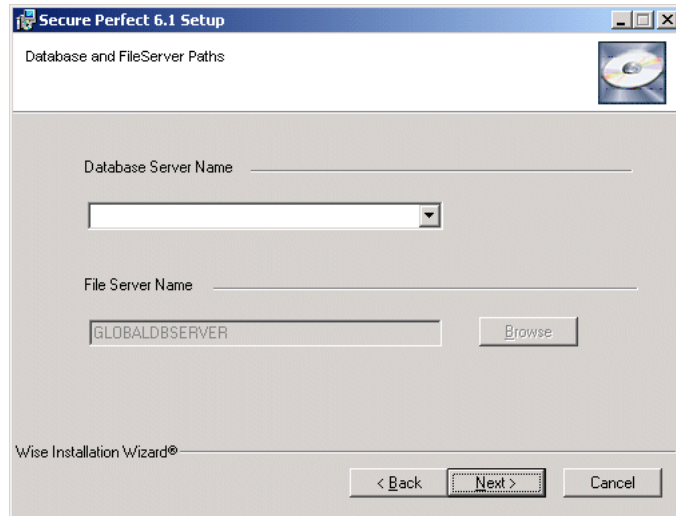


Figure 5-32. Database Server Name Required

- The **Database Server Name** field is available and required. Select a Server Name from the drop-down list of eligible SQL Servers for this installation.
- The **File Server Name** is a read-only field and is unavailable for selection.
- Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-33 on page 5.54](#).



Figure 5-33. Change the 'secure' Password Window

9. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator.
10. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

12. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

13. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

14. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The **SP License Setup** window displays.




15. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive and continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 5.71.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	<i>You are here!</i>				

5. Each Component on a Separate Computer

Scenario 5: Each Component on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Application			◆

Note: This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, the File Server installed on Computer 2, and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 3.

- **To install each Secure Perfect component to a separate computer, you must begin with the Database Server installation on the first computer.**

1. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Database Server**:

Result: A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 5-34](#).

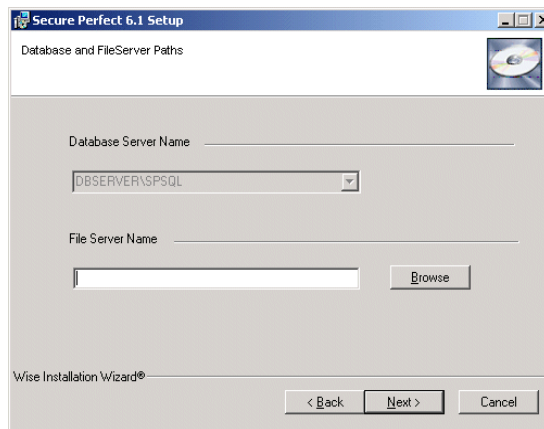


Figure 5-34. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and FileServer Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer you will be using for your system, and then select the computer name to display the computer name in this dialog box.

Note: You must install File Server on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays, as in [Figure 5-35 on page 5.57](#).

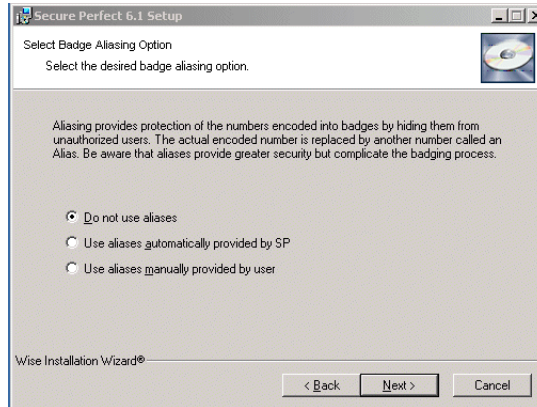


Figure 5-35. Badge Alias Window

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option and click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-36 on page 5.58](#).



Figure 5-36. Change the 'secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Enter your sa password as created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).

9. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user.
10. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect Database Server files.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

► **To select a Secure Perfect Edition:**

1. From the drop-down list of Secure Perfect editions, select **Enterprise Edition**, as displayed in [Figure 5-37](#).

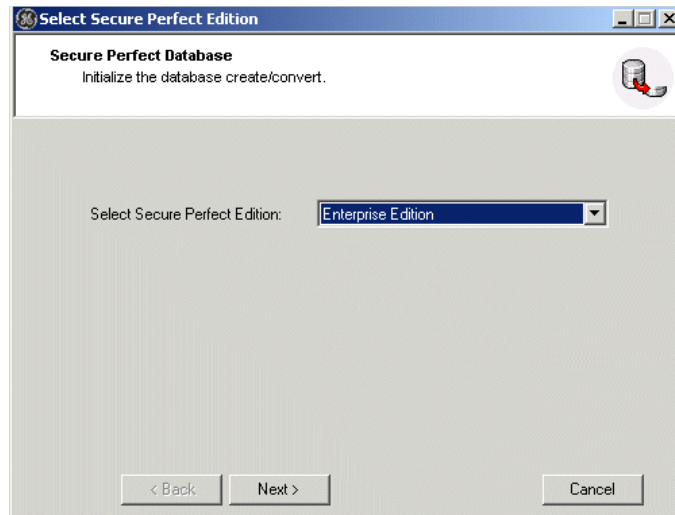


Figure 5-37. Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Click **Next**.

► **To create a database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window displays, as in [Figure 5-38 on page 5.60](#).

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window. However, if you must exit at this time and plan to create your database at another time, refer to [“Create SP Database” on page 11.5](#) to complete a database creation outside of the installation sequence, from the Run menu.

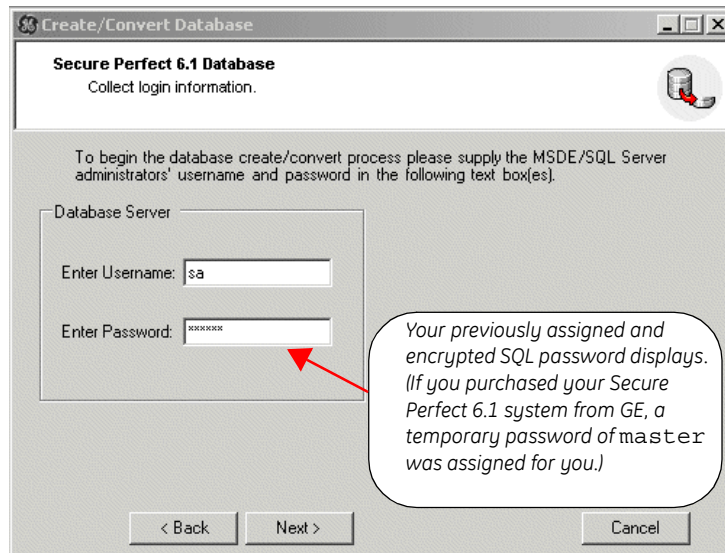


Figure 5-38. Create/Convert Database Window

If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.

2. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
3. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Database Directory Information** window displays, as in [Figure 5-39 on page 5.61](#).

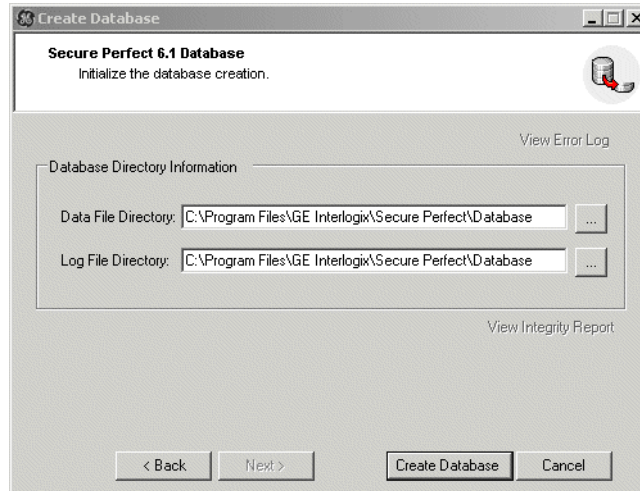




Figure 5-39. Secure Perfect 6.1 Database Window

4. The default directories are indicated. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.
 - **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Review the **Database Directory Information**. If acceptable, click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

6. When the database creation is complete, a message displays informing you that the database was successfully created/converted.

Note: *A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

7. Click **OK**. The dialog box closes.

► **Now, you must install the File Server to a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0

- MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome

window displays. Continue with “[When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:](#)” .

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Select Installation Type** window displays as in [Figure 5-40](#).

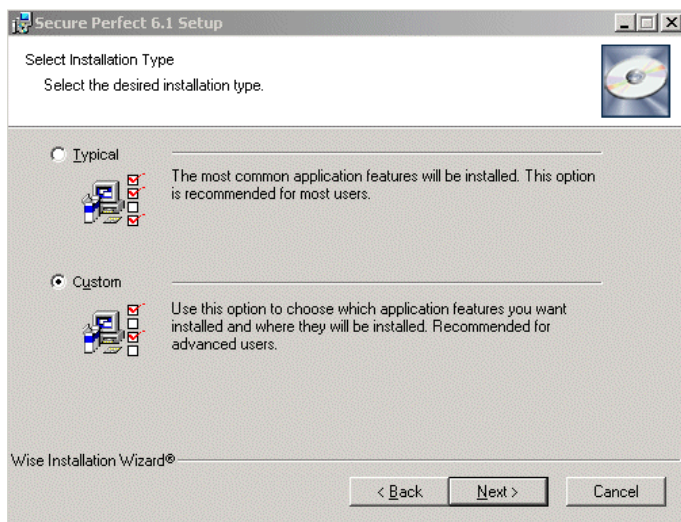


Figure 5-40. Select Installation Type - Custom

3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**. Click **Next**.
4. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY File Server**.

5. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 5-41](#).

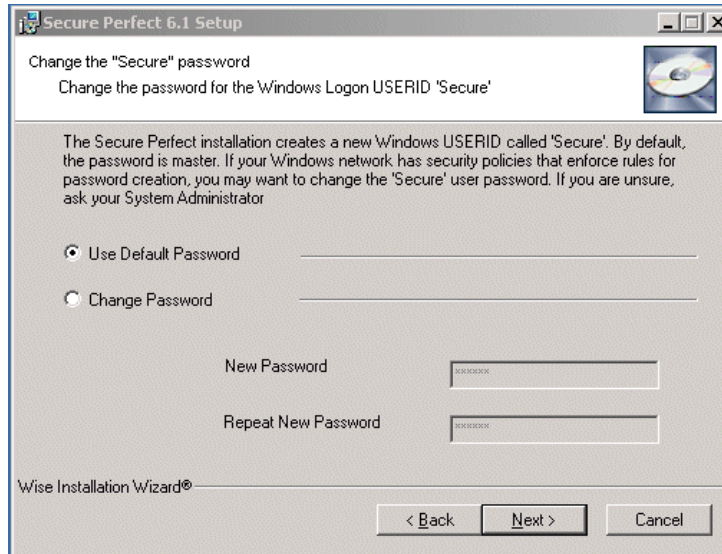


Figure 5-41. Change the 'secure' Password Window

6. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
- **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
7. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

8. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
11. Now, install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Application on a third computer.

► **If the third computer is Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

Follow the steps as listed in [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients”](#) on page 9.1.

► **If you choose to install ONLY the Secure Perfect Application component on a third and separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the **Welcome** window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#).

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, as in [Figure 5-42](#), select the type of installation as **Custom**.

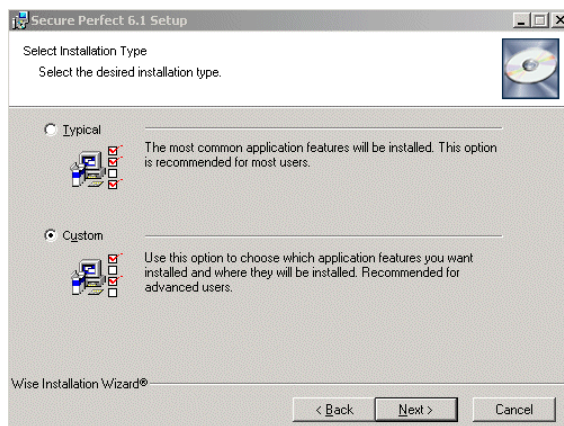


Figure 5-42. Select Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.
5. On the **SP Enterprise Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Application**, and click **Next**.
6. The following window displays:

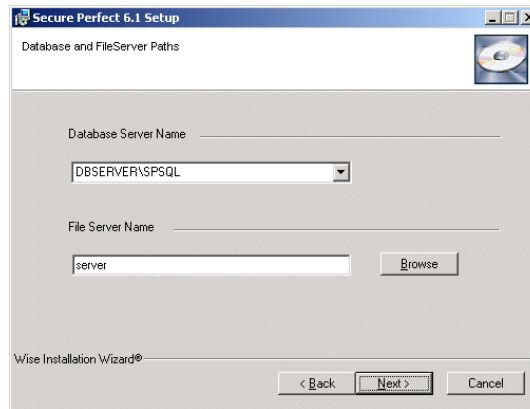


Figure 5-43. Database and File Server Paths

7. If the name displayed in **Database Server Name** is not correct, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the name displayed in **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
13. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 5.71](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

When Enterprise Custom Configurations are Complete:

Note: Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 5.71](#), if you have not already licensed. **REMINDER:** Have you installed all components of your selected installation?

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!				

Licensing Your Secure Perfect System

GE recommends that you license your system at this time. The reminder to license is placed at this point to maintain the proper sequence in completing your installation.

➤ **To license your Secure Perfect system:**

Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#). After obtaining your registered license key as instructed in [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#), follow one of the sequences listed:

- [“First Time License” on page 10.6](#)
- [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 10.8](#)
- [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 10.9](#)
- [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 10.10](#)

Important!

REMINDER: *When you have completed a successful licensing sequence, return to this point and continue.*

➤ **After a successful licensing sequence, or if you click Cancel to license at another time:**

1. You may receive an **SP 6.1 Installation Complete** dialog box. If so, click **Yes** to reboot your computer.
2. Log on as administrator and continue with [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 5.72](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
		You are here!			

Setting Services to Automatic Startup

Note: At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.

Now, you need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics, Secure Perfect Manager, and Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.1 services start. Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2](#), for additional information about Secure Perfect Services.

ONLY Enterprise Installation: No services are installed at this point if this is a custom installation and Secure Perfect Application is not yet installed.

➤ **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays. Expand the list of services and scroll down.

2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.

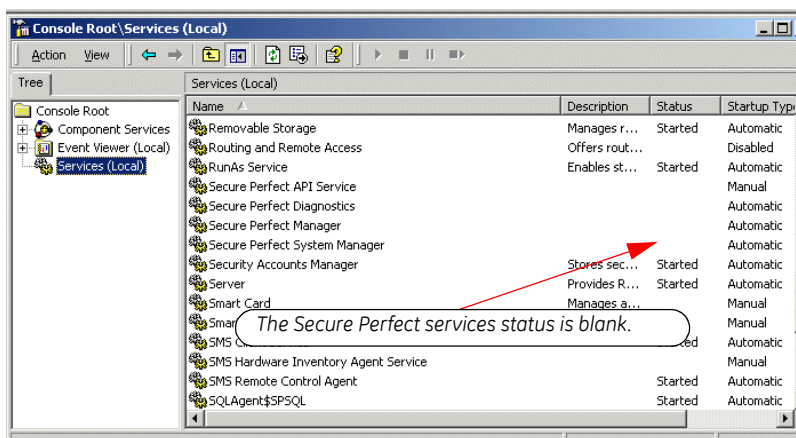


Figure 5-44. Secure Perfect Component Services

3. The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.
 4. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
 6. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
- **To start the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of an Application Program Interface (API) to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.1 and have been previously licensed.
- **When all services are configured:**
1. Close all windows and applications.
 2. Restart the Secure Perfect Server computer.
- **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
 - Secure Perfect Diagnostic
 - Secure Perfect System Manager
 - Secure Perfect Manager
 2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
 3. Exit the window.
 4. Continue with [“Server Folder Structure” on page 5.74](#).

Server Folder Structure

1. During installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software, the following folders are created: Client, Database, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Logs, MSDE2000 (if yours is a Windows Professional system), Rpt, SecureScripts, Signature, and Video.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the Program Files/GE Interlogix/ Secure Perfect folder, or to the folder where your Secure Perfect application installed. The folders displayed here vary with the type of installation:
 - If **Typical Server Type** is selected, all folders are present.
 - If **Custom Server Type** is installed:
 - If only **Database Server** feature is installed, Database, Logs, and SecureScripts folders are present.
 - If only **File Server** feature is installed, Client, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Rpt, Signature, and Video folders are present.
 - If only **Secure Perfect Application** is installed, Client, English, Logs, and Rpt folders are present.
 - The MSDE2000 folder will display only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Server.
3. Some of the folders are shared. (Refer to the example in [Figure 5-45 on page 5.75.](#)) This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, when logged in as an authorized user.

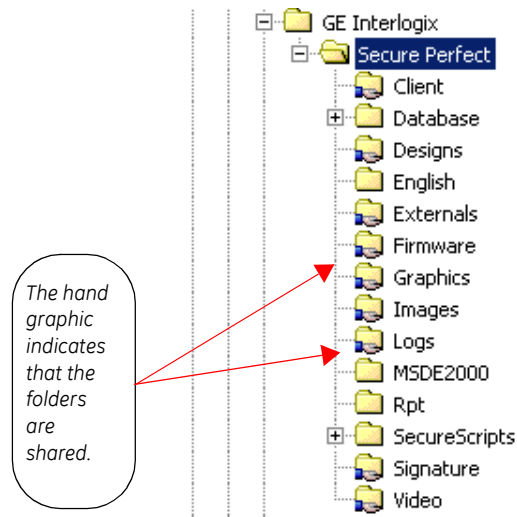


Figure 5-45. Typical Server Folder Structure

Server Folders

- **To learn more about the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, review these descriptions:**

Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions. This folder also contains an MSDEAdmin utility, used to access the Secure Perfect databases.

Database

A folder that contains the system database file along with the archive and history database files. SQL Server log files for each database are also found in this folder.

Designs

A shared folder that contains all badge designs used by the imaging stations and sample badge designs.

English

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.1 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

Externals

A shared empty folder created to store reports created by third party report generators.

Firmware

A shared folder that contains the firmware or application code needed to flash the micros.

Graphics

A shared folder that contains maps and icons used for Alarm Graphics.

Images

A shared folder that contains graphics files of captured, badge holder pictures. Sample images are included if you installed the sample database.

Logs

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.1 diagnostic log files.

MSDE2000

This folder displays ONLY following Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Server Typical installation. The user may use these files if re-installation of MSDE is required. These files (Microsoft SQL Desktop Engine (MSDE) with Service Pack 3a) are used by the system during installation of Secure Perfect 6.1.

Rpt

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

SecureScripts

The scripts and programs used to create the database in SQL Server. It also contains subfolders required for converting and upgrading Secure Perfect systems to Secure Perfect 6.1.

Signature

A shared folder that contains a sample graphical signature file and the graphic files of captured signatures.

Video

A shared folder that contains captured video files.

When you have completed your review of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, continue with [“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts”](#).

Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts

Default local group is SPAdmin. Default local user name is secure and the password is master.

1. During the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer installation, a default Secure Perfect 6.1 local user account was set up for you. If you choose to add users and assign or change user passwords, review [“Defining User Accounts” on page 2.6.](#)
2. Refer to documentation you received when you purchased your Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or Windows XP operating system, for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.
3. Continue with [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database”](#).

Adding Additional Clients to the Database

Pinging Additional Client Computers

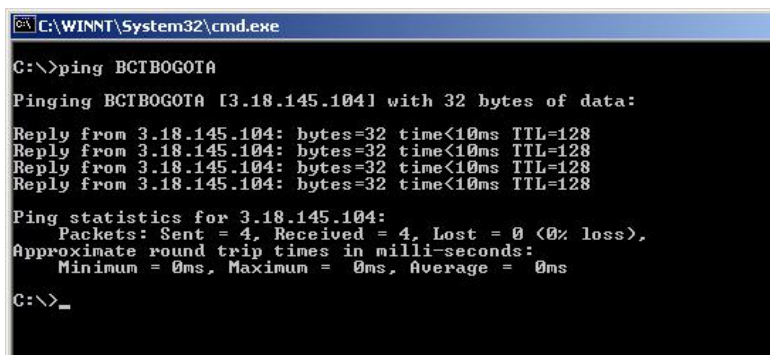
In order to add an additional client computer in the database, you must verify that the computer can be reached by name.

➤ **To communicate with the client computer from the Server Computer:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

Result: A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <name>` where `<name>` is the name of the client computer. Press **Enter**.



```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping BCTBOG0TA

Pinging BCTBOG0TA [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128

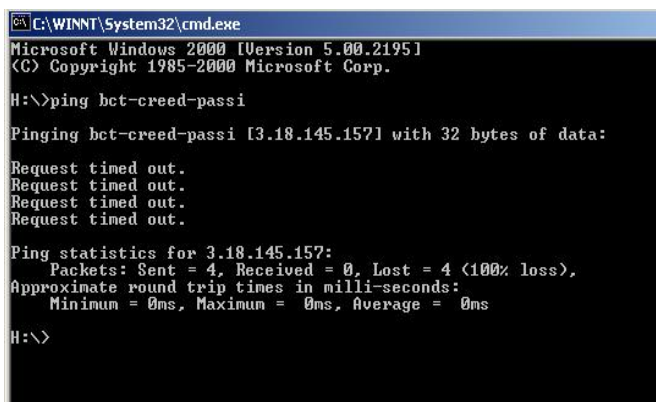
Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\>_
```

Figure 5-46. Successful Ping to Client Computer

Result: A successful ping reveals the client computer address was reached. Your window will display similar to [Figure 5-46](#). Proceed with “Adding Clients to the Database” on page 5.79.

OR



```
C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping bct-creed-pass1

Pinging bct-creed-pass1 [3.18.145.157] with 32 bytes of data:
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.157:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

H:\>
```

Figure 5-47. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer

Result: If the client computer could not be reached, your window will display similar to [Figure 5-47](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup (“[Preparing the Operating System](#)” on page 3.6 for a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

Note: You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved. Contact your network administrator.

4. Continue with [“Adding Clients to the Database”](#).

Adding Clients to the Database

You need to add all client computers to your Secure Perfect database that will be in your Secure Perfect system. To do this, log on to Windows using your Windows Logon USERID ‘secure’ and start the Secure Perfect 6.1 application.

► To add clients to the Secure Perfect 6.1 database:

1. When you have installed and licensed the Secure Perfect application for the first time (this is the First Time License computer), start the Secure Perfect 6.1 application by double-clicking the Secure Perfect desktop icon.
 - **Typical Installation:** The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
 - **Custom Installation:** The components required to license may be stored on two separate computers:
 - The File Server stores the LicenseInfo file.
 - The First Time License computer stores the Component Services files.

You must be able to communicate with the computer(s) that store both source files.

2. From the **File** menu, select **Login**.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:


Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
			You are here!		

3. Log on as secure with a password of master.
4. If client computers have Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional installed and if they are on the network, you can access the Client Form in the Secure Perfect application, and proceed with adding clients to the database.


Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
				You are here!	

➤ **To access the Client Form:**

1. Select **Client** from the **Administration** menu.
Result: A new client form is displayed.
2. Click **Add**  from the Secure Perfect main menu.
3. Enter data describing your new client. Refer to Online Help for details of each individual field.

***Note:** If a client computer is currently offline or connected to the network by a gateway or hub, you may not see that computer. You may need to correct network issues with the client computer before proceeding. You may also see computers that cannot be clients since they do not use TCP/IP protocols.*

4. Click **Save**  .
5. Repeat [Step “2.”](#) , through [Step “4.”](#) , for all clients.
6. You can add as many clients as you want. However, only the licensed maximum number can connect to the Server at the same time. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary”](#) on page 10.12.

What's Next?

If you have not already removed the CD from your CD-ROM drive, do so now. You have completed the Server computer setup. Proceed with one or more of the following:

- If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1.](#)
- Proceed to set up the additional client computers on your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients” on page 9.1.](#)
- Proceed to configure your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1” on page 11.1.](#)


Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
					<i>You are here!</i>

What's Next?

NOTES:

Chapter 6: Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Global Database Server

NOTE: This chapter uses the following graphic in major headings to indicate Global Edition instructions. 

This chapter is for experienced software installers and includes instructions for Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition software configuration for a Global Database Server. Global Edition software introduces technology for copying and distributing data and database objects from one database to another and then synchronizing between databases for consistency. We recommend that you review the entire chapter and discuss with your IT Department before you begin your configuration.



In this chapter:

["Benefits of Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition" on page 6.2](#)

["Sample Configuration Overview" on page 6.3](#)

["Global Edition Definitions" on page 6.4](#)

["Pre-Installation Checklist" on page 6.6](#)

["Prepare to Install" on page 6.9](#)

["CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Database Server" on page 6.13](#)

["Licensing Your Secure Perfect System" on page 6.91](#)

["Setting Services to Automatic Startup" on page 6.92](#)

["Server Folder Structure" on page 6.94](#)

["Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts" on page 6.96](#)

["What's Next?" on page 6.99](#)

Benefits of Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition

We recommend that you investigate Microsoft documentation, *Microsoft SQL Server Merge Replication*, for additional details and options of replication technology software.

Benefits of Global Edition software solutions include the following:

- Distributing data changes to other Server computers within minutes.
- SQL clustering with redundant Database Servers.
- Does not have a single point of hardware failure.
- Copying and distributing data to one or more sites.
- Allowing multiple sites to keep copies of the same data. This is useful when multiple sites need to read the same data or need separate Servers for reporting applications.
- Distributing copies of data on a scheduled basis.
- Working with copies of data while disconnected and then propagating changes to another database when they are connected.
- Bringing data closer to individuals or groups. This helps to reduce conflicts based on multiple user data modifications and queries because data can be distributed throughout the network, and you can partition data based on the needs of different business units or users.
- Data is synchronized by implementing this customized replication configuration. We recommend that you review [Figure 6-1](#) and “[Global Edition Definitions](#)” on [page 6.4](#) through [page 6.5](#), for a greater understanding of the replication features before you begin your configuration process.
- Replication is one choice for customized standby server strategy. Also refer to an additional document on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*, for another Server strategy.

Sample Configuration Overview

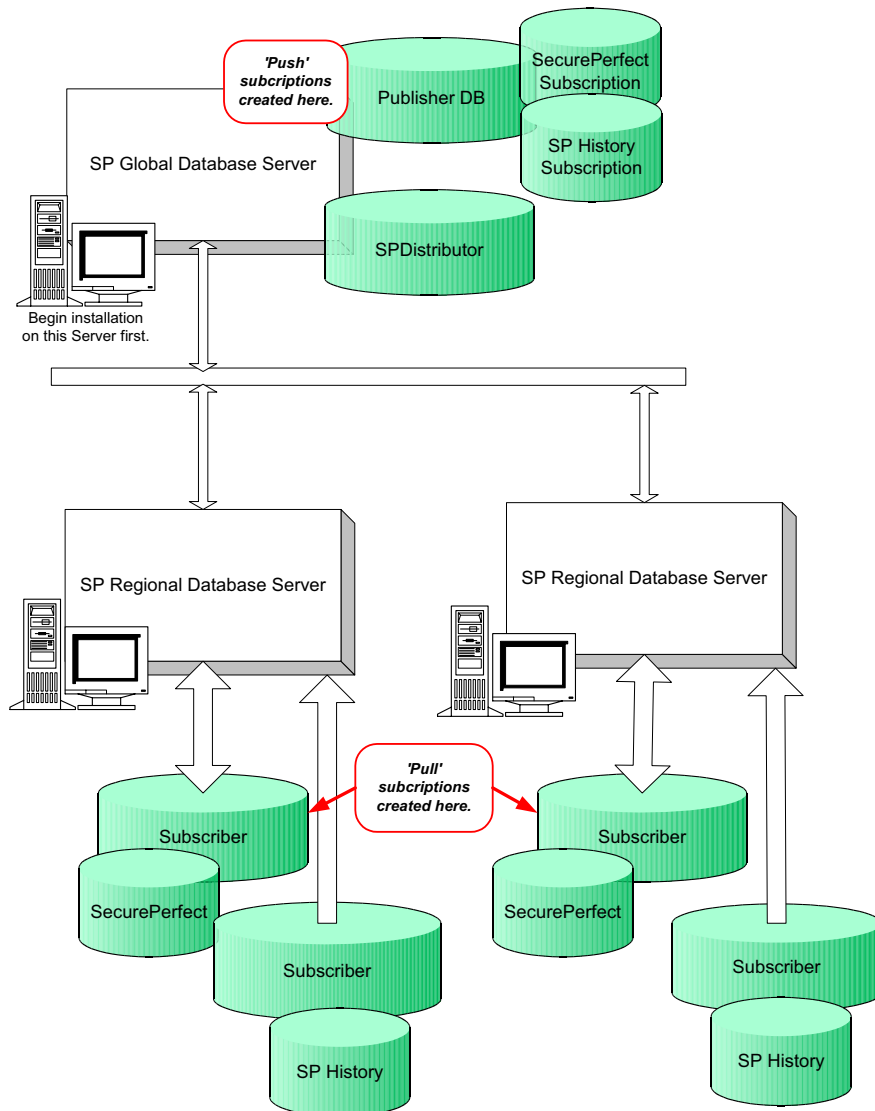


Figure 6-1. Typical Global Replication System Overview

Global Edition Definitions

This list of definitions refers to elements displayed in [Figure 6-1 on page 6.3](#). For additional information, refer to *Microsoft SQL Books Online*.

Distributor

The Distributor is a Server that contains the distribution database and stores meta data, history data, and/or transactions. In Merge Replication, the Distributor also hosts the Snapshot Agent and Merge Agent for push subscriptions.

When the Distributor is created for an SQL instance, it generates its own database to store information. Once publishing is enabled on the Global Server, it is able to control and monitor publications and subscriptions as well as the starting and stopping of replication agents.

Global Database Server

The machine where the Publisher database, the Merge Agent, and the Distributor Agent reside.

The Global Database Server is the main Secure Perfect database Server. This means that the Global Database Server acts as a hub for all replication activity. This Global Server hosts a Distributor whose role is to store history and miscellaneous information about merge replication.

Publisher

The Publisher is a Server that makes data available for replication to other Servers. In addition to being the Server where you specify which data is to be replicated, the Publisher also detects which data has changed and maintains information about all publications at that site.

Pull Subscription

Pull subscriptions are created at the Subscriber, and the Subscriber requests data and updates made at the Publisher. Pull subscriptions allow the user at the Subscriber to determine when the data changes are synchronized, which can be on demand or scheduled.

Push Subscription

Push subscriptions can simplify and centralize subscription administration because you do not need to administer each Subscriber individually. The Distribution Agent or Merge Agent runs at the Distributor when synchronizing a push subscription. Push subscriptions are created at the Publisher, and the replication agents propagate data and updates to a

Subscriber without a request from the Subscriber. Changes can also be pushed to Subscribers on a scheduled basis.

Regional Database Server

The machine or machines where the Subscriber Database resides.

Regional Database Servers act as client database Servers. They have the ability to subscribe to publications located on the Global Server. These Regional Servers can operate independently of the Global Server for a period of time as necessary. Subscriptions are pushed to each Regional Server by the Global Server. This means that the Regional Servers do not need to worry about requesting updated data from the Global Server; updates are periodically supplied to Regional Servers according to a set schedule.

Subscriber

Subscribers are Servers that receive replicated data. Subscribers subscribe to publications, not to individual articles within a publication, and they subscribe only to the publications that they need, not all of the publications available on a Publisher.

Subscription

A subscription is a request for a copy of data or database objects to be replicated. A subscription defines what publication will be received, where, and when. Synchronization or data distribution of a subscription can be requested either by the Publisher (a push subscription) or by the Subscriber (a pull subscription).

Pre-Installation Checklist

NOTE: READ THIS SECTION IN ITS ENTIRETY!

► **To assist in configuration of your Secure Perfect Global Edition system, review this checklist:**

- ☐ Prepare and configure your Global system in this order, as detailed in [“Sequence of Global System Installation” on page 6.7:](#)
 1. First, prepare and configure the Global Database Server. Instructions follow in this chapter.
 2. Second, prepare and configure each Regional Database Server. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Regional Database Server” on page 7.1.](#)
 3. Last, prepare and configure any additional client computers to the specific Server in your Global system. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients” on page 9.1.](#)
- ☐ Each Server computer must be part of a new or existing domain. If you are creating a new domain, always consult with the network administrator before adding a domain or adding any computers to an existing network. Refer to [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain” on page 6.8.](#)
- ☐ For better performance and easy administration, we suggest that a new Global User Group be created at the Domain Server, Active Directory. Refer to [“Adding a New User Account” on page 6.97.](#)
- ☐ Be prepared to license your software for Global Edition.

Sequence of Global System Installation

- To install a Secure Perfect Global Edition system, follow the sequence below:

***Note:** Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow similar instructions. Verify that you are following the correct instructions before you begin.*

1. First, prepare and configure the Global Database Server. Install Windows 2000 or 2003 Standard Server, or Windows Advanced Server. Refer to [“CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Database Server”](#) on page 6.13.
2. Second, prepare and configure each Regional Database Server. Install Windows 2000 or 2003 Standard Server, Windows Advanced Server, Windows 2000 or XP Professional Server. You must have a Server operating system for file replication. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Regional Database Server”](#) on page 7.1.
3. Last, prepare and configure any additional client computers to the specific Server in your Global system. Minimum requirements are Windows 2000 or XP Professional. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients”](#) on page 9.1.

***Note:** GE recommends that you do not add clients or devices to the Global Database Server computer. For optimal functionality, the Global Database Server in your Secure Perfect system should be dedicated to the replication process.*

4. Configure File Replication at the Global Database Server. Refer to [“Configuring File Replication and Global Edition Options”](#) on page 8.1.

Your Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition software WILL NOT install unless minimum requirements have been met. Refer to the appropriate section of this manual for the operating system you are installing and configuring.

Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

Since the Server computer will be part of a new or existing domain, you must add the Server computers to the network.

1. Since network configuration varies from company-to-company, see your network administrator for assistance.
2. It is important that the Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on page 2.5](#), for more information or consult with your network administrator.

➤ **To change from the LocalSystem Windows Service Account to an existing domain account:**

***Note:** In Windows services, the `SQLServerAgent` must use a domain account. The `SQLAgent` account is the security context under which the `Snapshot Agent`, `Merge Agent`, and `Distribution Agent` are running by default.*

1. Navigate to the **Component Services** of your computer and double-click to display the list of services.
2. From the list of Services (Local), select **MSSQL\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. From the shortcut menu, select **Properties**.

Result: The **General** tab of the **Properties** window displays.

4. Click **Stop** under **Service status**.
5. Select and display the **Log On** tab.
6. Select **This account**.

Result: The field for account name is now enabled.

7. Enter the name of the domain account that will start and stop SQL services (or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select the name of the domain account).

8. Enter the password for the domain account and then enter the password again to confirm.
9. Return to the **General** tab and verify that **Startup type** is set to **Automatic**.
10. Click **Start** under **Service status**.
11. Click **OK** to accept and close the window.
12. From the list of Local Services, select **SQLAgent\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
13. Repeat [Step 3. on page 6.8](#) through [Step 11. on page 6.9](#).
14. Continue with [“Prepare to Install”](#).

Prepare to Install

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!						

Note: Prepare and configure your Secure Perfect Global Edition system as listed in Pre-Installation Checklist, [“Prepare and configure your Global system in this order, as detailed in “Sequence of Global System Installation” on page 6.7:” on page 6.6.](#)

➤ To prepare for installation of the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:

1. You MUST be logged in as administrator user to the domain. If not, log off and log back on as a user with administrator permissions.

2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer
- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select **SPSQL** instance of SQL Server.
 - When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password **master**.
 - Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.
4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Continue with [“Selecting Installation Type” on page 6.12](#).

Selecting Installation Type

- To select and install Custom as the type of installation:

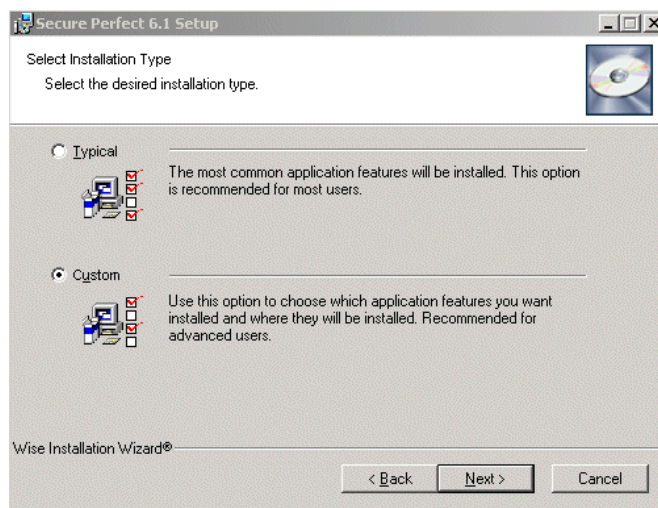


Figure 6-2. Installation Type Window

1. Select **Custom** in the **Select Installation Type** window, as displayed in [Figure 6-2](#). You must select **Custom** in order to install a Secure Perfect Global Edition system.
2. Proceed to [“CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Database Server” on page 6.13](#).

CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Database Server

Recommended for experienced software installers.

Instructions Specific to Windows 2000, Windows 2003, and Advanced Server:

***Note:** Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow a similar set of instructions. Verify that you are installing a Global Database Server before you begin. REMINDER: You CANNOT install Global Edition - Global Database Server software on a Windows Professional operating system.*

***Note:** You MUST select **Custom** in order to do any of the following:*

- *Install Global Edition features.*
- *Select Badge aliasing.*
- *Change the password for the Window logon USERID 'secure.'*
- *Selectively install **Database Server**, **File Server**, or **Secure Perfect Client Application**. These configuration options allow Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by you.*

➤ To begin your Custom installation:

1. Select **Custom** as the type of installation and click **Next**.

Result: The **Installing Global Edition?** window displays. (This window displays only if this computer is a member of a domain. You MUST be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

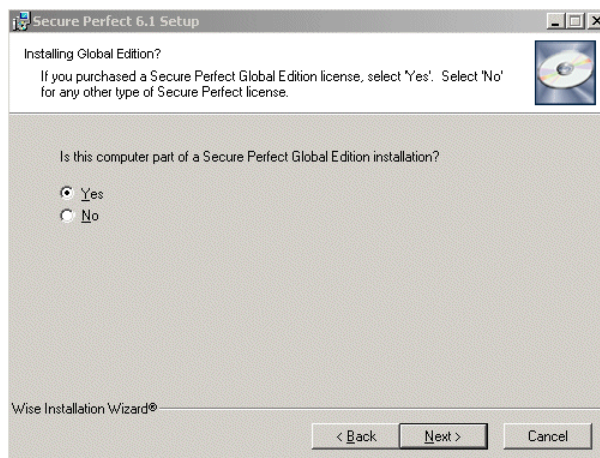


Figure 6-3. Installing Global Edition? Window

2. The **Custom Configuration** window displays for you to choose which Secure Perfect features to configure on this computer. The **Custom Configuration** window displays similar to [Figure 6-4](#).

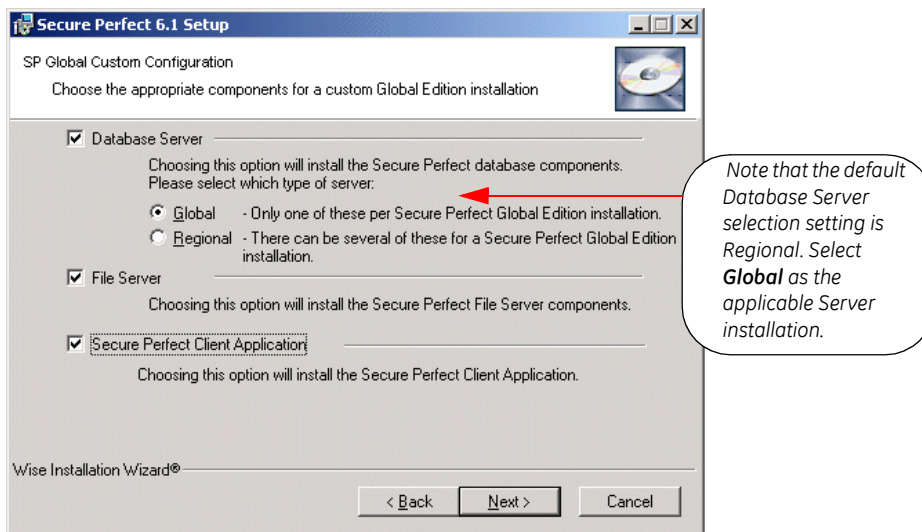


Figure 6-4. SP Global Custom Configuration

3. Select one or more of the component options pertaining to the system you are installing:

Note: Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin.

Database Server: This option is used to store the Secure Perfect databases.

An additional selection determines if you are installing Secure Perfect on:

- **Global Server** computer (must have SQL Server 2000 already installed). There can be only one Global Database Server. Select this option.
- **Regional Server** computer (if installation determines that SQL Server is not installed, MSDE will install for you). This is the default. You are not installing a Regional Server computer at this time.

File Server: Only Secure Perfect File Server components install. This Server stores the data files shared by clients on the Secure Perfect network. File shares include graphics, images, signatures, designs, and firmware. The **File Server** option is a prerequisite in order to install **Secure Perfect Client Application**.

Secure Perfect Client Application: Only the Secure Perfect Client application installs. Only Secure Perfect client file shares install. This includes the executable file, Secure Perfect services, and Secure Perfect DLLs.

Install to Windows Server Cluster Group Named: If this selection displays, refer to installation of cluster technology in the document, *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*, included on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system.

4. When you have selected the appropriate options, click **Next**.

Result: The **Logon Account for SQL Server Services** window displays, as in [Figure 6-5 on page 6.16](#).

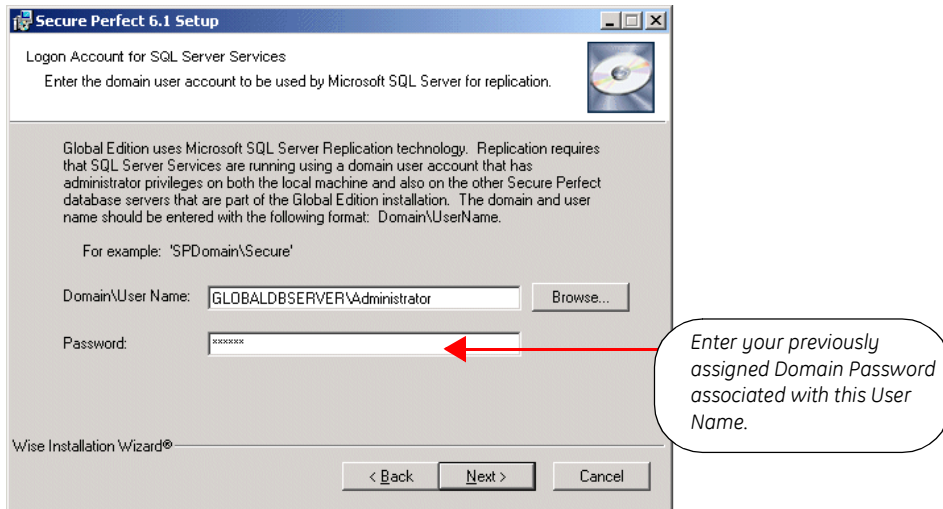


Figure 6-5. Logon Account for SQL Server Services

***Note:** Each Server used in the Secure Perfect Global Edition system requires the database services to run under a domain user name and password account. This account must have administrative privileges to that particular computer. We suggest that you use the identical domain account at each computer used in the GE system.*

5. Enter the user domain and username in the format, **Domain\Username** or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select.
6. Enter the domain user password in the **Password** field.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Continue with [“Custom Configuration Options”](#) on page 6.17.

Custom Configuration Options

Recommended for experienced software installers.

The scenarios presented in the custom configurations that follow are the result of selections made on the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window. Review [Figure 6-4 on Page 6.14](#) and [Table 6-1](#). Then, proceed to the corresponding section of this chapter.




Table 6-1: Custom Configuration Options

NOTE: Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin. (Windows that display during installation are similar to the sample configurations presented.)

Scenario	Begin on Page:
1.	"Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration" on page 6.18
2.	"Database Server and File Server Configuration" on page 6.28
3.	"Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration" on page 6.42
4.	"Database Server Configuration" on page 6.55
5.	"Each Component on a Separate Computer" on page 6.70

IMPORTANT: When you select a scenario, be sure to complete all instructions for that scenario.

1. Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server	◆		
Secure Perfect Client Application	◆		

***Note:** This configuration has all components installed on Computer 1. Although these are the same components as **Typical**, you chose **Custom** to use badge aliasing or change the secure password.*

➤ **If you selected Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 6-6 on page 6.19](#).

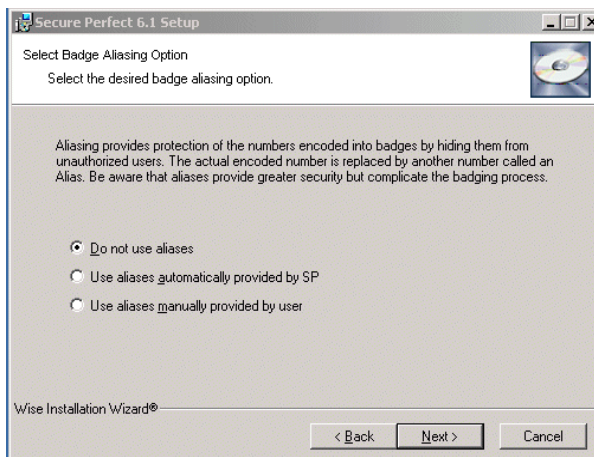


Figure 6-6. Badge Aliasing Window

2. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
3. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the ‘Secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-7 on page 6.20](#).

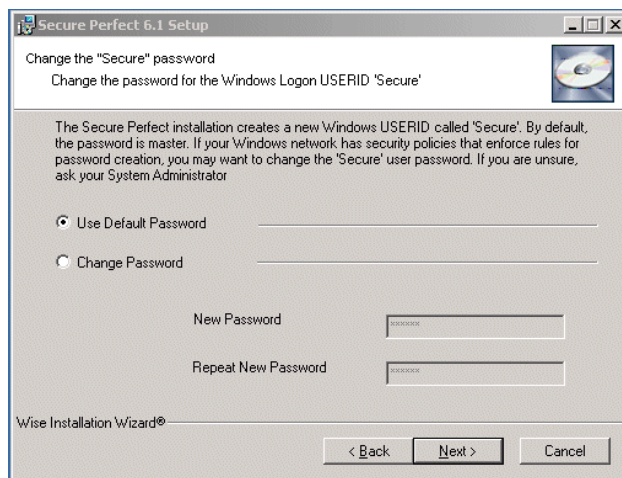


Figure 6-7. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

4. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called *secure*. By default, the password is *master*. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the *secure* user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
5. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Enter your previously assigned SQL password here. If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.12.](#))
7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: A series of Access Control and Security Management windows display as Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.
9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. If your computer reboots, log on and continue. When the **Select Database Server Type** window displays, select **Global** and click **Next**.
11. Continue with "[To select a Secure Perfect edition:](#)".

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 6-8 on page 6.22.](#)

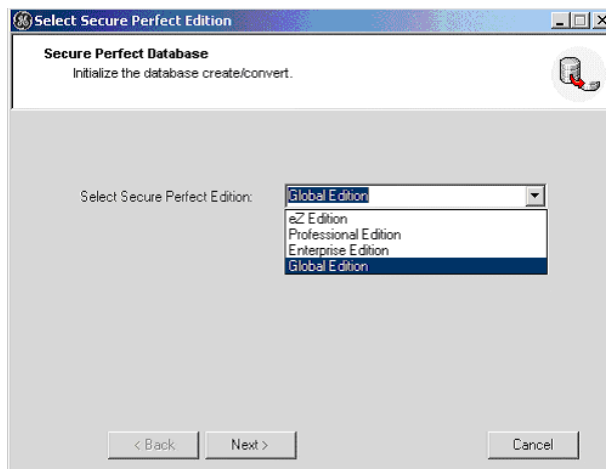


Figure 6-8. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays. Continue with the instructions listed.

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window, as you are creating the hub of the Global Edition activity.

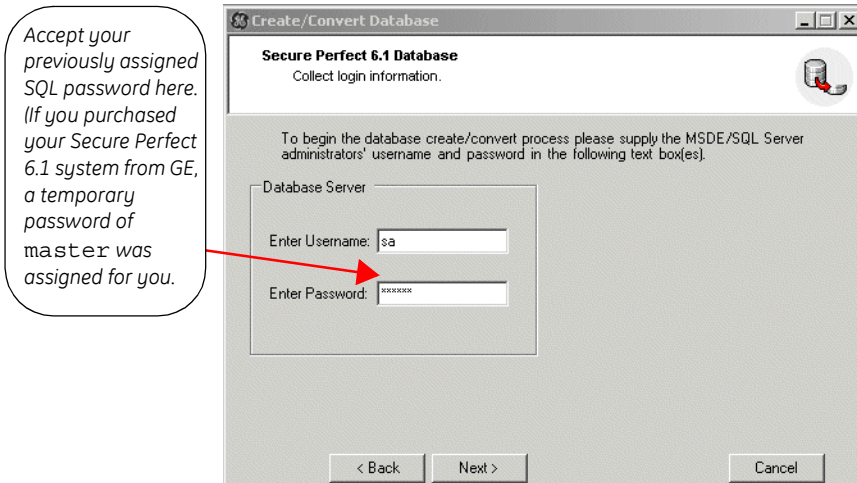


Figure 6-9. Create Database - Global Database Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays.

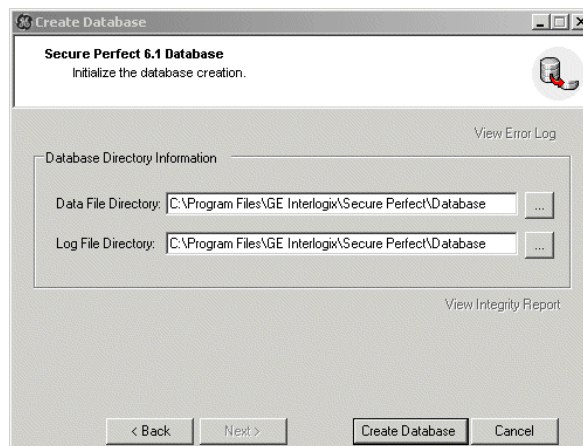




Figure 6-10. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Global Database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 6-2: Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The Global Database Server databases are created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The SecurePerfectDistributor database is installed and enabled. |
| 3 | The Global Database Server is configured for publishing. The Publisher is identified by the Global database instance name. In this installation scenario, there is only one Publisher on the Global database instance. Refer to Figure 6-1 on page 6.3 . |
| 4 | The Secure Perfect Merge Publication is defined. To define a publication, the database to be replicated is selected. Within that publication, articles are defined. The articles are representative of the tables contained within the database. |
| 5 | After the Publication is defined, the initial Snapshot Agent is started. This Agent will create an image of the database at that moment in time. Subscribers will utilize this snapshot later. |
| 6 | The SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database is created. This database is only present in the Global Database Server of a Global Edition installation. The following history tables are contained within:
AlarmHistoryTable
BadgeHistoryTable
DIHistory
DOHistory
DVMRHistory
GuardTourHistory
OperatorHistoryTable
ZoneHistoryTable |
6. Refer to [Figure 6-11 on page 6.26](#) for a sample Global Edition SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

Note: *Subscribers are not defined as part of the Global Database Server installation. Subscribers are assigned during the Regional Database Server installation.*

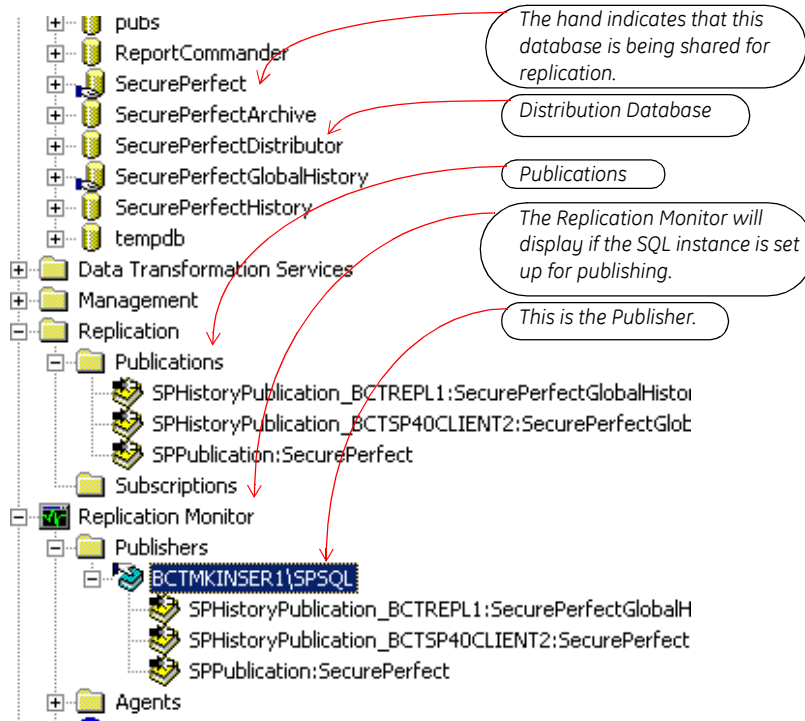


Figure 6-11. Sample Global SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

7. Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation” on page 6.27.](#)

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

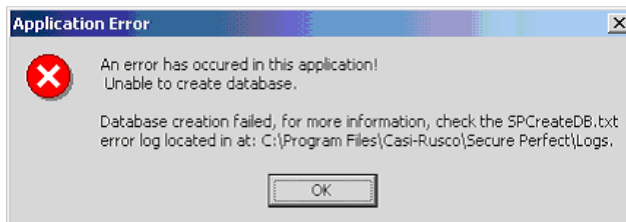


Figure 6-12. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreateDB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
 - If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

➤ **To continue following a successful database creation:**

1. A message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully created!**

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

2. Click **OK**.

Result: The dialog box closes. A window informs you that Installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 is complete.

3. If you receive a message to reboot at this time, click **Yes** to reboot, log on, and continue.




4. An **SP License Setup** window displays. Unless otherwise stated in your configuration scenario, proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.91](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!						

***Note:** Be sure to complete all instructions for the scenario you are installing.*

2. Database Server and File Server Configuration

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server	◆		
Secure Perfect Client Application		◆	

***Note:** This configuration has the Database Server and the File Server installed on Computer 1, then the Secure Perfect application is installed on Computer 2.*

► **If you selected Database Server and File Server on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Select Badge Aliasing Option** window displays as in [Figure 6-13](#).

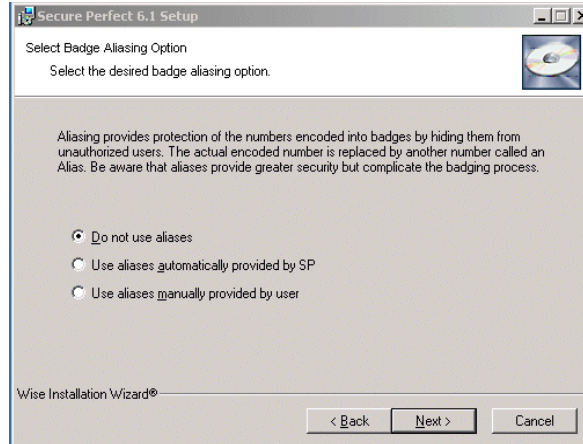


Figure 6-13. Badge Aliasing Window

2. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
3. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays.
4. In the **Change the 'secure' Password** window, select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password**

5. Enter your new password and then enter a second time.

6. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

7. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)

8. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

9. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 6-14 on page 6.31](#).

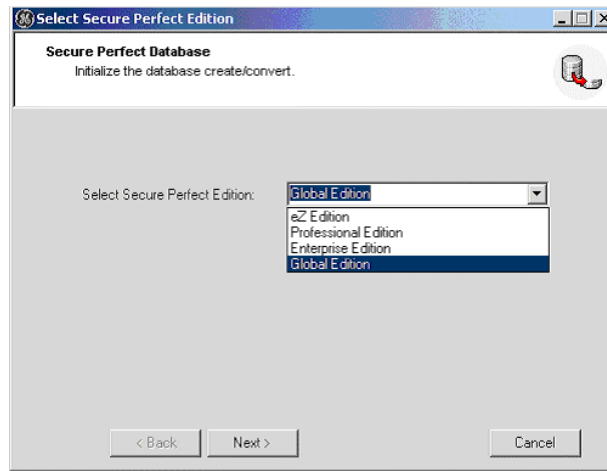


Figure 6-14. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Editions as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays. Continue with the instructions listed.

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window, as you are creating the hub of the Global Edition activity.

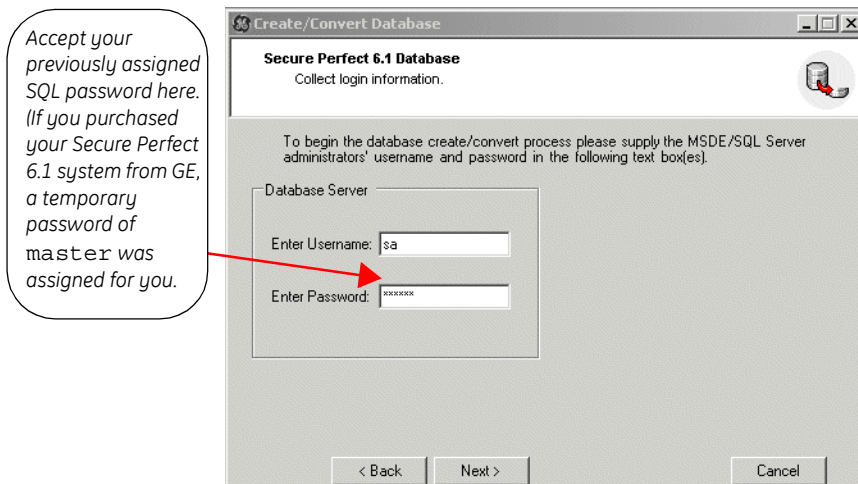


Figure 6-15. Create Database - Global Database Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays.

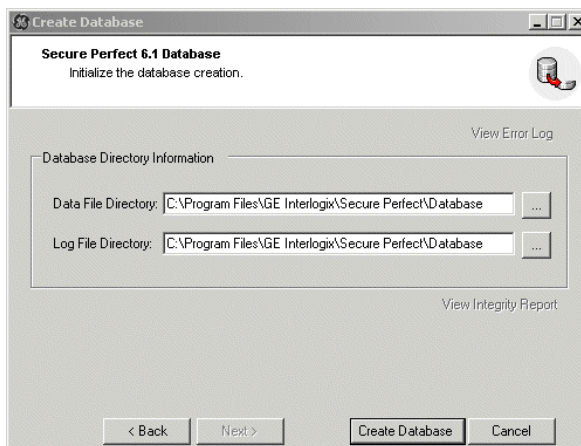




Figure 6-16. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Global Database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 6-3: Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | The Global Database Server databases are created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The SecurePerfectDistributor database is installed and enabled. |
| 3 | The Global Database Server is configured for publishing. The Publisher is identified by the Global database instance name. In this installation scenario, there is only one Publisher on the Global database instance. Refer to Figure 6-1 on page 6.3 . |
| 4 | The Secure Perfect Merge Publication is defined. To define a publication, the database to be replicated is selected. Within that publication, articles are defined. The articles are representative of the tables contained within the database. |
| 5 | After the Publication is defined, the initial Snapshot Agent is started. This Agent will create an image of the database at that moment in time. Subscribers will utilize this snapshot later. |
| 6 | The SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database is created. This database is only present in the Global Database Server of a Global Edition installation. The following history tables are contained within:
AlarmHistoryTable
BadgeHistoryTable
DIHistory
DOHistory
DVMRHistory
GuardTourHistory
OperatorHistoryTable
ZoneHistoryTable |
| 6. | Refer to Figure 6-17 on page 6.35 for a sample Global Edition SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click F5 . |

Note: *Subscribers are not defined as part of the Global Database Server installation. Subscribers are assigned during the Regional Database Server installation.*

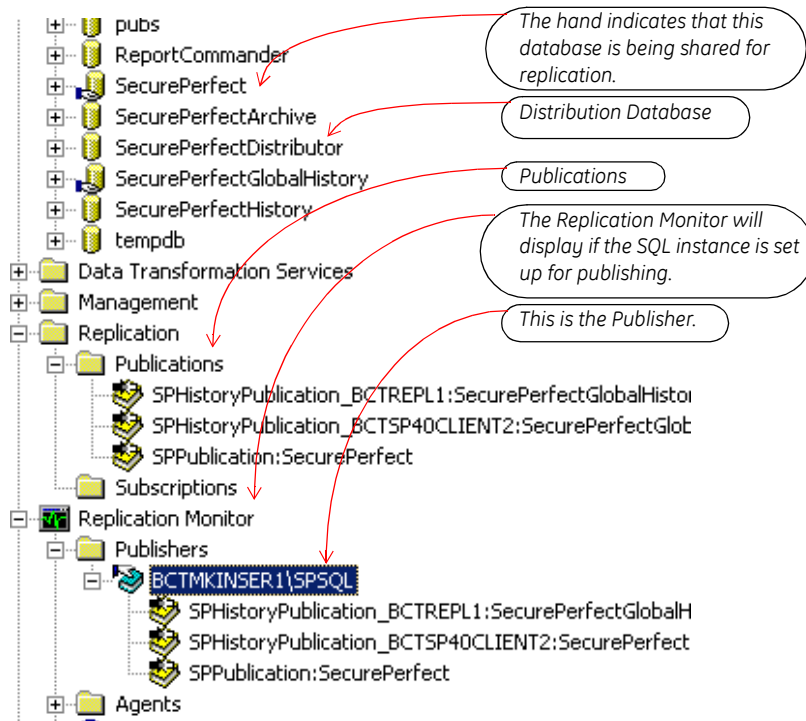


Figure 6-17. Sample Global SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

- Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 6.36.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

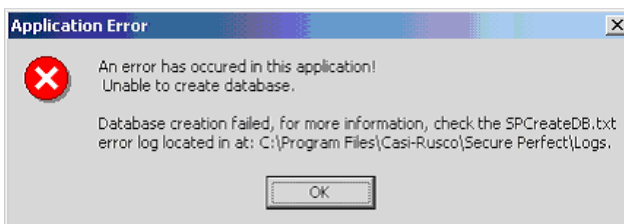


Figure 6-18. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreateDB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
 - If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.
 3. Remove the Secure Perfect installation CD, and continue with instructions to install **Secure Perfect Client Application**. Follow instructions for the operating system installed on your second computer:
 - “If you install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:” .

OR

 - “If you install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:” on page 6.37.
- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

Continue with instructions as listed in [Chapter 9 - Installing Secure Perfect](#)

6.1 Software on Additional Clients. Follow the instructions for Custom installations.

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system, but DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user of the domain.
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC

- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:”](#)

➤ When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**.

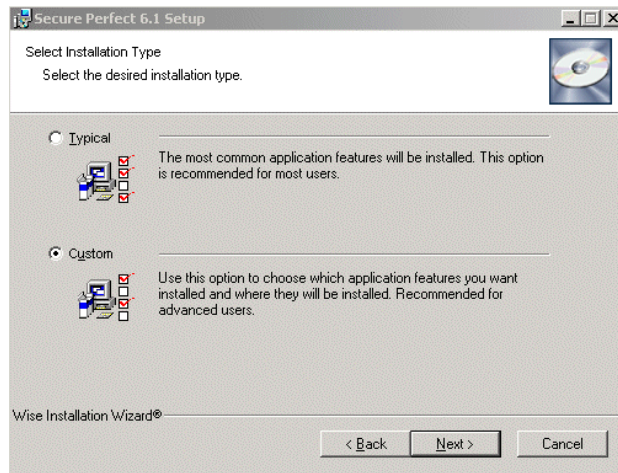


Figure 6-19. Select Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.
- Result:** The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays.
5. When asked **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition installation?**, select **Yes**.
 6. Click **Next**.
- Result:** The **SP Global Custom Configuration** window displays.
7. Select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Client Application**.
 8. Click **Next**.
 9. The **Database and File Server Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 6-20 on page 6.40](#).

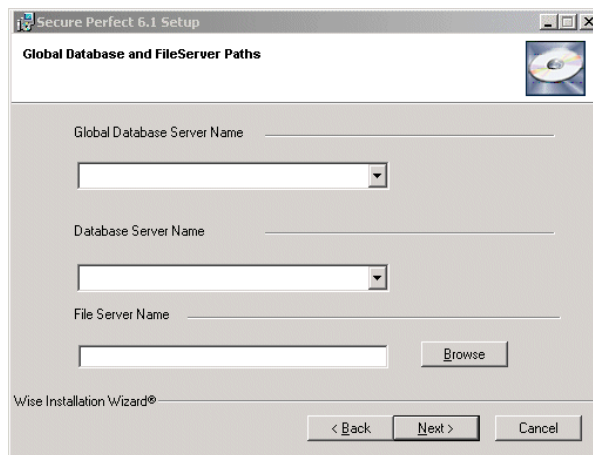


Figure 6-20. Database and File Server Paths

10. If a displayed **Database Server Name** is not correct, enter or select the appropriate Name from the drop-down list. If a displayed **File Server Name** is not correct, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.

11. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-21](#).

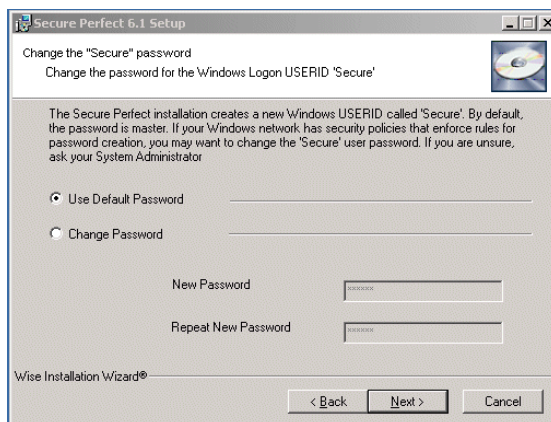


Figure 6-21. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

12. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

13. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

14. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

15. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.




16. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

17. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.91](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

3. Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Client Application	◆		

***Note:** This configuration has the Database Server and the Secure Perfect Client Application installed on Computer 1, while File Server is installed on Computer 2.*

➤ **If you selected Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. A window displays similar to [Figure 6-22](#).

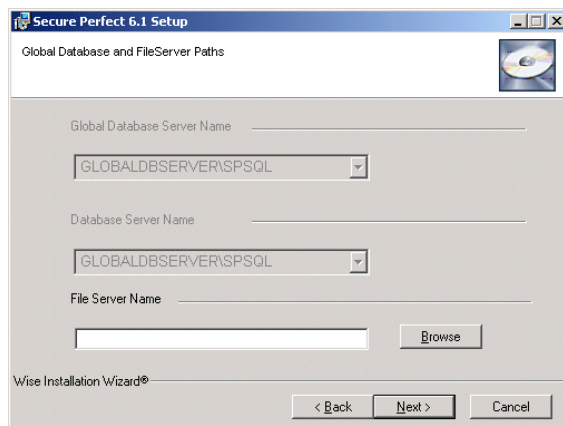


Figure 6-22. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Global Database Server Name** and **Database Server Name** display as read-only. They are unavailable for entry.
3. If the **File Server Name** displays, accept the entry as listed or click **Browse** to navigate to another computer that may serve as **File Server** for your system, and then select that computer name to display in this dialog box.

Note: You must install **File Server** on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option**, as in [Figure 6-23](#).

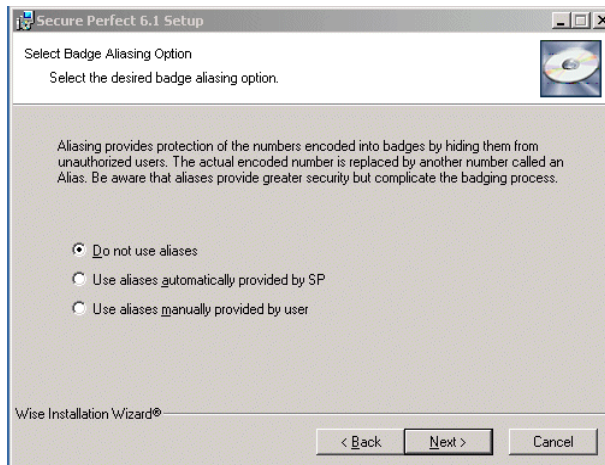


Figure 6-23. Badge Aliasing Window

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.

- **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 6-24](#).



Figure 6-24. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
- **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

9. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 6-25](#).

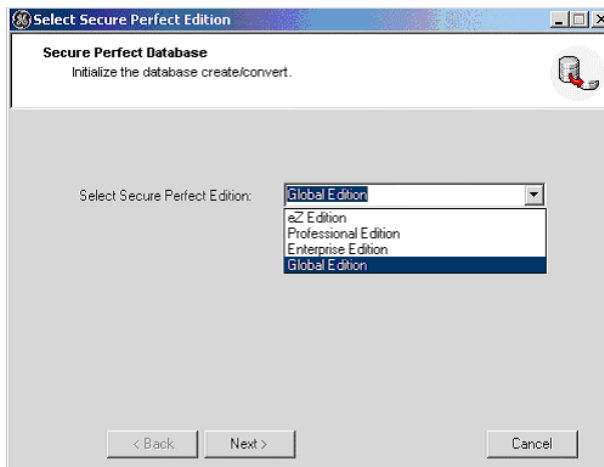


Figure 6-25. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window that displays. Continue with the instructions listed.

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window, as you are creating the hub of the Global Edition activity.

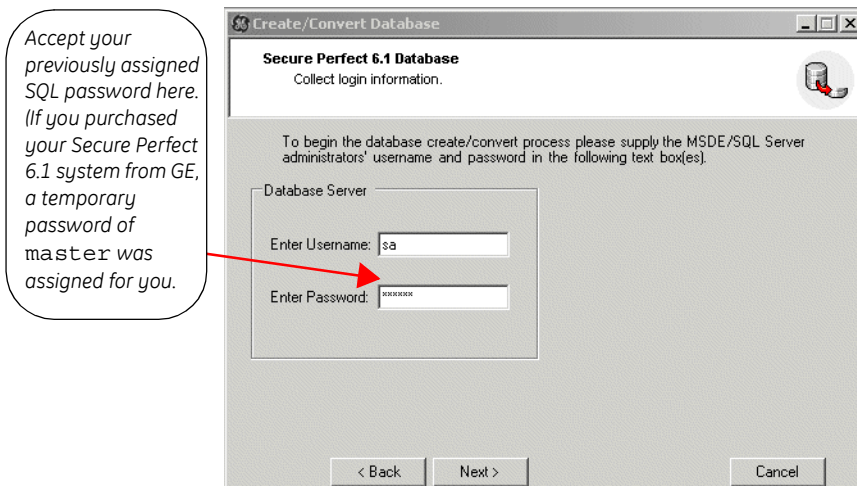


Figure 6-26. Create Database - Global Database Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.

3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays.

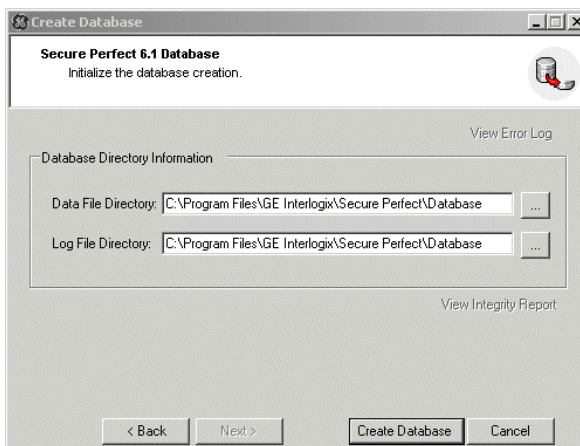




Figure 6-27. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.
 - **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Global Database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 6-4: Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

1	The Global Database Server databases are created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive.
2	The SecurePerfectDistributor database is installed and enabled.
3	The Global Database Server is configured for publishing. The Publisher is identified by the Global database instance name. In this installation scenario, there is only one Publisher on the Global database instance. Refer to Figure 6-1 on page 6.3 .
4	The Secure Perfect Merge Publication is defined. To define a publication, the database to be replicated is selected. Within that publication, articles are defined. The articles are representative of the tables contained within the database.
5	After the Publication is defined, the initial Snapshot Agent is started. This Agent will create an image of the database at that moment in time. Subscribers will utilize this snapshot later.
6	The SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database is created. This database is only present in the Global Database Server of a Global Edition installation. The following history tables are contained within: AlarmHistoryTable BadgeHistoryTable DIHistory DOHistory DVMRHistory GuardTourHistory OperatorHistoryTable ZoneHistoryTable

6. Refer to [Figure 6-28](#) for a sample Global Edition SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

Note: *Subscribers are not defined as part of the Global Database Server installation. Subscribers are assigned during the Regional Database Server installation.*

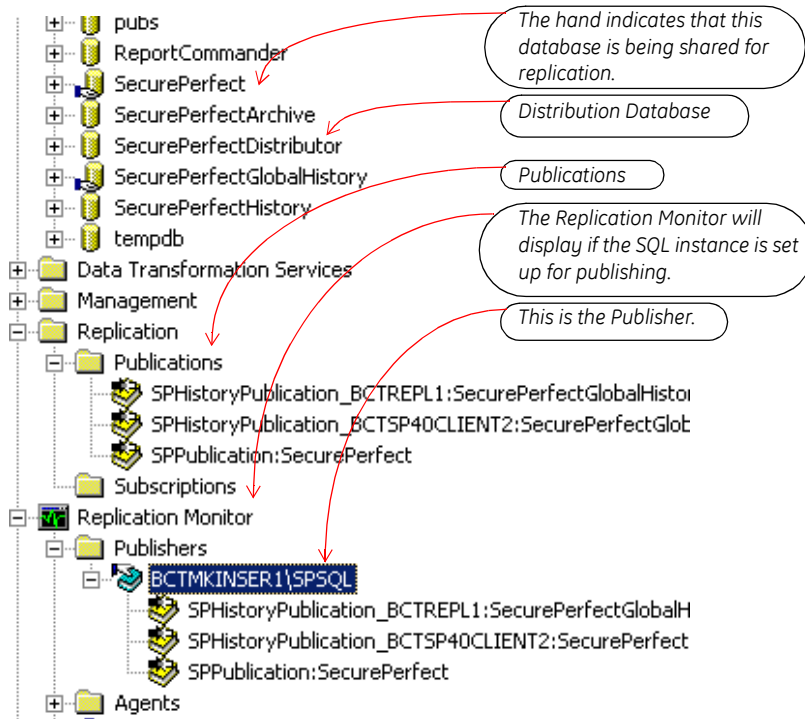


Figure 6-28. Sample Global SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

7. Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 6.50.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

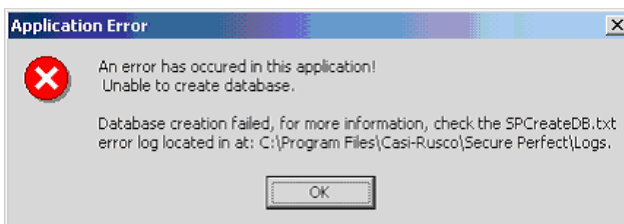


Figure 6-29. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the `SPCreatedB.txt` error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
 - If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

➤ **To continue following a successful database creation:**

1. A message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully created!**

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreatedB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

2. Click **OK**.

Result: The dialog box closes. A window informs you that Installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 is complete.

3. If you receive a message to reboot at this time, click **Yes** to reboot, log on as administrator, and continue.

Important!

4. An **SP License Setup** window displays. **YOU CANNOT LICENSE AT THIS TIME.** Click **Cancel** to exit **License Setup**.
 5. Continue with configuration of the File Server on a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer.
- **Now, you must select and install ONLY the File Server component on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application installation already complete.*

If you do not install the File Server at this time, you will not be able to license your system.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. **DO NOT** install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 6.53](#)

► **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

Note: A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

4. Select **ONLY File Server**. Click **Next**.
5. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-30](#).



Figure 6-30. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

6. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

7. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

8. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

9. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

11. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

Important!




12. You must license your Secure Perfect Global Edition system at this time. Return to the computer that has the Secure Perfect client application component installed.
13. Continue with [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#).
14. The **License Setup** window displays. Proceed to license your system at this time. Refer to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.91](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	-------------------------------	------------------------	------------------	--------	----------------------------------	-----------

*You are
here!*

4. Database Server Configuration

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Client Application		◆	

Note: This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, then the File Server and the Secure Perfect application are installed on Computer 2.

➤ **If you selected ONLY Database Server component on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 6-31 on page 6.56](#).

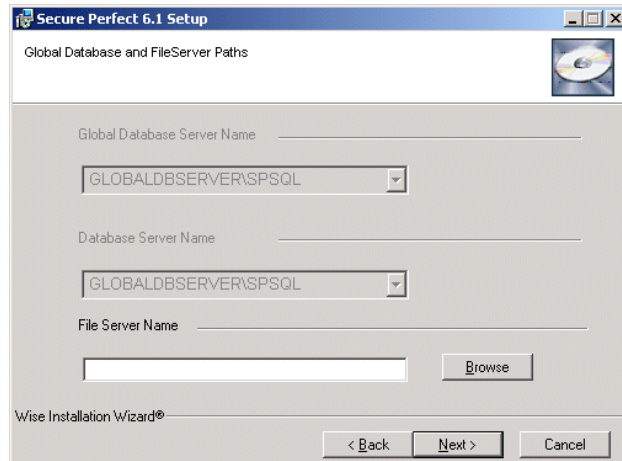


Figure 6-31. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and File Server Paths** window, the **Global Database Server Name** and **Database Server Name** display as read-only. They are unavailable for entry.
3. Enter the computer name or click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer for your system, and then select the computer to display the name in this field.

***Note:** You must install the **File Server** component on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.*

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option** as in [Figure 6-32 on page 6.57](#).

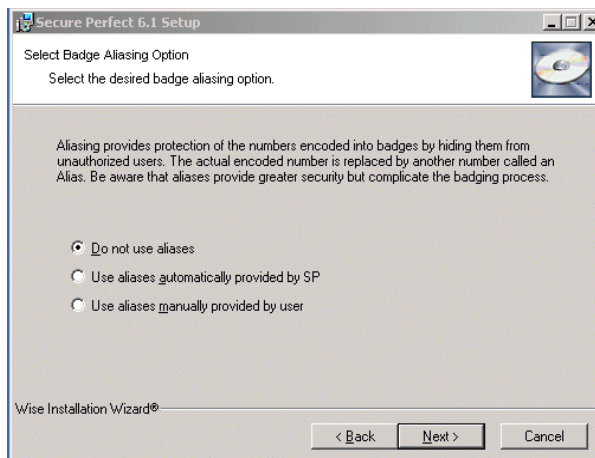


Figure 6-32. Badge Aliasing Window

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the ‘Secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-33 on page 6.58](#).



Figure 6-33. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.
9. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
10. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: SP 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
13. Remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 6-34](#).

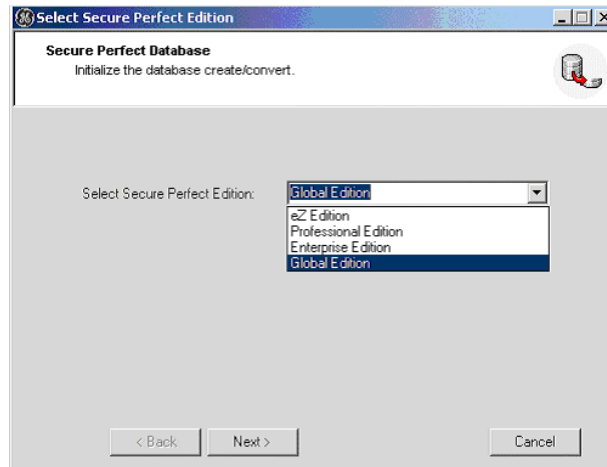


Figure 6-34. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select **Global Edition** as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

➤ **To create your system database:**

1. The **Create/Convert Database** window that displays. Continue with the instructions listed.

Important!

Note: We recommend that you *DO NOT* select **Cancel** in this window, as you are creating the hub of the Global Edition activity.

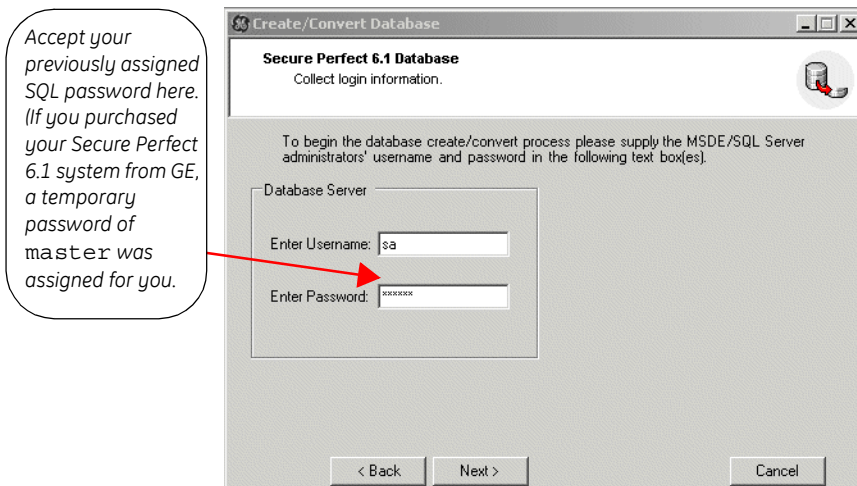


Figure 6-35. Create Database - Global Database Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays.

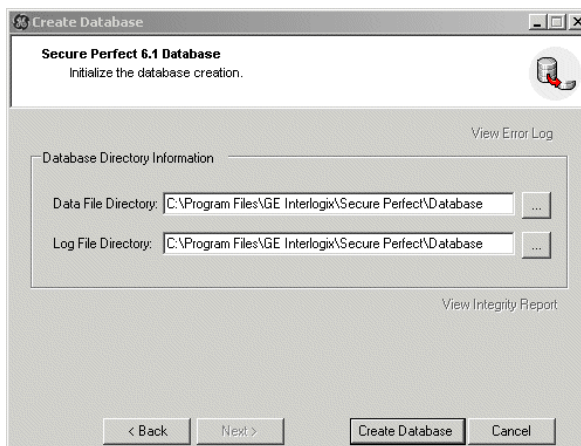




Figure 6-36. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Global Database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 6-5: Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The Global Database Server databases are created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The SecurePerfectDistributor database is installed and enabled. |
| 3 | The Global Database Server is configured for publishing. The Publisher is identified by the Global database instance name. In this installation scenario, there is only one Publisher on the Global database instance. Refer to Figure 6-1 on page 6.3 . |
| 4 | The Secure Perfect Merge Publication is defined. To define a publication, the database to be replicated is selected. Within that publication, articles are defined. The articles are representative of the tables contained within the database. |
| 5 | After the Publication is defined, the initial Snapshot Agent is started. This Agent will create an image of the database at that moment in time. Subscribers will utilize this snapshot later. |
| 6 | The SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database is created. This database is only present in the Global Database Server of a Global Edition installation. The following history tables are contained within:
AlarmHistoryTable
BadgeHistoryTable
DIHistory
DOHistory
DVMRHistory
GuardTourHistory
OperatorHistoryTable
ZoneHistoryTable |
6. Refer to [Figure 6-37 on page 6.63](#) for a sample Global Edition SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

Note: *Subscribers are not defined as part of the Global Database Server installation. Subscribers are assigned during the Regional Database Server installation.*

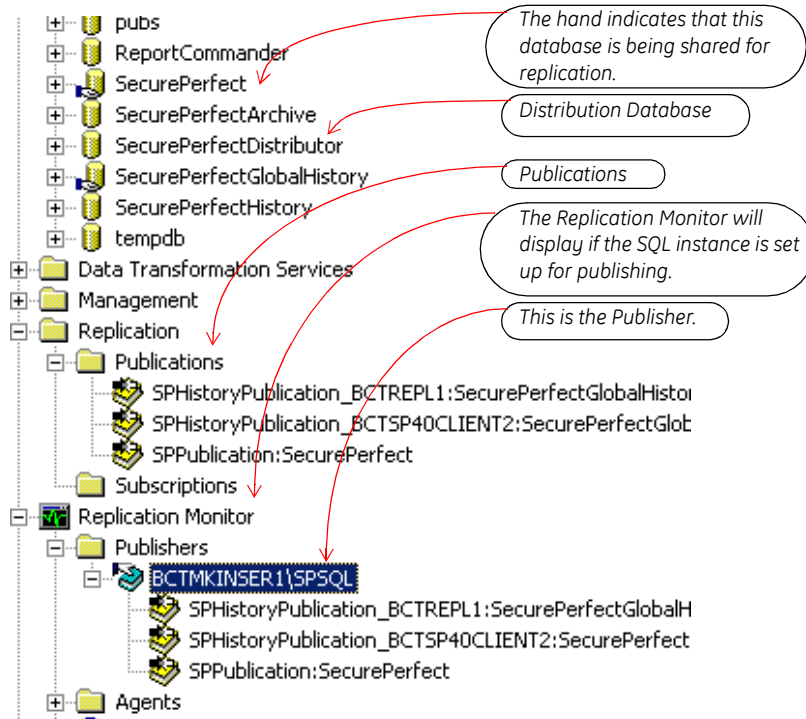


Figure 6-37. Sample Global SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

- Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 6.64.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

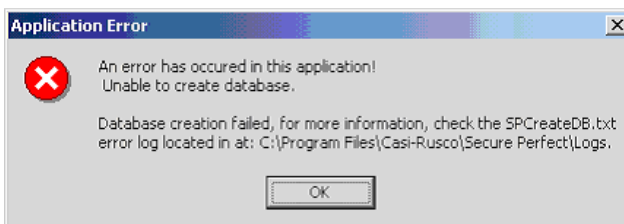


Figure 6-38. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreateDB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
 - If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.
- **Now, you must install File Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays.
9. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, select the type of installation as **Custom**.

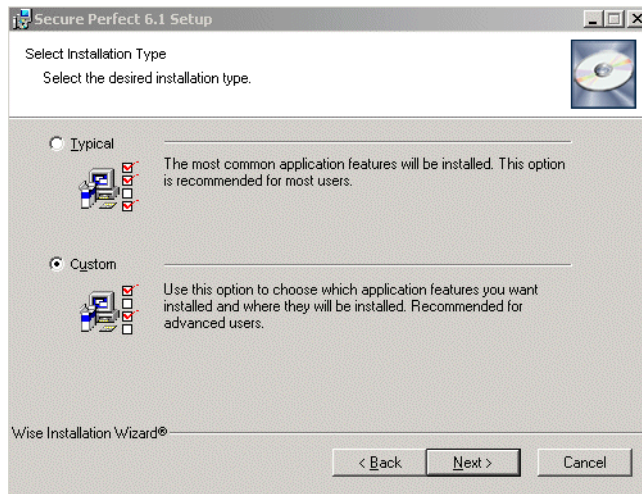


Figure 6-39. Selection Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.)

5. Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

Result: The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

6. Select **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Client Application**. Click **Next**.

Result: A window displays similar to [Figure 6-40 on page 6.68](#).

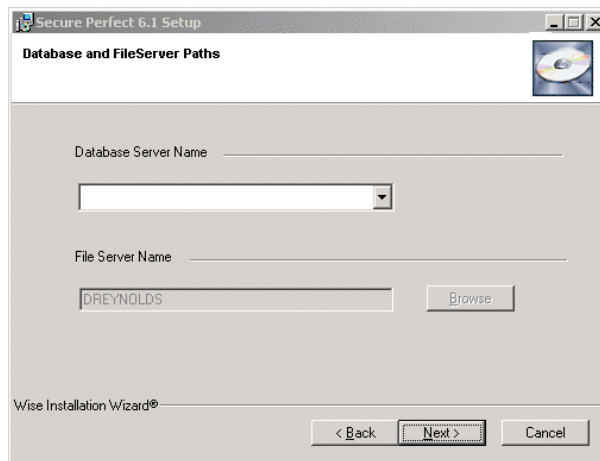


Figure 6-40. Database Server Name Required

7. The **Database Server Name** field is available and required. Select a Server Name from the drop-down list of eligible SQL servers for this installation.
8. The **File Server Name** is a read-only field and is unavailable for selection.
9. Click **Next** to display the **Change the 'secure' Password** window, as in [Figure 6-41 on page 6.69](#).

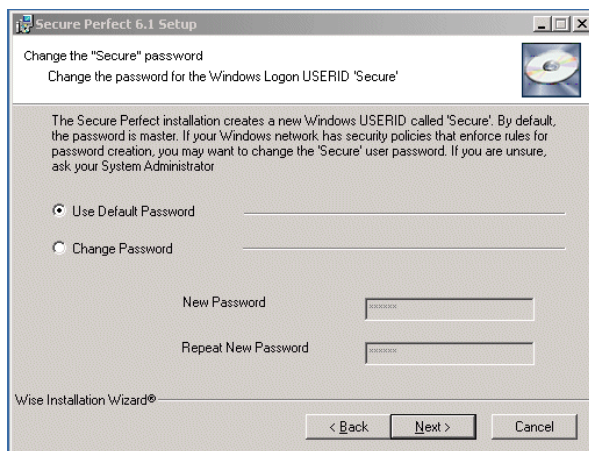


Figure 6-41. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

10. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

12. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

13. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

- Result:** The SP License Setup window displays.

- ### Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

You are here!

Note: This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, the File Server installed on Computer 2, and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 3.

- To install each Secure Perfect component to a separate computer, you must begin with the Database Server installation on the first computer.

1. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Database Server**:

Result: A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 6-42](#).

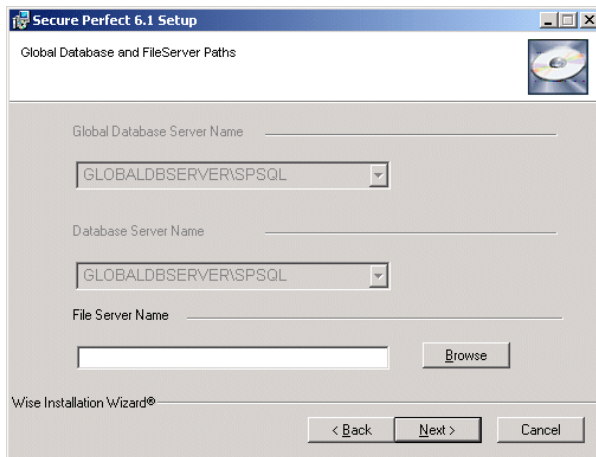


Figure 6-42. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and FileServer Paths** window, the **Global Database Server Name** and **Database Server Name** display as read-only. They are unavailable for entry.
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer you will be using for your system, and then select the computer name to display the computer name in this dialog box.

Note: You must install File Server on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next** to display the **Select Badge Aliasing Option** as in [Figure 6-43 on page 6.72](#).

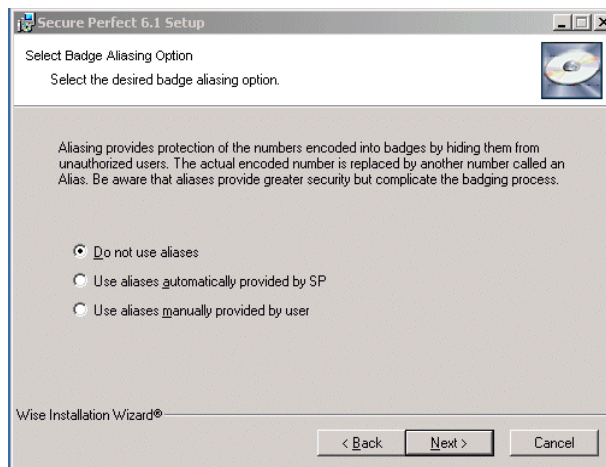


Figure 6-43. Badge Aliasing Window

5. This feature allows you to assign a badge number that represents the encoded badge number. This provides added security in that the encoded number is only displayed to authorized users.
 - **Do not use aliases** indicates no aliasing will be used.
 - **Use aliases automatically provided by SP** assigns the badge number for you.
 - **Use aliases manually provided by user** aliasing allows you to assign the number.
6. Choose one aliasing option, then click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-44 on page 6.73](#).



Figure 6-44. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Enter your previously assigned SQL password here. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)

9. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.12.](#))
10. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect Database Server files.
11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.
12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
13. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 6-45 on page 6.75.](#)

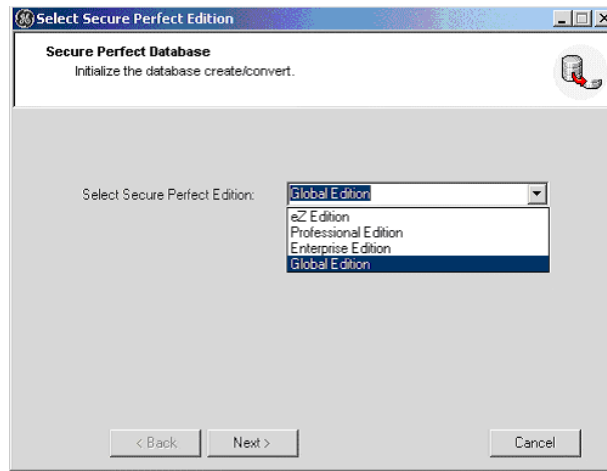


Figure 6-45. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. After selecting the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays. Continue with the instructions listed.

Important!

Note: We recommend that you **DO NOT** select **Cancel** in this window, as you are creating the hub of the Global Edition activity.

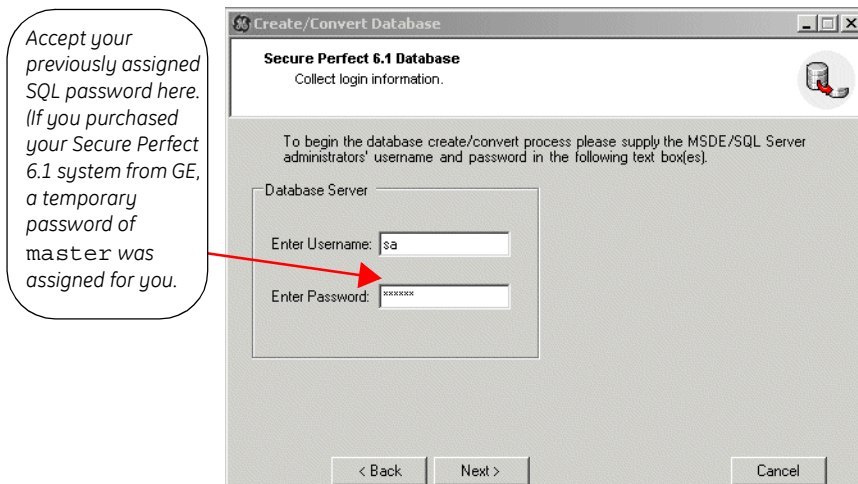


Figure 6-46. Create Database - Global Database Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays.

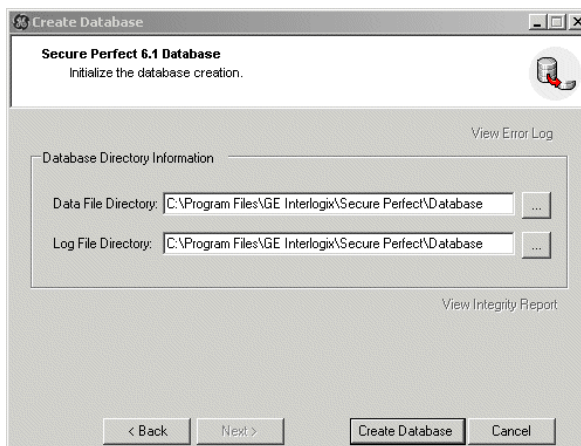




Figure 6-47. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Global Database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 6-6: Order of Events: Global Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The Global Database Server databases are created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The SecurePerfectDistributor database is installed and enabled. |
| 3 | The Global Database Server is configured for publishing. The Publisher is identified by the Global database instance name. In this installation scenario, there is only one Publisher on the Global database instance. Refer to Figure 6-1 on page 6.3 . |
| 4 | The Secure Perfect Merge Publication is defined. To define a publication, the database to be replicated is selected. Within that publication, articles are defined. The articles are representative of the tables contained within the database. |
| 5 | After the Publication is defined, the initial Snapshot Agent is started. This Agent will create an image of the database at that moment in time. Subscribers will utilize this snapshot later. |
| 6 | The SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database is created. This database is only present in the Global Database Server of a Global Edition installation. The following history tables are contained within:
AlarmHistoryTable
BadgeHistoryTable
DIHistory
DOHistory
DVMRHistory
GuardTourHistory
OperatorHistoryTable
ZoneHistoryTable |
6. Refer to [Figure 6-48 on page 6.79](#) for a sample Global Edition SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

Note: *Subscribers are not defined as part of the Global Database Server installation. Subscribers are assigned during the Regional Database Server installation.*

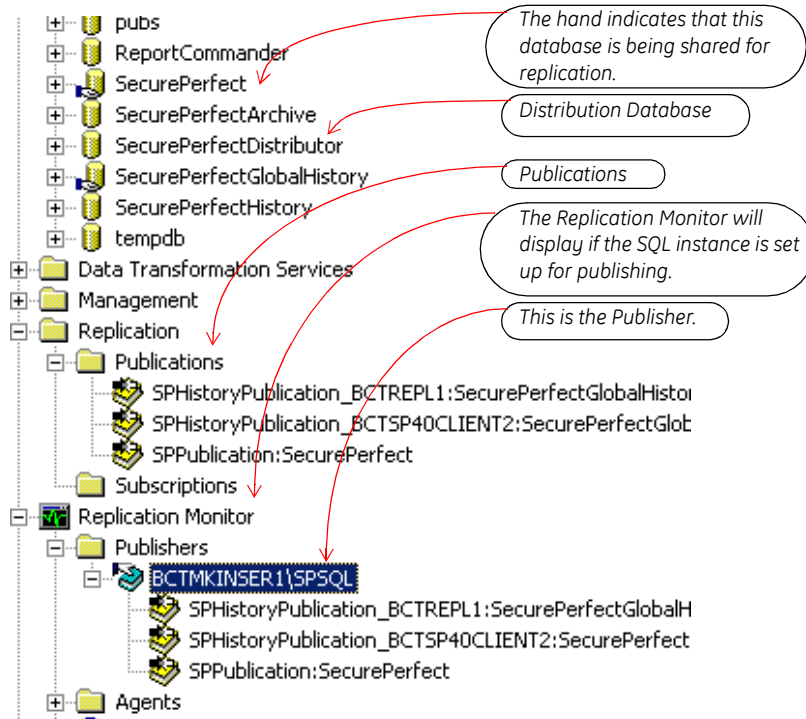


Figure 6-48. Sample Global SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

- Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 6.80.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

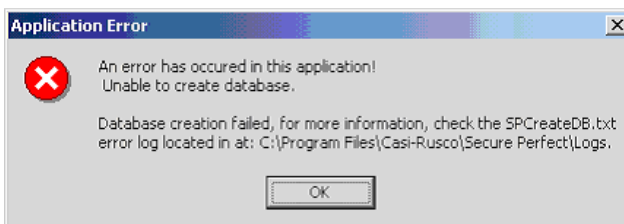


Figure 6-49. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the `SPCreateDB.txt` error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
 - If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.
- **Now, you must install the File Server to a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**
1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
 2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
 3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
 4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Select Installation Type** window displays as in [Figure 6-50](#).

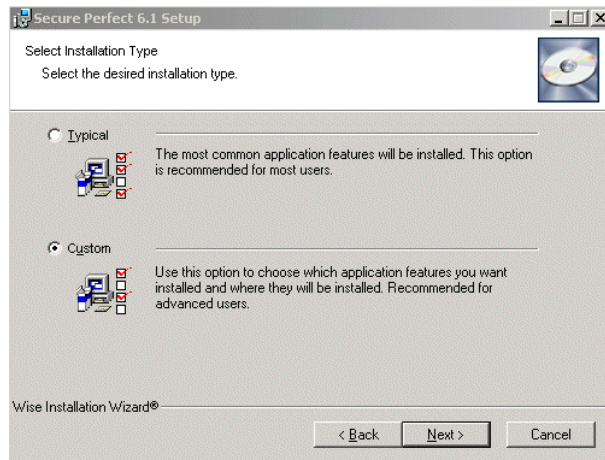


Figure 6-50. Select Installation Type - Custom

3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.)

4. Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.
5. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY File Server**.
6. The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-51](#).



Figure 6-51. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
8. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**

- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

10. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

13. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

14. Now, install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Client Application on a third computer.

➤ **If the third computer is Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

Follow the steps as listed in [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients”](#) on page 9.1.

➤ **If you choose to install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a third and separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the **Welcome** window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

➤ When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**.

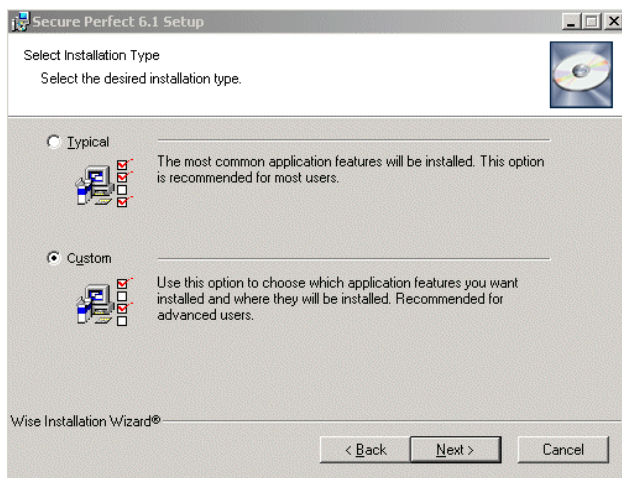


Figure 6-52. Select Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

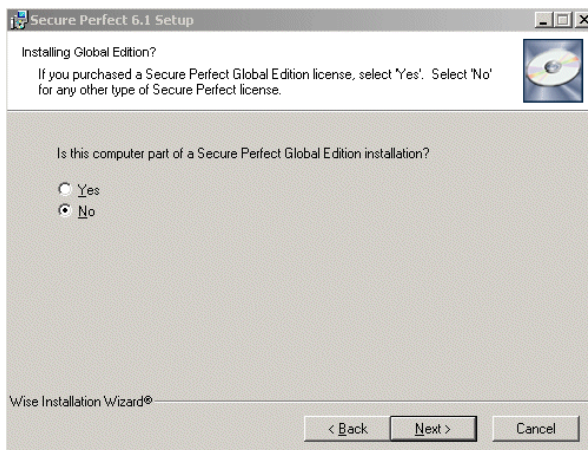


Figure 6-53. Install Global Edition

5. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Client Application**.

Result: A **Database and FileServer Path** window displays as in [Figure 6-54](#).

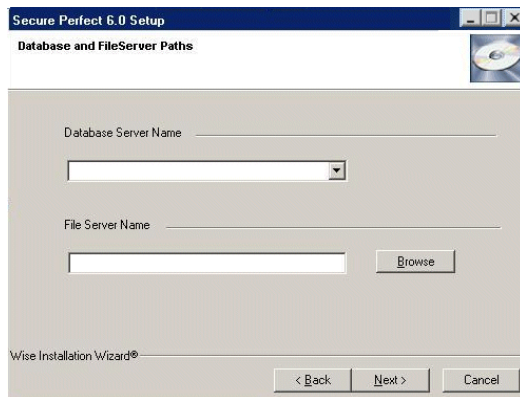


Figure 6-54. Database and File Server Paths

6. If the displayed **Database Server Name** is not correct, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the displayed **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
7. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 6-55 on page 6.89](#).



Figure 6-55. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

8. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

10. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

11. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

12. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
13. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
14. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.91](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	-------------------------------	------------------------	------------------	--------	----------------------------------	-----------

***You are
here!***

When Global Custom Configurations are Complete:

***Note:** Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 6.91](#), if you have not already licensed.*

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	-------------------------------	------------------------	------------------	--------	----------------------------------	-----------

***You are
here!***



Licensing Your Secure Perfect System

➤ To license your Secure Perfect system at this time:

After obtaining your registered license key as instructed in [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#), follow one of the sequences listed:

- [“First Time License” on page 10.6](#)
- [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 10.8](#)
- [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 10.9](#)
- [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 10.10](#)

Important!

REMINDER: When you have completed a successful licensing sequence, return to this point and continue.

➤ After a successful licensing sequence, or if you click **Cancel** to license at another time:

1. You may receive an **SP 6.1 Installation Complete** dialog box. If so, click **Yes** to reboot your computer.
2. Log on as administrator and continue with [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 6.92](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	-------------------------------	------------------------	------------------	--------	----------------------------------	-----------

*You are
here!*

Setting Services to Automatic Startup

Now, you need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.1 services start. Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2](#), for additional information about Secure Perfect Services.

***Note:** At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.*

***ONLY Global Database Server Installation:** No services are installed at this point if this is a custom installation and Secure Perfect Client Application is not yet installed.*

➤ **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays. Expand the list of services and scroll down.

2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.

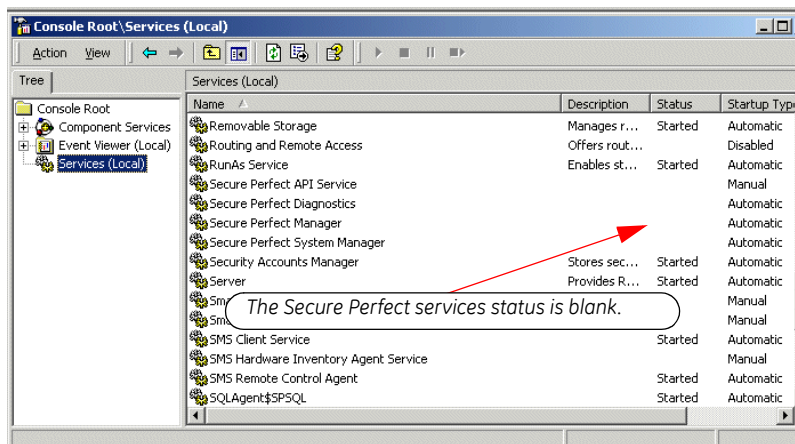


Figure 6-56. Secure Perfect Component Services

3. The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.
 4. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
 6. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
 7. Close all windows and applications.
 8. Restart the Secure Perfect Server computer.
- **To start the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of an Application Program Interface (API) to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.1 and have been previously licensed.
- **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
 - **Secure Perfect Diagnostic**
 - **Secure Perfect System Manager**
 - **Secure Perfect Manager**
 2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
 3. Exit the window.
 4. Continue with [“Server Folder Structure” on page 6.94](#).

Server Folder Structure

1. During installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software, the following folders are created: Client, Database, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Logs, MSDE2000 (if yours is a Windows Professional system), Rpt, SecureScripts, Signature, and Video.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the \\Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect folder, or to the folder where your Secure Perfect application installed. The folders displayed here vary with the type of installation:
 - If **Typical Server Type** is selected, all folders are present.
 - If **Custom Server Type** is installed:
 - If only **Database Server** feature is selected, Database, Logs, and SecureScripts folders are present.
 - If only **File Server** feature is selected, Client, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Rpt, Signature, and Video folders are present.
 - The MSDE2000 folder will display only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Server.
3. Some of the folders are shared. (Refer to the example in [Figure 6-57](#).) This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, when logged in as an authorized user.

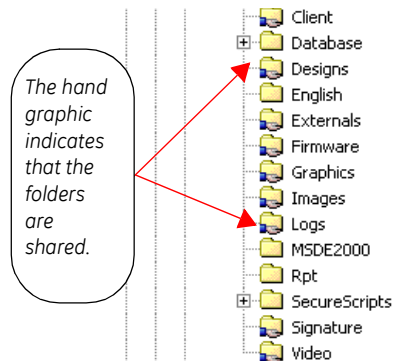


Figure 6-57. Typical Server Folder Structure

Server Folders

- **This is a description of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory:**

Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions. This folder also contain an MSDEAdmin utility, used to access the Secure Perfect databases.

Database

A folder that contains the system database file along with the archive and history database files. SQL Server log files for each database are also found in this folder.

Designs

A shared folder that contains all badge designs used by the imaging stations and sample badge designs.

English

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.1 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

Externals

A shared, empty shared folder created to store reports created by third party report generator.

Firmware

A shared folder that contains the firmware or application code needed to flash the micros.

Graphics

A shared folder that contains maps and icons used for Alarm Graphics.

Images

A shared folder that contains graphics files of captured, badge holder pictures. Sample images are included if you installed the sample database.

Logs

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.1 diagnostic log files.

MSDE2000

This folder displays ONLY following Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Server installation. The user may use these files if re-installation of MSDE is required. These files (Microsoft SQL Desktop Engine (MSDE) with Service Pack 3a) are used by the system during installation of Secure Perfect 6.1.

Replication

This folder is empty if you are not a Global Database Server computer. On a Global Database Server, this shared folder contains a UNC folder that accommodates snapshot data.

Rpt

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

SecureScripts

The scripts and programs used to create the database in SQL Server. It also contains subfolders required for converting and upgrading Secure Perfect systems to Secure Perfect 6.1.

Signature

A shared folder that contains the graphic files of captured signatures.

Video

An empty shared folder created to store video files and JPG image files grabbed from video windows.

Review the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, and continue with [“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts”](#).



Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts

Default local group is SPAdmin. Default local user name is secure and the password is master.

1. During the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer installation, a default Secure Perfect 6.1 local user account was set up for you. If you choose to add users and assign or change user passwords, review [“Defining User Accounts” on page 2.6](#).
2. Refer to documentation you received when you purchased your Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or Windows XP operating system, for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.

Adding a New User Account

- **To create a new Global User Group for the Secure Perfect Global Database Server, Active Directory:**
 1. Click **Start, Programs, Administration Tools**, and then **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
 2. Select, then right-click **Secure Perfect** on the navigation **Tree**.
 3. From the shortcut menu, select **New** and then **Group**.
 4. On the **New Object - Group** window:
 - Enter a **Group name** such as `Secure Perfect Users`.
 - Select the **Group scope** as **Global** (meaning that this is not local to this computer).
 - Select the **Group type** as **Security**.
 5. Click **OK** to accept and close this window. The new group name displays in the details windowpane on the right.
 6. Right-click the new group name that you just created and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu, to open the **Secure Perfect Users Properties** window.
 7. Select the **Members** tab.
 8. Click **Add** to add new members to the newly created group.
 9. Add `Administrator` to the new group.
- **To add the new Global group to each computer in the domain that is going to run Secure Perfect:**
 1. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Computer Management**.
 2. Expand **Local User and Groups**, then **Groups**.
 3. Select and then right-click **SPAdmin** from the list of Groups displayed.

4. Select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
5. Click **Add** and **Look in Active Directory**. Locate and add **Secure Perfect Users**.
6. Click **Add** and then click **OK**.

Result: Your windowpane should display similar to Figure 6-58. On the domain, you created a new Global group entitled ‘Secure Perfect Users.’ You then added Administrators as members of that group. Since the group is Global, any users added to the **Secure Perfect Users** group at the Active Directory will have permission to start the Secure Perfect program.

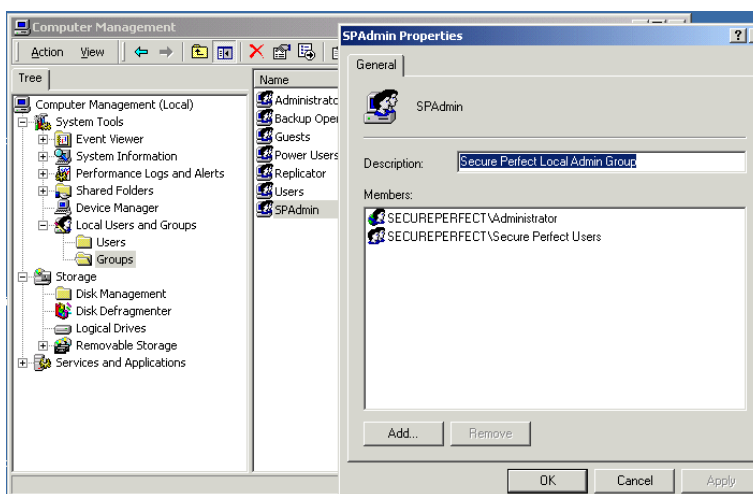


Figure 6-58. SPAdmin Properties Window

Note: Now, any members added to the ‘Secure Perfect Users’ group at the Domain Controller, Active Directory, will have permission to start Secure Perfect at all Secure Perfect system computers.

Verify that the user who is logging on to the computer where Secure Perfect is running, is part of the SPAdmin group on the Domain, Active Directory.

REMINDER: If you have just completed installation of the Global Database Server, you are now ready to install the Regional Database Server. Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow similar instructions. Verify and complete your installation instructions. THEN, continue with [“Configuring File Replication and Global Edition Options”](#) on page 8.1.

What's Next?

1. If you have not already done so, remove the Secure Perfect installation CD from your CD-ROM drive. You have completed the Global setup.
2. If you have not licensed your system, do so now. You must license your Global Edition system before you can proceed to configure Regional Database Servers. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System”](#) on page 10.1.
3. Proceed to set up additional Regional Server computers on your Secure Perfect system.

Note: Following configuration of each new client installation, all currently installed Secure Perfect Global Edition Server computers and client computers must be rebooted in order to be recognized.


Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/ Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
						You are here!

What's Next?

NOTES:

Chapter 7: Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Regional Database Server

NOTE: This chapter uses the following graphic in major headings to indicate Global Edition instructions. 

This chapter continues your system configuration of a Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition, at a Regional level. We recommend that you review the entire chapter and discuss with your IT Department before you begin your configuration.



In this chapter:

[“Pre-Installation Checklist” on page 7.2](#)

[“Prepare to Install” on page 7.5](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Regional Database Server” on page 7.9](#)

[“CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.1 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System” on page 7.86](#)

[“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91](#)

[“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 7.92](#)

[“Server Folder Structure” on page 7.94](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts” on page 7.97](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 7.99](#)

Pre-Installation Checklist

You are now ready to begin configuring your Regional Database Server computer. Before you begin this chapter, you should have completed the instructions in [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Global Database Server” on page 6.1](#)

NOTE: READ THIS SECTION IN ITS ENTIRETY!

- **To assist in configuration of your Secure Perfect Global Edition system, review this checklist:**

- ☐ Prepare and configure your Global system in this order, as detailed in [“Sequence of Global System Installation” on page 7.3:](#)

1. First, prepare and configure the Global Database Server.
2. Second, prepare and configure each Regional Database Server.
3. Last, prepare and configure any additional client computers to the specific Server in your Global system.

You are here!

- ☐ Each Server computer must be part of a new or existing domain. If you are creating a new domain, always consult with the network administrator before adding a domain or adding any computers to an existing network. Refer to [“Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain” on page 7.4.](#)
- ☐ Be prepared to license your software for Global Edition.

Sequence of Global System Installation

- To install a Secure Perfect Global Edition system, follow the sequence below:

***Note:** Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow similar instructions. Verify that you are following the correct instructions before you begin.*

You are here!

1. First, prepare and configure the Global Database Server. Install Windows 2000 or 2003 Standard Server, or Windows Advanced Server. Refer to the following [“CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Database Server”](#) on page 6.13.
2. Second, prepare and configure each Regional Database Server. Install Windows 2000 or 2003 Standard Server, Windows Advanced Server, Windows 2000 or XP Professional Server. You must have a Server operating system for file replication. Refer to
 - [“CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Regional Database Server”](#) on page 7.9
 - [“CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.1 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System”](#) on page 7.86
3. Last, prepare and configure any additional client computers to the specific Server in your Global system. Minimum requirements are Windows 2000 or XP Professional. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients”](#) on page 9.1.

***Note:** GE recommends that you do not add clients or devices to the Global Database Server computer. The Global Database Server in your Secure Perfect system should be dedicated to the replication process.*

4. Configure Directory File Services at the Global Database Server. Refer to [Chapter 8 - Configuring File Replication and Global Edition Options](#).

Your Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition software WILL NOT install unless minimum requirements have been met. Refer to the appropriate section of this manual for the operating system you are installing and configuring.

Adding the Computer to an Existing Domain

Since the Server computer will be part of a new or existing domain, you must add the Server computers to the network.

1. Since network configuration varies from company-to-company, see your network administrator for assistance.
2. It is important that the Server and Client system use the same network properties. Refer to [“Setting the Network Properties” on page 2.5](#), for more information or consult with your network administrator.

► **To change from the LocalSystem Windows Service Account to an existing domain account:**

***Note:** In Windows services, the `SQLServerAgent` must use a domain account. The `SQLAgent` account is the security context under which the `Snapshot Agent`, `Merge Agent`, and `Distribution Agent` are running by default.*

1. Navigate to the **Component Services** of your computer and double-click to display the list of services.
2. From the list of Services (Local), select **MSSQL\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. From the shortcut menu, select **Properties**.

Result: The **General** tab of the **Properties** window displays.

4. Click **Stop** under **Service status**.
5. Select and display the **Log On** tab.
6. Select **This account**.

Result: The field for account name is now enabled.

7. Enter the name of the domain account that will start and stop SQL services (or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select the name of the domain account).

8. Enter the password for the domain account and then enter the password again to confirm.
9. Return to the **General** tab and verify that **Startup type** is set to **Automatic**.
10. Click **Start** under **Service status**.
11. Click **OK** to accept and close the window.
12. From the list of Local Services, select **SQLAgent\$SPSQL**, and then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
13. Repeat [Step 3. on page 7.4](#) through [Step 11. on page 7.5](#).
14. Continue with [“Prepare to Install”](#).

Prepare to Install

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!						

Note: Prepare and configure your Secure Perfect Global Edition system as listed in [“Sequence of Global System Installation” on page 7.3](#).

➤ **To prepare for installation of the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as administrator user to the domain. If not, log off and log back on as a user with administrator permissions.
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

3. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer
- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select **SPSQL** instance of SQL Server.
- When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password **master**.
- Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.

4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
6. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.

2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Continue with [“Selecting Installation Type” on page 7.8](#).

Selecting Installation Type

- To select and install Custom as the type of installation:

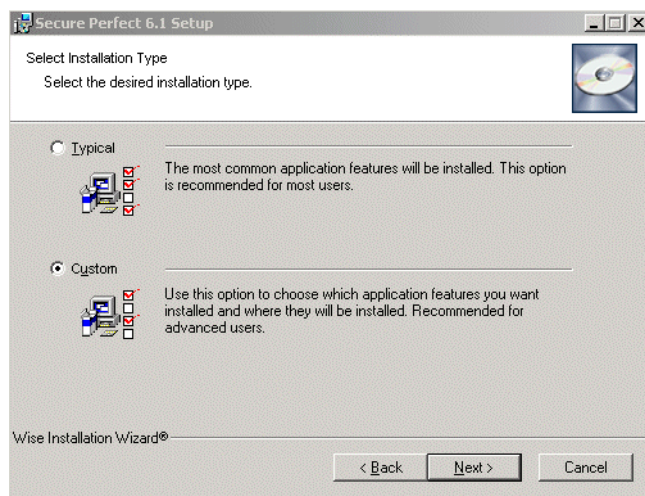


Figure 7-1. Installation Type Window

1. Select **Custom** in the **Select Installation Type** window, as displayed in [Figure 7-1](#). You must select **Custom** in order to install a Secure Perfect Global Edition system.

***Note:** When installing the Secure Perfect software on the Regional Database Server, you MUST select the type of installation as 'Custom' and select 'Yes' when asked, 'Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation.' This enables the window that allows you to enter/select your Global Database Server Name.*

2. Proceed to one of the following, depending on the operating system you are installing:
 - [“CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Regional Database Server” on page 7.9.](#)
 - [“CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.1 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System” on page 7.86.](#)

CUSTOM Installation: Secure Perfect 6.1 Regional Database Server

Recommended for experienced software installers.

Instructions Specific to Windows 2000, Windows 2003, and Advanced Server:

***Note:** Installation of Global Database Server and Regional Database Servers follow a similar set of instructions. Verify that you are installing a Regional Database Server before you begin.*

***Note:** You MUST select **Custom** in order to do any of the following:*

- *Install Global Edition features.*
- *Select Badge aliasing.*
- *Change the password for the Window logon USERID 'secure.'*
- *Selectively install **Database Server**, **File Server**, or **Secure Perfect Client Application**. These configuration options allow Secure Perfect databases and file shares to be separated from Secure Perfect application code and placed on another computer defined by you.*

*Installing Secure Perfect in a Cluster environment requires special configuration. Refer to the document, **Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment**, on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format.*

➤ To begin your Custom installation:

1. Select **Custom** as the type of installation and click **Next**.

Result: The **Installing Global Edition?** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You MUST be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

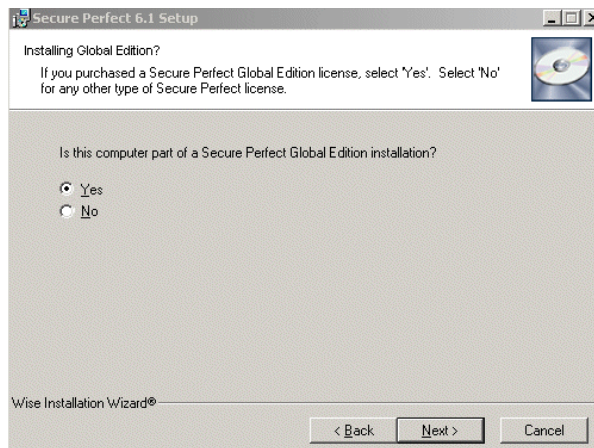


Figure 7-2. Installing Global Edition? Window

2. The **Custom Configuration** window displays for you to choose which Secure Perfect features to configure on this computer. The **Custom Configuration** window displays similar to [Figure 7-3](#).

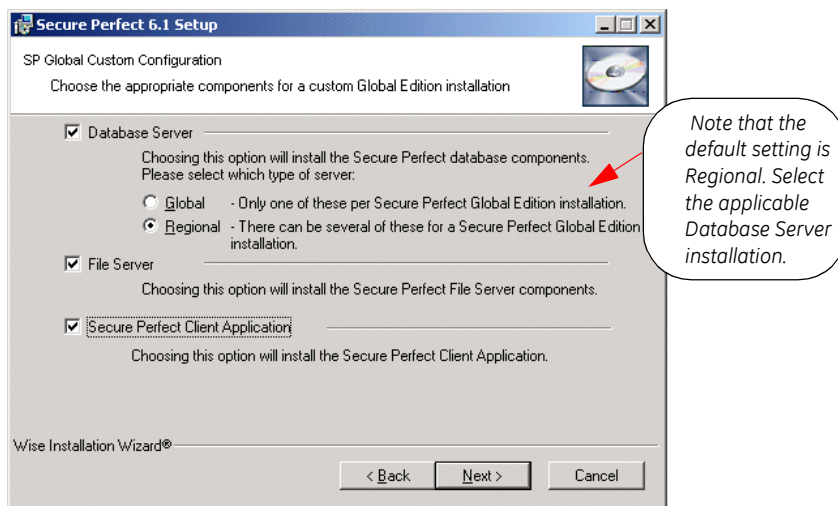


Figure 7-3. SP Regional Custom Configuration

3. Select one or more of the options pertaining to the system you are installing:

Note: Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin.

Database Server: This option is used to store the three databases, SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory.

An additional selection determines if you are installing Secure Perfect on:

- **Global Server** computer (must have SQL Server 2000 already installed). There can be only one Global Database Server.
- Or the **Regional Server** computer (if installation determines that SQL Server is not installed, MSDE will install for you). There can be several Regional Database Servers for a Secure Perfect Global Edition installation.

File Server: Only Secure Perfect File Server components install. This Server stores the data files shared by clients on the Secure Perfect network. File shares include graphics, images, signatures, designs, and firmware. The **File Server** option is a prerequisite in order to install **Secure Perfect Client Application**.

Secure Perfect Client Application: Only the Secure Perfect Client application installs. Only Secure Perfect client file shares install. This includes the executable file, Secure Perfect services, and Secure Perfect DLLs.

Install to Windows Server Cluster Group Named: (Does not display in a Global installation. If you are seeing this selection, click **Back**, review, and adjust your selections on the previous Secure Perfect windows.) Installing in a Cluster environment requires special instructions. Refer to installation of cluster technology in the document, *Installing Secure Perfect in a Clustered Environment*, on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format. (SQL Server must be installed.)

4. When you have selected the appropriate options, click **Next**.

Result: The **Global Database and FileServer Paths** window displays.

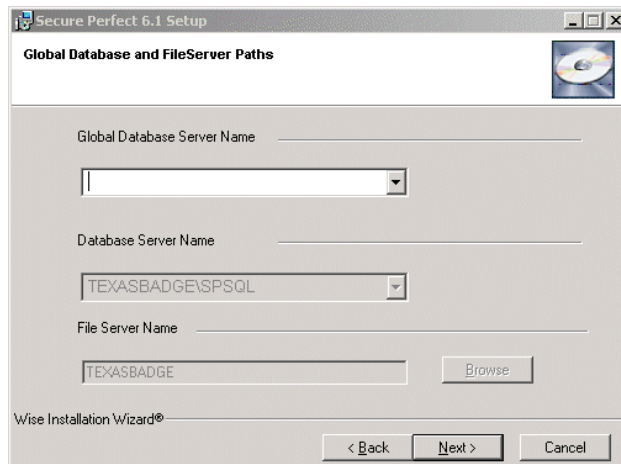


Figure 7-4. Global Database and FileServer Paths at Regional Server

5. Select a **Global Database Server Name** from the drop-down list of Servers in this domain. The **Database Server Name** and **File Server Name** are unavailable for input.
6. Click **Next** to display the **Logon Account for SQL Server Services** window, as in [Figure 7-5 on page 7.13](#).

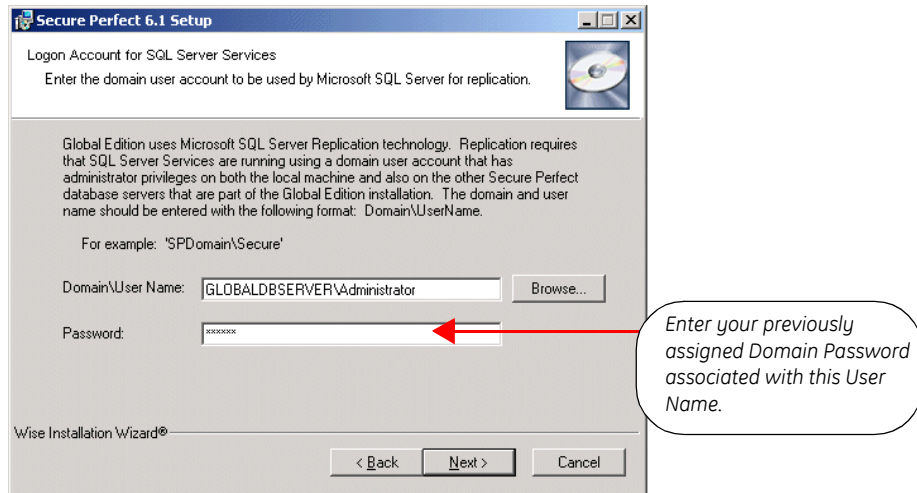


Figure 7-5. Logon Account for SQL Server Services

Note: Each Server used in the Secure Perfect Global Edition system requires the database services to run under a domain user name and password account. This account must have administrative privileges to that particular computer. We suggest that you use the identical domain account at each computer used in the GE system.

7. Enter the user domain and username in the format, **Domain\Username** or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select.
8. Enter the domain user **Password** and click **Next**.
9. Continue with [“Custom Configuration Options” on page 7.14.](#)

Custom Configuration Options

Recommended for experienced software installers.

The scenarios presented in the custom configurations that follow are the result of selections made on the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window. Review [Figure 7-3 on Page 7.10](#). Then, proceed to the indicated section of this chapter.

Table 7-1: Custom Configuration Options




NOTE: Some components require that a prerequisite component be installed at another computer before you begin. (Windows that display during installation are similar to the sample configurations presented.)

Scenario	Begin on Page:
1.	“Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration” on page 7.15
2.	“Database Server and File Server Configuration” on page 7.24
3.	“Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration” on page 7.39
4.	“Database Server Configuration” on page 7.52
5.	“Each Component on a Separate Computer” on page 7.67

IMPORTANT: When you select a scenario, be sure to complete all instructions for that scenario.

1. Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration

Scenario 1: All Components on One Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server	◆		
Secure Perfect Client Application	◆		

***Note:** This configuration has all components installed on Computer 1. Although these are the same components as **Typical**, you chose **Custom** to use badge aliasing or change the secure password.*

➤ **If you selected Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Client Application on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Change the ‘Secure’ Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-6 on page 7.16](#).

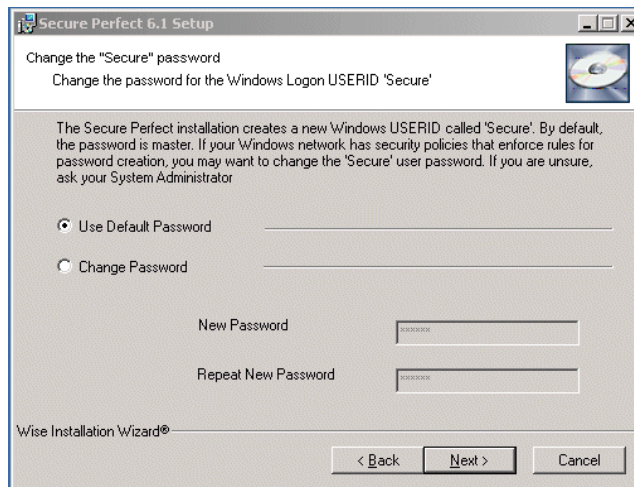


Figure 7-6. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

2. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Enter your previously assigned SQL password here. If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.)

4. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was created during installation of Microsoft SQL. Refer to [page 3.12.](#))
5. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
6. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: A series of Access Control and Security Management windows display as Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

7. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
8. If your computer reboots, log on and continue. When the **Select Database Server Type** window displays, select **Regional** and click **Next**.
9. Continue with "[To select a Secure Perfect edition:](#)".

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 7-7 on page 7.18.](#)

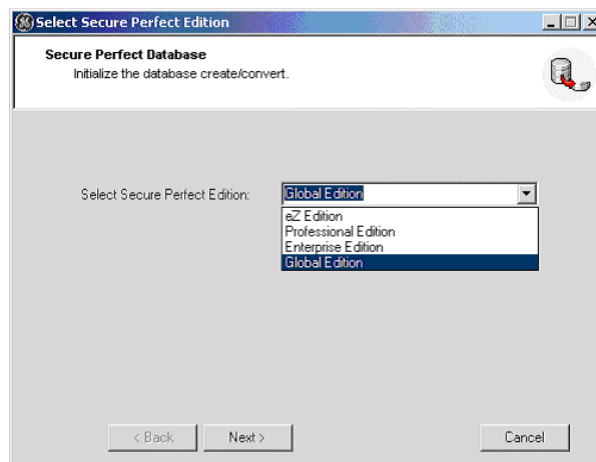


Figure 7-7. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays, is appropriate to the system you are installing.

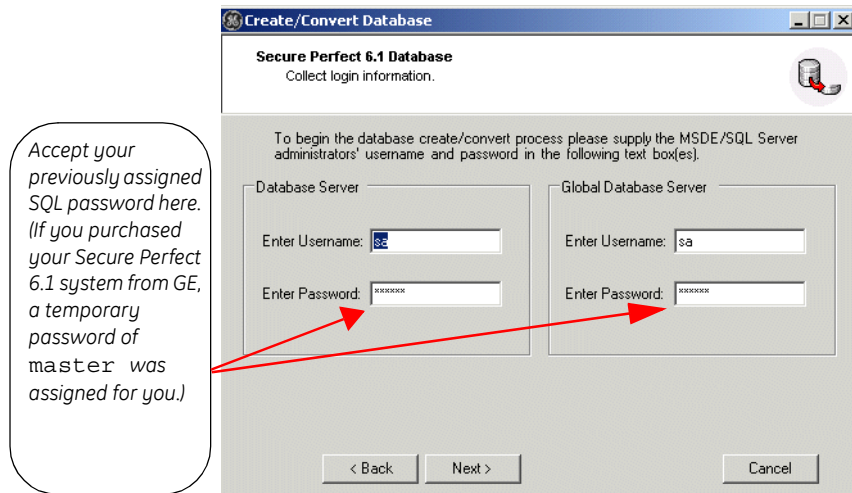


Figure 7-8. Create Database - Regional Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays, as in [Figure 7-9 on page 7.20](#).

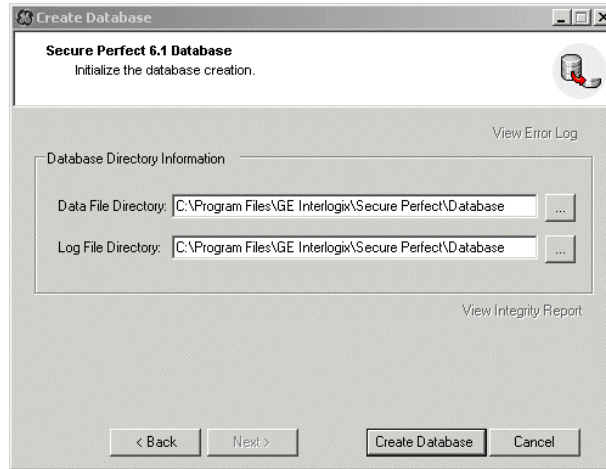




Figure 7-9. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Regional Database Server database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 7-2: Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

1	The Regional Database Server database is created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive.
2	The Regional Database Server contacts the SecurePerfectDistributor and Publisher on the Global Database Server.
3	The Regional database is added to the Subscriber's list at the Publisher and a new 'push' subscription is created.
4	The Snapshot Agent is started (at the Global Database Server computer). When the agent completes the snapshot of the Global database, the snapshot is applied to the Regional Database Server database.
5	The Merge Agent is started (at the Global Database Server). This agent, on its initial creation, applies the database snapshot taken by the Snapshot Agent, to the Regional database. A schedule is updated to operate every day, every five minutes, and set to run. As records are added, deleted, or updated on Regional Servers or the Global Database Server, the changes are replicated to all database Subscribers.
6	A new history merge publication is created on the Global Database Server. The name of the publication will be similar to the following: SPHistoryPublication_<regionalcomputername>: SecurePerfectGlobalHistory. Each Region's history is replicated to the Global Database Server. The Global Database Server receives all history data from the Regions, but it does not redistribute Regional data to another Region. History data is a one-way replication.
7	A new push subscription is created, a snapshot is started, and the Merge Agent is run.

Note: For each history publication, there is only one subscription, while the SecurePerfect database publication has multiple subscribers.

6. Refer to [Figure 7-10](#) for a sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

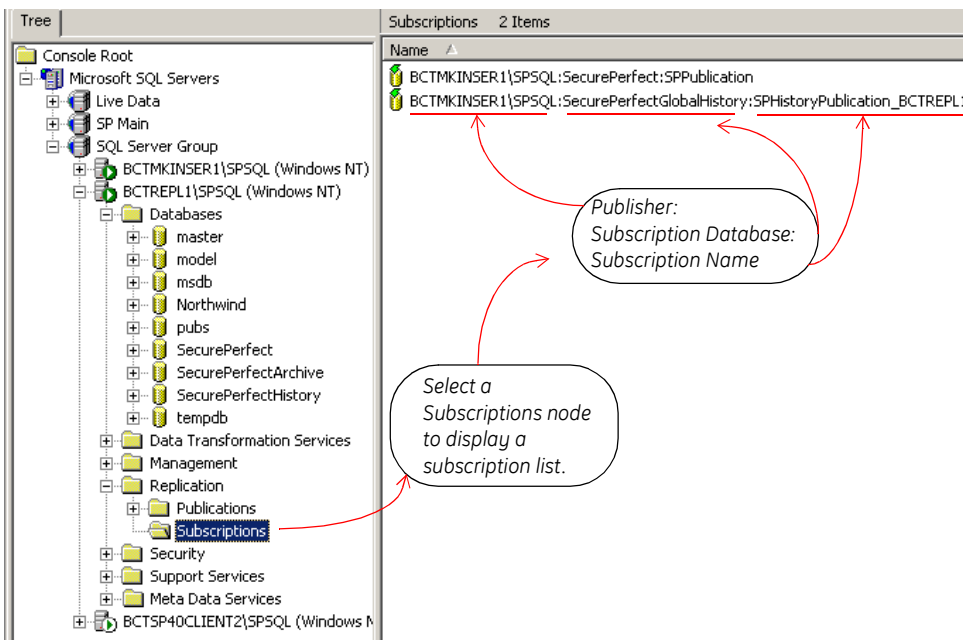


Figure 7-10. Sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

7. Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 7.23.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

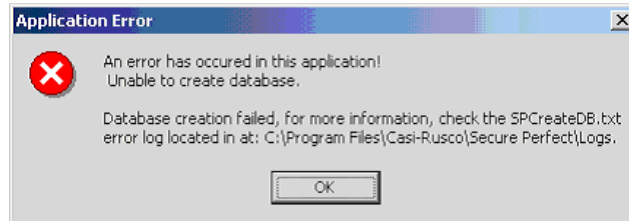


Figure 7-11. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreateDB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
 - If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.
- **To continue following a successful database creation:**

1. A message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully created!**

Note: A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

2. Click **OK**.

Result: The dialog box closes. A window informs you that Installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 is complete.

3. If you receive a message to reboot at this time, click **Yes** to reboot, log on, and continue.

4. An **SP License Setup** window displays. Unless otherwise stated in your configuration scenario, proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91.](#)




Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

***Note:** Be sure to complete all instructions for the scenario you are installing.*

2. Database Server and File Server Configuration

**Scenario 2: Database Server and File Server on One Computer
Secure Perfect Client Application on a Separate Computer**

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server	◆		
Secure Perfect Client Application		◆	

***Note:** This configuration has the Database Server and the File Server installed on Computer 1, then the Secure Perfect application is installed on Computer 2.*

► **If you selected Database Server and File Server on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-12](#).

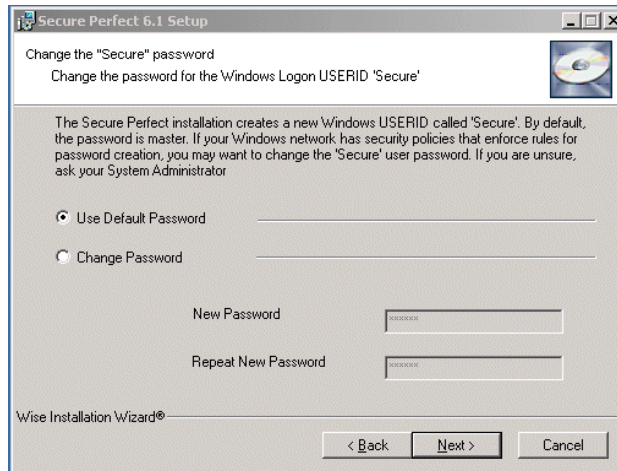


Figure 7-12. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

2. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
3. Enter your new password and then enter a second time.
4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

5. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
6. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
7. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

8. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 7-13 on page 7.27](#).

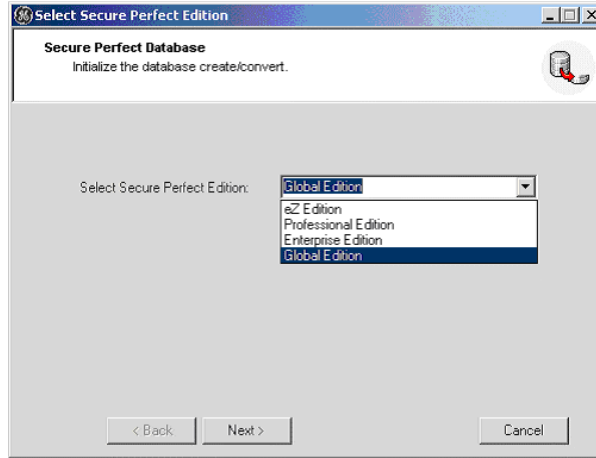


Figure 7-13. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays, is appropriate to the system you are installing.

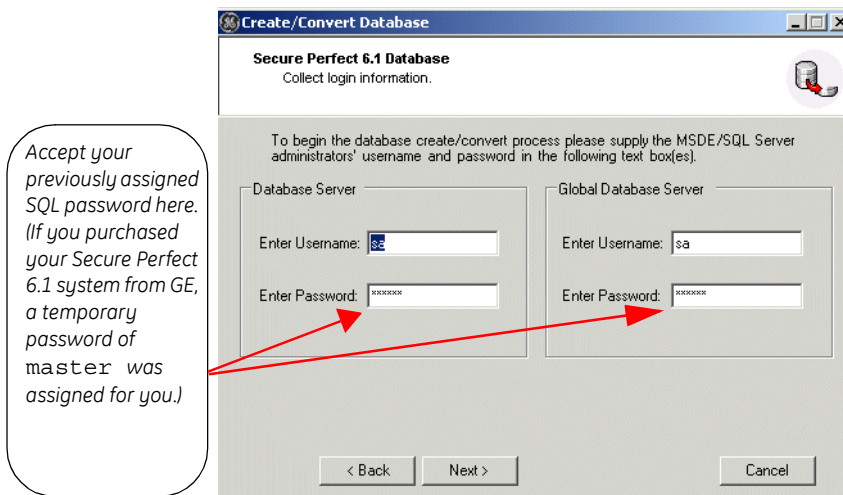


Figure 7-14. Create Database - Regional Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays, as in [Figure 7-15 on page 7.29](#).

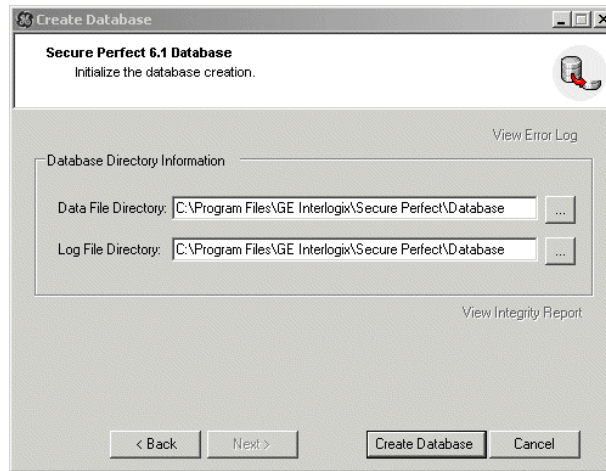




Figure 7-15. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Regional Database Server database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 7-3: Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The Regional Database Server database is created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The Regional Database Server contacts the SecurePerfectDistributor and Publisher on the Global Database Server. |
| 3 | The Regional database is added to the Subscriber's list at the Publisher and a new 'push' subscription is created. |
| 4 | The Snapshot Agent is started (at the Global Database Server computer). When the agent completes the snapshot of the Global database, the snapshot is applied to the Regional Database Server database. |
| 5 | The Merge Agent is started (at the Global Database Server). This agent, on its initial creation, applies the database snapshot taken by the Snapshot Agent, to the Regional database. A schedule is updated to operate every day, every five minutes, and set to run. As records are added, deleted, or updated on Regional Servers or the Global Database Server, the changes are replicated to all database Subscribers. |
| 6 | A new history merge publication is created on the Global Database Server. The name of the publication will be similar to the following: SPHistoryPublication_<regionalcomputername>: SecurePerfectGlobalHistory. Each Region's history is replicated to the Global Database Server. The Global Database Server receives all history data from the Regions, but it does not redistribute Regional data to another Region. History data is a one-way replication. |
| 7 | A new push subscription is created, a snapshot is started, and the Merge Agent is run. |

Note: For each history publication, there is only one subscription, while the SecurePerfect database publication has multiple subscribers.

- Refer to [Figure 7-16](#) for a sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

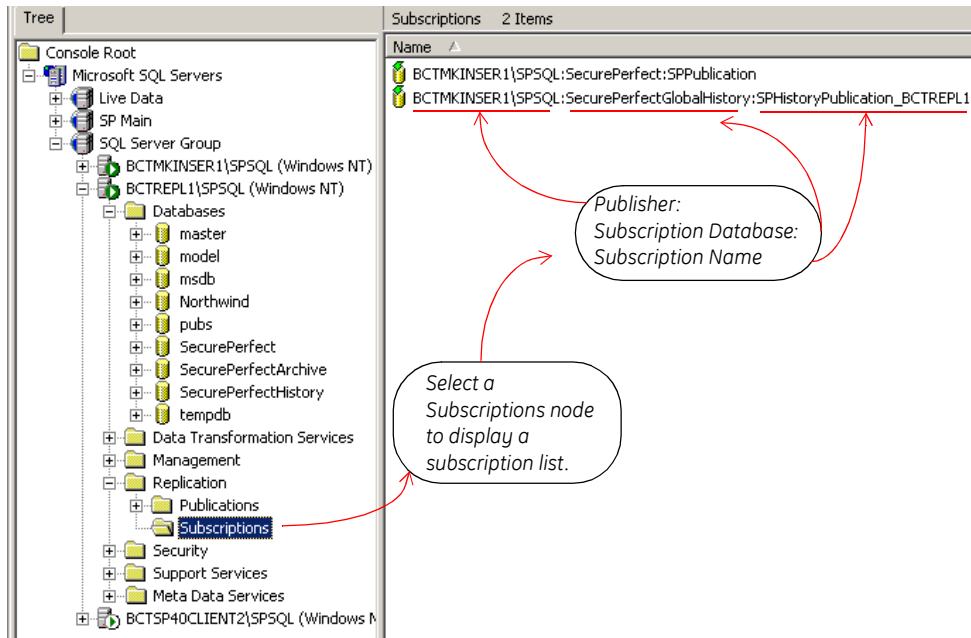


Figure 7-16. Sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

- Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 7.32.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

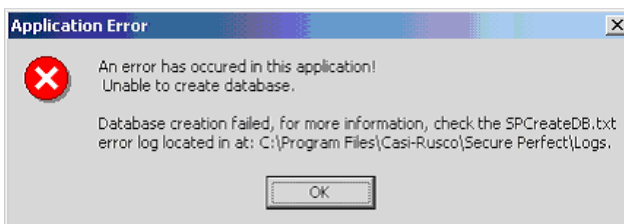


Figure 7-17. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreateDB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

- If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

➤ **To continue following a successful database creation:**

1. Remove the Secure Perfect installation CD, and continue with instructions to install **Secure Perfect Client Application**. Follow instructions for the operating system installed on your second computer:
 - [“If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:” on page 7.33.](#)

OR

- “If you install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:” .

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

Continue with instructions as listed in [Chapter 9 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients](#). Follow the instructions for Custom installations.

- **If you install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 operating system, but **DO NOT** install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user of the domain.
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer
- MS SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a (ONLY Windows 2000 Standard Edition)

During the installation windows of the Microsoft SQL Server Service Pack:

- Select **SPSQL** instance of SQL Server.
 - When a **Connect to Server** window displays, select **SQL Server Authentication** and enter the 'sa' password master.
 - Select **Upgrade Microsoft Search and apply SQL Server 2000 SP3 (required)**.
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
- DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect Software Installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
Result: The **License Agreement** window displays.
2. Select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**.

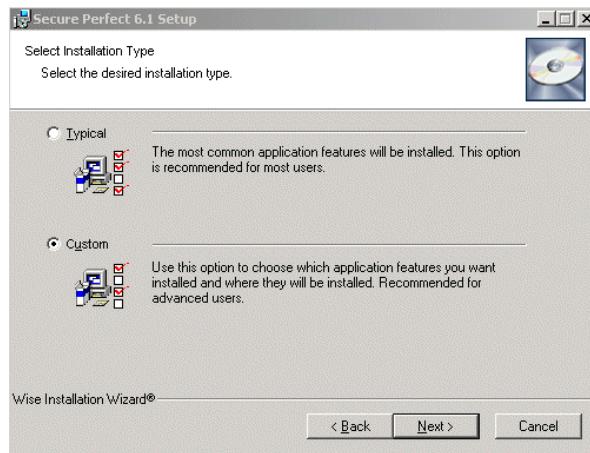


Figure 7-18. Select Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays.

5. When asked **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition installation?**, select **Yes**.

6. Click **Next**.

Result: The **SP Global Custom Configuration** window displays.

7. Select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Client Application**.

8. Click **Next**.

9. The **Database and File Server Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 7-19 on page 7.37](#).

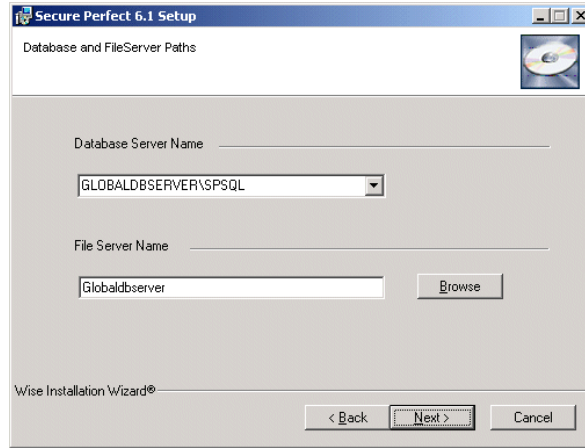


Figure 7-19. Database and File Server Paths at Regional Database Server

10. If the displayed **Database Server Name** is not appropriate, select the appropriate Name from the drop-down list. If the displayed **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
11. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-20 on page 7.38](#).



Figure 7-20. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

12. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

13. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

14. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

15. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.




16. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1** has been successfully installed window displays, click **Finish**.
17. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

3. Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application Configuration

**Scenario 3: Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on One Computer
File Server on a Separate Computer**

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Client Application	◆		

Note: This configuration has the Database Server and the Secure Perfect Client Application installed on Computer 1, while File Server is installed on Computer 2.

- **If you selected Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**
 1. A window displays similar to [Figure 7-21 on page 7.40](#).

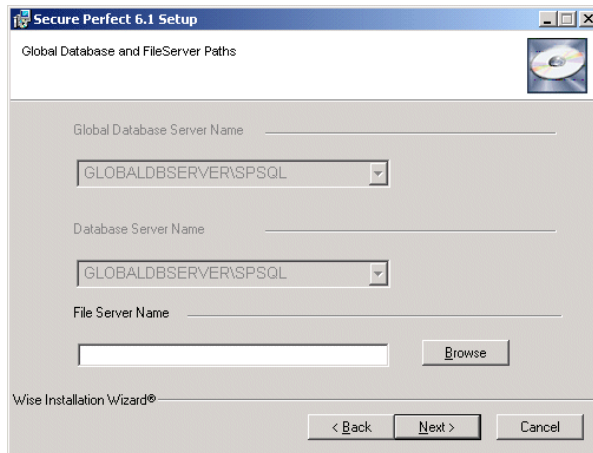


Figure 7-21. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and FileServer Paths** window, the **Global Database Server Name** and **Database Server Name** display as read-only. They are unavailable for entry.
3. If the **File Server Name** displays, accept the entry as listed or click **Browse** to navigate to another computer that may serve as **File Server** for your system, and then select that computer name to display in this dialog box.

***Note:** You must install **File Server** on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.*

Result: The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 7-22 on page 7.41](#).



Figure 7-22. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

4. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
5. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

6. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

8. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 7-23](#).

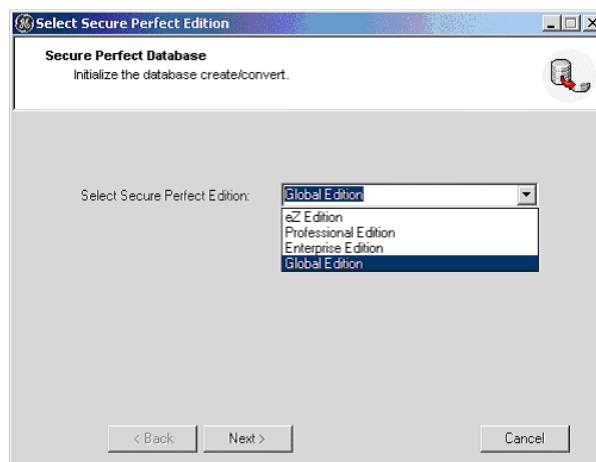


Figure 7-23. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select **Global Edition** as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays, is appropriate to the system you are installing.

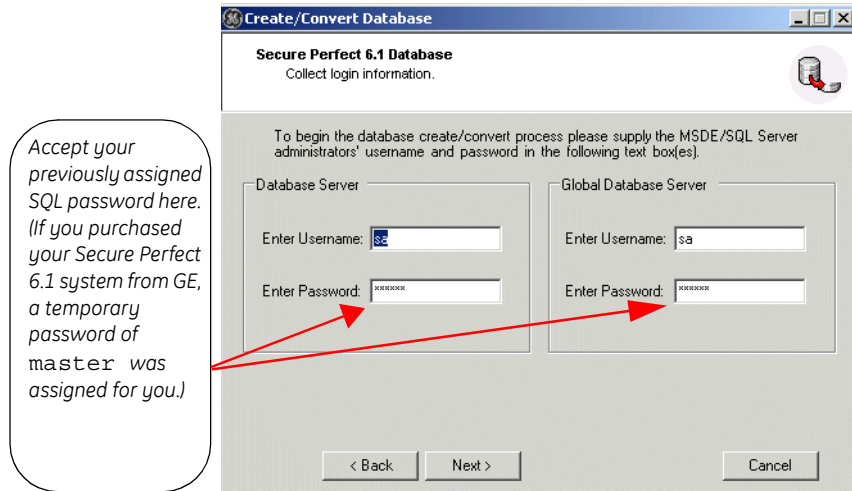


Figure 7-24. Create Database - Regional Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays, as in [Figure 7-25 on page 7.44](#).

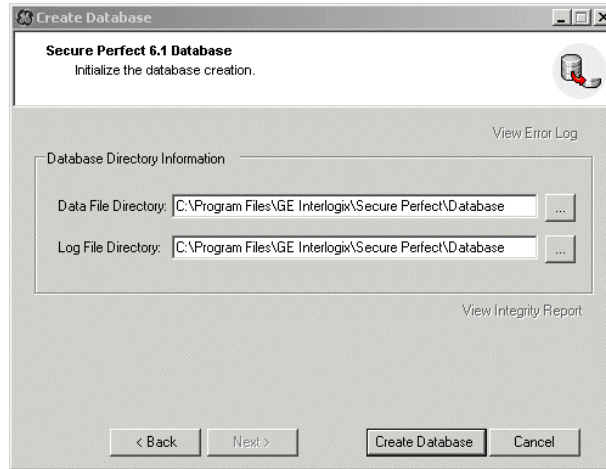




Figure 7-25. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Regional Database Server database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 7-4: Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

1	The Regional Database Server database is created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive.
2	The Regional Database Server contacts the SecurePerfectDistributor and Publisher on the Global Database Server.
3	The Regional database is added to the Subscriber's list at the Publisher and a new 'push' subscription is created.
4	The Snapshot Agent is started (at the Global Database Server computer). When the agent completes the snapshot of the Global database, the snapshot is applied to the Regional Database Server database.
5	The Merge Agent is started (at the Global Database Server). This agent, on its initial creation, applies the database snapshot taken by the Snapshot Agent, to the Regional database. A schedule is updated to operate every day, every five minutes, and set to run. As records are added, deleted, or updated on Regional Servers or the Global Database Server, the changes are replicated to all database Subscribers.
6	A new history merge publication is created on the Global Database Server. The name of the publication will be similar to the following: SPHistoryPublication_<regionalcomputername>: SecurePerfectGlobalHistory. Each Region's history is replicated to the Global Database Server. The Global Database Server receives all history data from the Regions, but it does not redistribute Regional data to another Region. History data is a one-way replication.
7	A new push subscription is created, a snapshot is started, and the Merge Agent is run.

Note: For each history publication, there is only one subscription, while the SecurePerfect database publication has multiple subscribers.

6. Refer to [Figure 7-26](#) for a sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

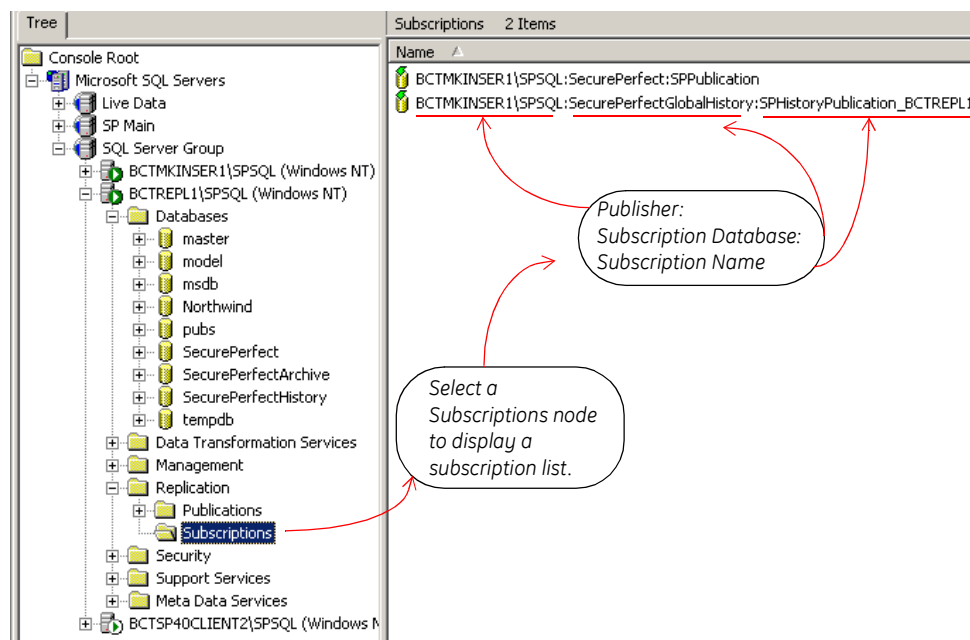


Figure 7-26. Sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

7. Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 7.47.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

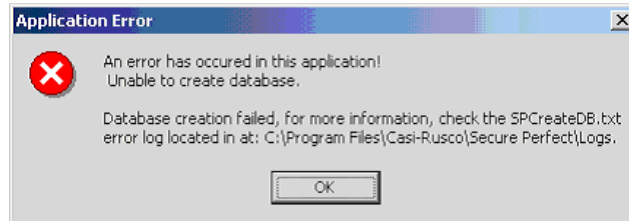


Figure 7-27. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreatedB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreatedB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

- If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

➤ **To continue following a successful database creation:**

1. Click **Yes** to reboot your system at this time. After the reboot, log on as administrator.
2. Continue with configuration of the File Server on a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer.

- **Now, you must select and install ONLY the File Server component on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server and Secure Perfect Client Application installation already complete.*

If you do not install the File Server at this time, you will not be able to license your system.

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC

- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins.”](#)

➤ When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:

Note: A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.

2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

4. Select **ONLY File Server**. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-28](#).

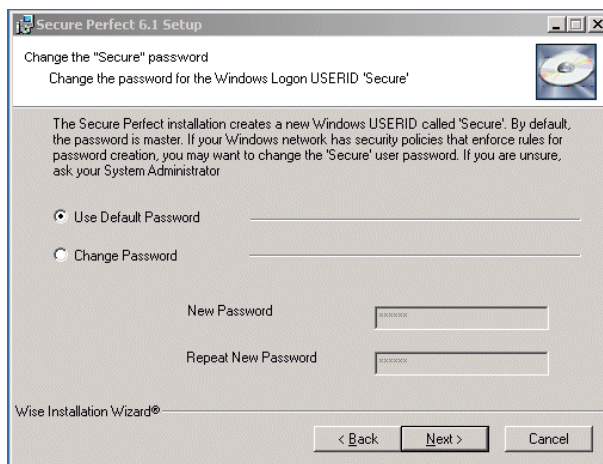


Figure 7-28. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

5. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
6. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

7. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
8. Click **Next** to continue.
Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.
9. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
10. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
11. The **License Setup** window displays. Proceed to license your system at this time. Refer to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91](#).




Important!

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

4. Database Server Configuration

Scenario 4: Database Server on One Computer File Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Client Application		◆	

***Note:** This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, then the File Server and the Secure Perfect application are installed on Computer 2.*

► **If you selected ONLY Database Server component on the SP Global Custom Configuration window:**

1. A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 7-29 on page 7.53](#).

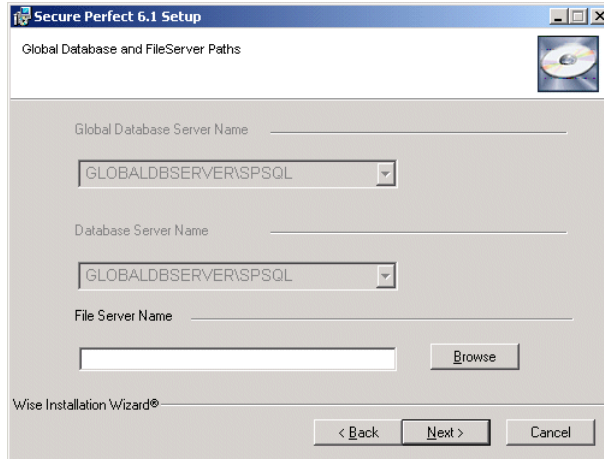


Figure 7-29. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and FileServer Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Enter the computer name or click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer for your system, and then select the computer to display the name in this field.

***Note:** You must install the **File Server** component on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.*

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-30 on page 7.54](#).

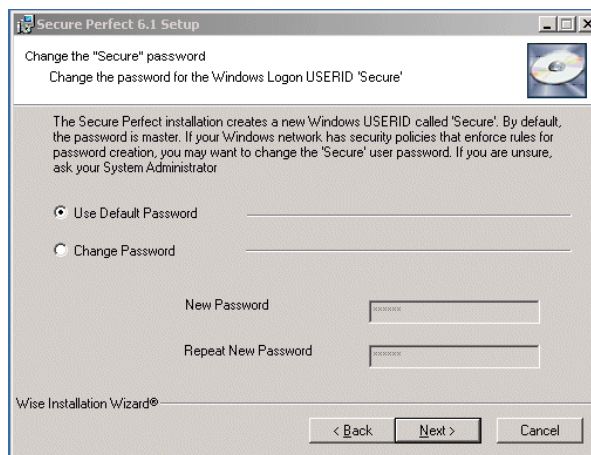


Figure 7-30. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

5. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
6. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.
7. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user. (This password was previously created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.10](#).)
8. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.
9. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: SP 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.
10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

11. Remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.

► **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 7-31](#).

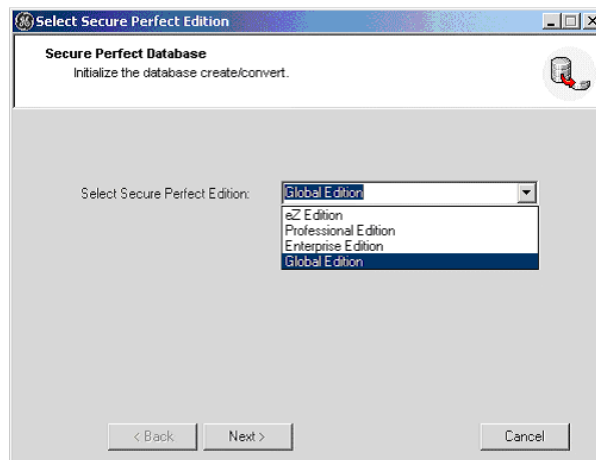


Figure 7-31. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

➤ **To create your system database:**

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays, is appropriate to the system you are installing.

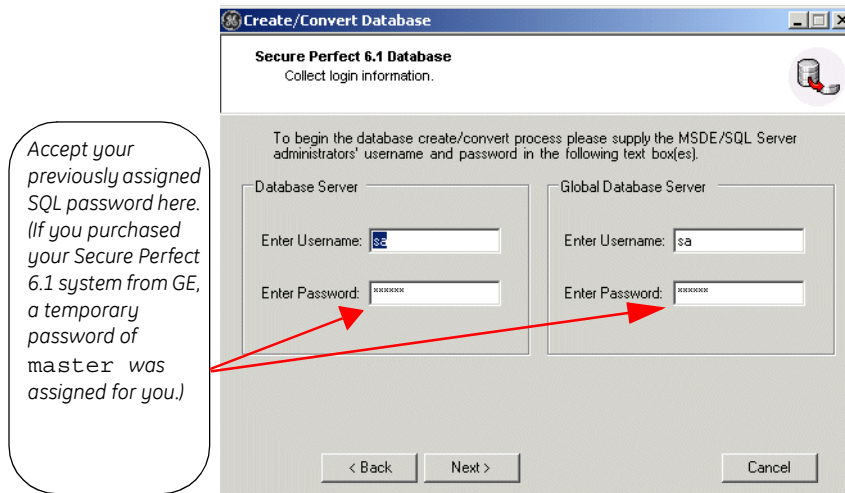


Figure 7-32. Create Database - Regional Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays, as in [Figure 7-33 on page 7.57](#).

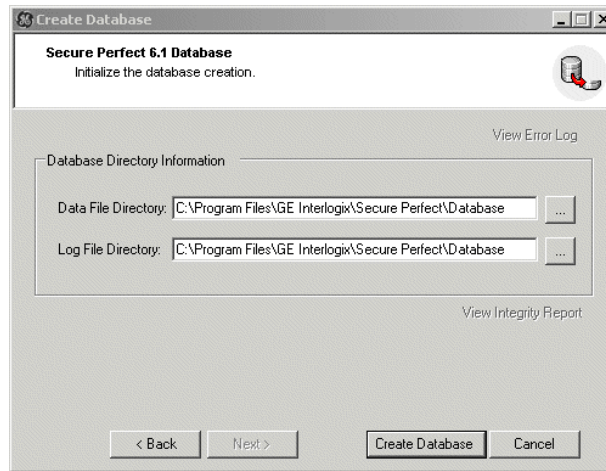




Figure 7-33. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Regional Database Server database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 7-5: Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The Regional Database Server database is created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The Regional Database Server contacts the SecurePerfectDistributor and Publisher on the Global Database Server. |
| 3 | The Regional database is added to the Subscriber's list at the Publisher and a new 'push' subscription is created. |
| 4 | The Snapshot Agent is started (at the Global Database Server computer). When the agent completes the snapshot of the Global database, the snapshot is applied to the Regional Database Server database. |
| 5 | The Merge Agent is started (at the Global Database Server). This agent, on its initial creation, applies the database snapshot taken by the Snapshot Agent, to the Regional database. A schedule is updated to operate every day, every five minutes, and set to run. As records are added, deleted, or updated on Regional Servers or the Global Database Server, the changes are replicated to all database Subscribers. |
| 6 | A new history merge publication is created on the Global Database Server. The name of the publication will be similar to the following: SPHistoryPublication_<regionalcomputername>: SecurePerfectGlobalHistory. Each Region's history is replicated to the Global Database Server. The Global Database Server receives all history data from the Regions, but it does not redistribute Regional data to another Region. History data is a one-way replication. |
| 7 | A new push subscription is created, a snapshot is started, and the Merge Agent is run. |

Note: For each history publication, there is only one subscription, while the SecurePerfect database publication has multiple subscribers.

- Refer to [Figure 7-34](#) for a sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

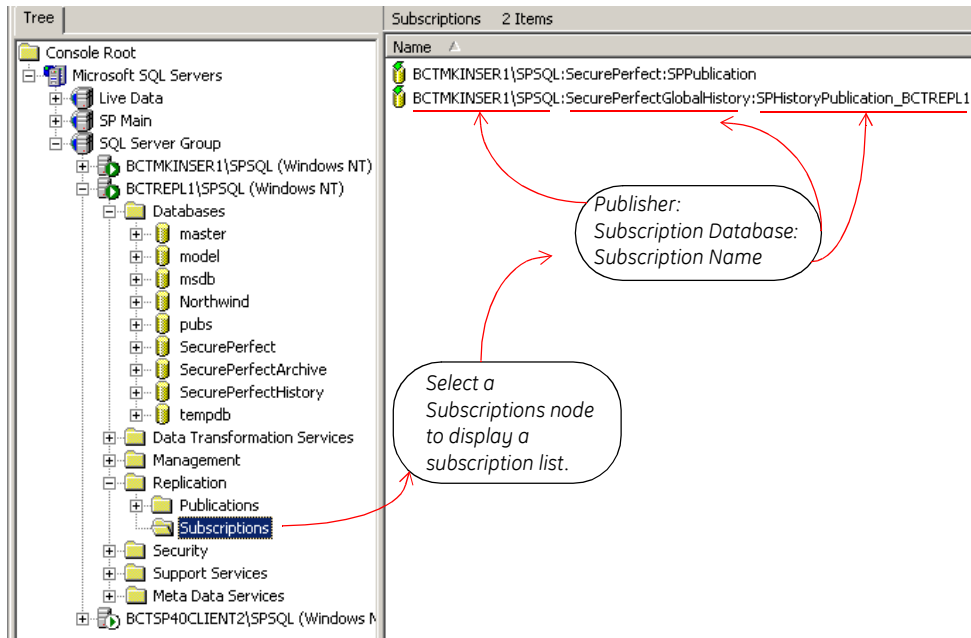


Figure 7-34. Sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

- Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation”](#) on page 7.60.

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

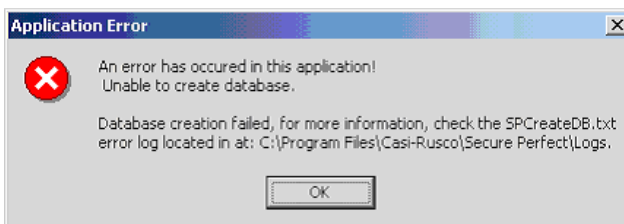


Figure 7-35. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreateDB.txt error log.
 - If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

- If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

➤ **Now, you must install File Server and Secure Perfect Client Application on a separate Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.

3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later

- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues. Please wait.
8. The Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays.
9. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:”](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. When the **Select Installation Type** window displays, select the type of installation as **Custom**.

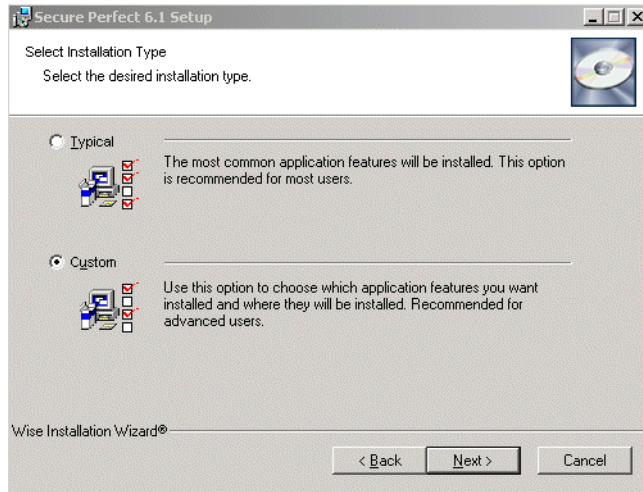


Figure 7-36. Selection Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this computer is a member of a domain. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.) Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

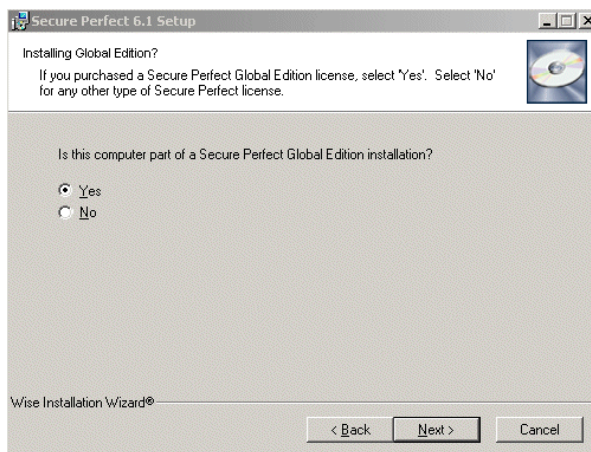


Figure 7-37. Install Global Edition

Result: The **Custom Configuration** window displays.

5. Select **File Server** and **Secure Perfect Client Application**. Click **Next**.

Result: A window displays similar to [Figure 7-38](#):

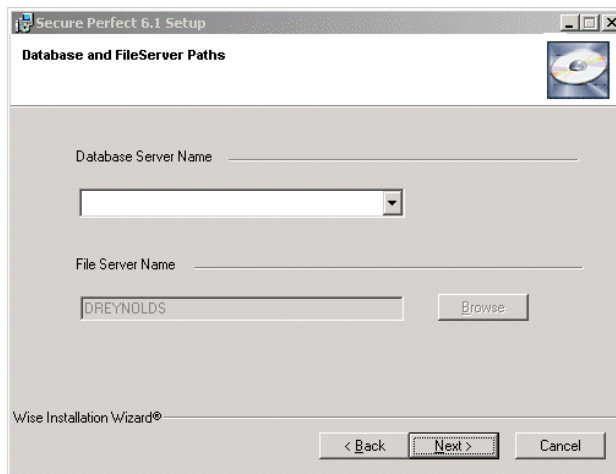


Figure 7-38. Database Server Name Required

6. The **Database Server Name** field is available and required. Select a Server Name from the drop-down list of eligible SQL servers for this installation.
7. The **File Server Name** is a read-only field and is unavailable for selection.
8. Click **Next** to display the **Change the 'secure' Password** window, as in [Figure 7-39](#).

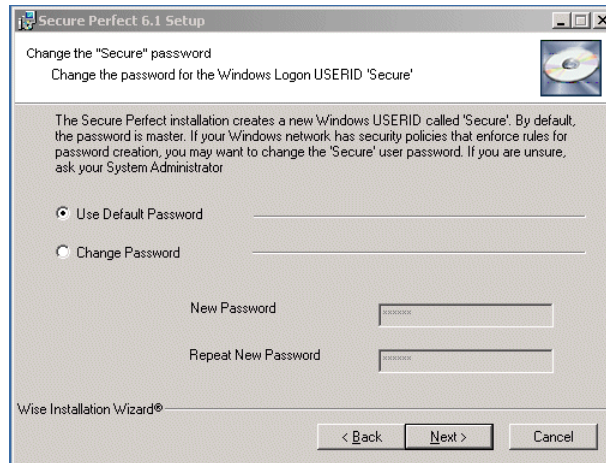


Figure 7-39. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

9. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)
10. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

11. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

12. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

13. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

Result: The SP License Setup window displays.




14. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive and continue with [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1.](#)

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					

5. Each Component on a Separate Computer

Scenario 5: Each Component on a Separate Computer

Components	Computer 1 	Computer 2 	Computer 3 
Database Server	◆		
File Server		◆	
Secure Perfect Client Application			◆

Note: This configuration has the Database Server installed on Computer 1, the File Server installed on Computer 2, and the Secure Perfect application installed on Computer 3.

- To install each Secure Perfect component to a separate computer, you must begin with the Database Server installation on the first computer.
- On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Database Server**:

Result: A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays similar to [Figure 7-40](#).

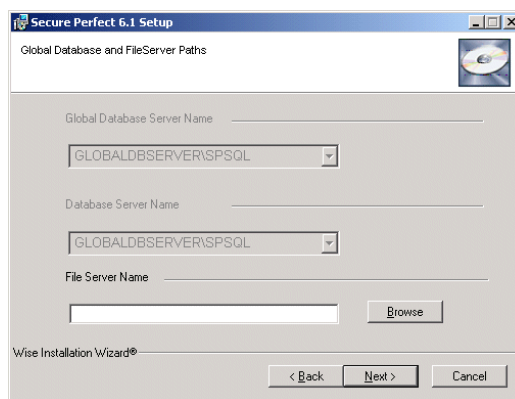


Figure 7-40. File Server Name Required

2. At the **Database and FileServer Paths** window, the **Database Server Name** displays as read-only. It is unavailable for entry.
3. Click **Browse** to navigate to the **File Server** computer you will be using for your system, and then select the computer name to display the computer name in this dialog box.

Note: You must install File Server on the selected File Server in your Secure Perfect system before attempting to license any Secure Perfect application.

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-41](#).

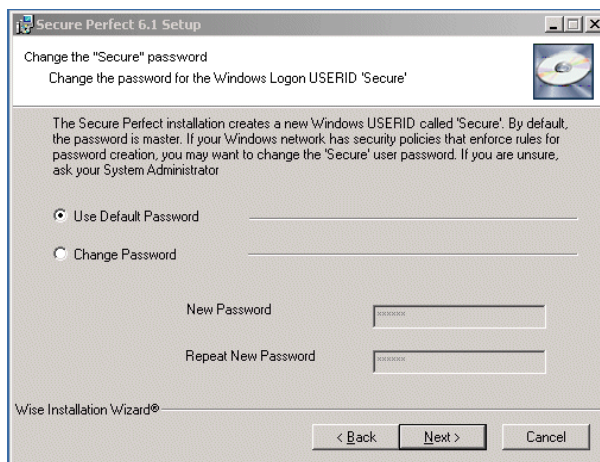


Figure 7-41. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

5. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:
 - **Use Default Password**
 - **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

6. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

Enter your sa password as created during installation of SQL. Refer to [page 3.12](#).

7. Enter the SQL Server password for the 'sa' user.
8. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect Database Server files.

9. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

10. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

11. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

➤ **To select a Secure Perfect edition:**

The **Create SP Database** feature is available on the Secure Perfect program menu of computers with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed. Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence.

1. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 7-42 on page 7.70](#).

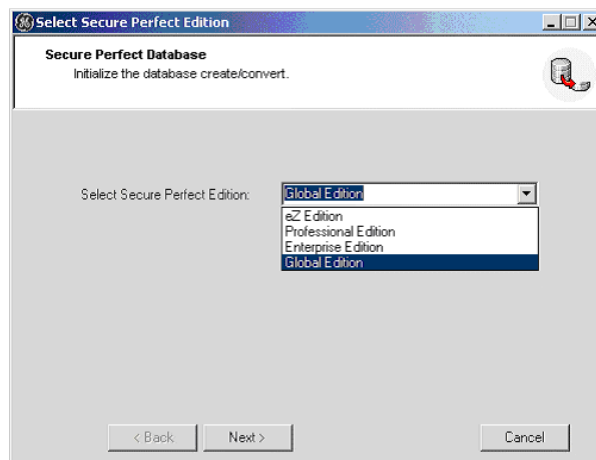


Figure 7-42. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Creating the Database - Custom Installation

► To create your system database:

1. The **Create\Convert Database** window that displays, is appropriate to the system you are installing.

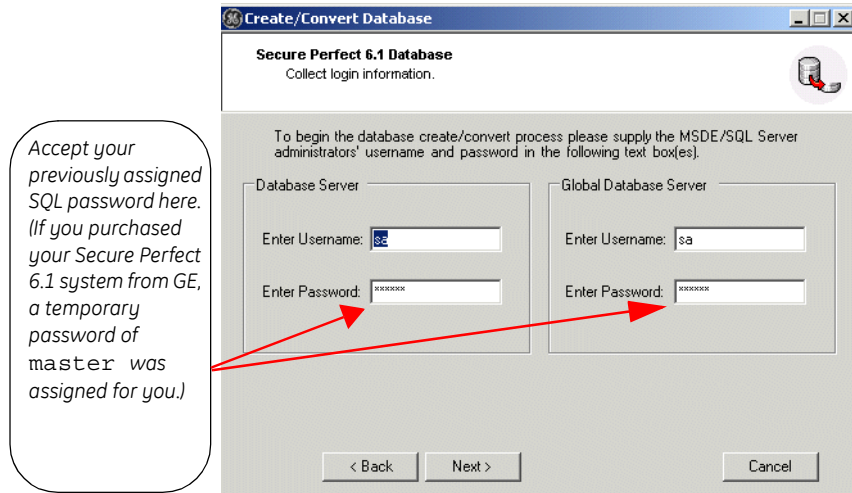


Figure 7-43. Create Database - Regional Server

2. Ignore the 'sa' **User Name** as displayed. The **Password** field displays your previously assigned and encrypted SQL password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.) Accept the password as displayed.
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create Database, Initialize the Database Creation** window displays, as in [Figure 7-44 on page 7.72](#).

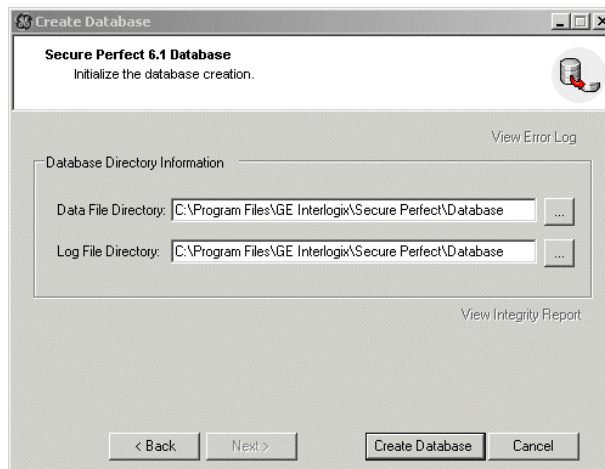




Figure 7-44. Create Database - Initialize the Database Creation

4. Each Secure Perfect database consists of data files and transaction logs. You have an option to place those components in different physical locations. You may consider this if your IT Department has certain policies regarding database installation. Consult with your IT Department for assistance.

- **Data File Directory:** The **Data File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default as displayed or click  and browse to any folder location where data files will be stored.

***Note:** If you are installing in a Cluster configuration, the Distributor installs to the same path as the Cluster Data File Directory.*

- **Log File Directory:** The **Log File Directory** field displays the default directory. Accept the default or click  and browse to the folder location where database log files will be stored.

***Note:** This refers to the database logs; this does NOT refer to the Secure Perfect logs.*

5. Click **Create Database**. The database creation begins and a progress bar is displayed. This may take a few minutes.



If a database already exists, a warning message will display stating that you are about to overwrite your existing database with an empty default database.

Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

For information only, this is the order of events taking place during the Regional Database Server database creation. No action is required on the part of the user:

Table 7-6: Order of Events: Regional Database Server Database Creation

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The Regional Database Server database is created: SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive. |
| 2 | The Regional Database Server contacts the SecurePerfectDistributor and Publisher on the Global Database Server. |
| 3 | The Regional database is added to the Subscriber's list at the Publisher and a new 'push' subscription is created. |
| 4 | The Snapshot Agent is started (at the Global Database Server computer). When the agent completes the snapshot of the Global database, the snapshot is applied to the Regional Database Server database. |
| 5 | The Merge Agent is started (at the Global Database Server). This agent, on its initial creation, applies the database snapshot taken by the Snapshot Agent, to the Regional database. A schedule is updated to operate every day, every five minutes, and set to run. As records are added, deleted, or updated on Regional Servers or the Global Database Server, the changes are replicated to all database Subscribers. |
| 6 | A new history merge publication is created on the Global Database Server. The name of the publication will be similar to the following: SPHistoryPublication_<regionalcomputername>: SecurePerfectGlobalHistory. Each Region's history is replicated to the Global Database Server. The Global Database Server receives all history data from the Regions, but it does not redistribute Regional data to another Region. History data is a one-way replication. |
| 7 | A new push subscription is created, a snapshot is started, and the Merge Agent is run. |

Note: For each history publication, there is only one subscription, while the SecurePerfect database publication has multiple subscribers.

6. Refer to [Figure 7-45](#) for a sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager structure. To refresh the view in SQL Enterprise Manager, click **F5**.

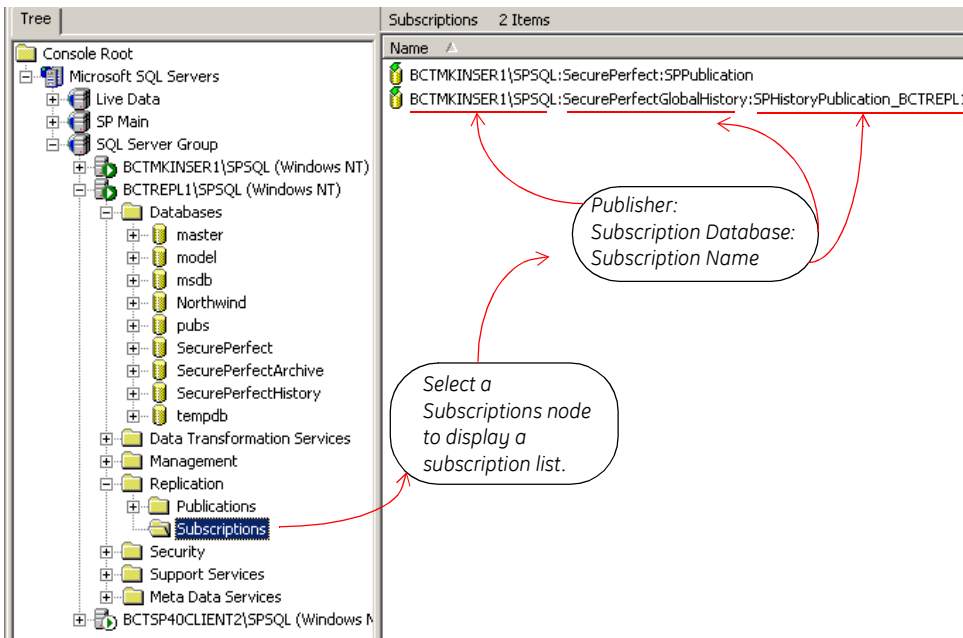


Figure 7-45. Sample Regional SQL Enterprise Manager Structure

7. Continue with [“To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation” on page 7.75](#).

➤ **To resolve errors that may occur during the database creation**

1. A message may display, similar to the following:

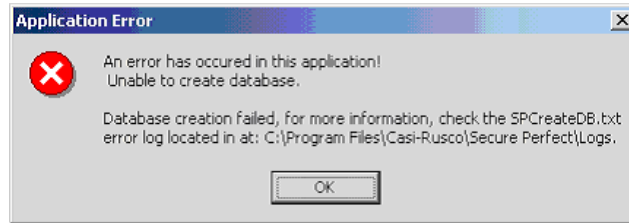


Figure 7-46. Database Creation Error

2. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreatedB.txt error log.

- If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.

***Note:** A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreatedB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.*

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

- If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

➤ **Now, you must install the File Server to a second Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard Server computer:**

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You MUST log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator

to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)

4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer
6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues.
8. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with “[When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:](#)”

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Select Installation Type** window displays as in [Figure 7-47 on page 7.78](#).

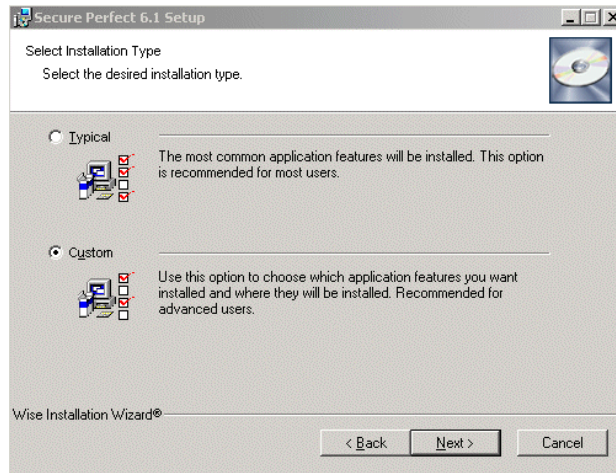


Figure 7-47. Select Installation Type - Custom

3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays.
(This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.)

4. Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.
5. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY File Server**.
6. The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 7-48 on page 7.79](#).



Figure 7-48. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

9. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files and updates the system configuration. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
13. Now, install **ONLY** the Secure Perfect Client Application on a third computer.

► **If the third computer is Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

Follow the steps as listed in [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients”](#) on page 9.1.

► **If you choose to install ONLY the Secure Perfect Client Application component on a third and separate computer with Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Standard operating system:**

***Note:** Prerequisite: Database Server installation and File Server installation already complete.*

1. Verify that the computer you are configuring meets minimum requirements.
2. Install the operating system. DO NOT install Microsoft SQL.
3. You **MUST** log on to the computer as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions. If you are logging onto a domain environment, log off and log on as administrator to the local computer. (If the computer is a domain controller, log on as an administrator to the domain.)
4. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.

5. When Secure Perfect starts, click **Install**. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **Setup.exe**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

6. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.

- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

7. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues.
8. Please wait as Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the **Welcome** window displays. Continue with “[When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:](#)”

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Select the type of installation as **Custom**.

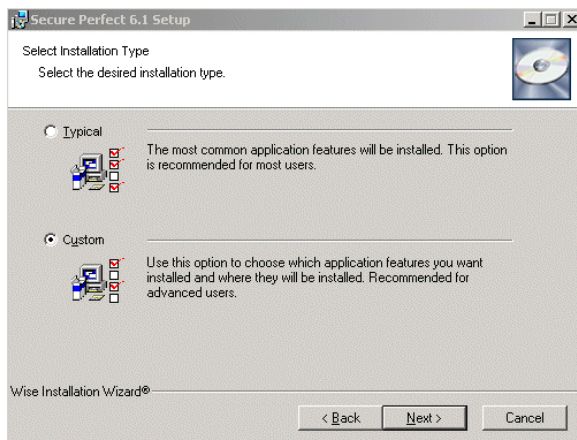


Figure 7-49. Select Installation Type - Custom

4. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays. (This window displays only if this is a domain computer. You **MUST** be part of a domain to continue.)

5. Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.
6. On the **SP Global Custom Configuration** window, select the check box for **ONLY Secure Perfect Client Application**.

Result: A **Database and FileServer Paths** window displays as in [Figure 7-50](#):

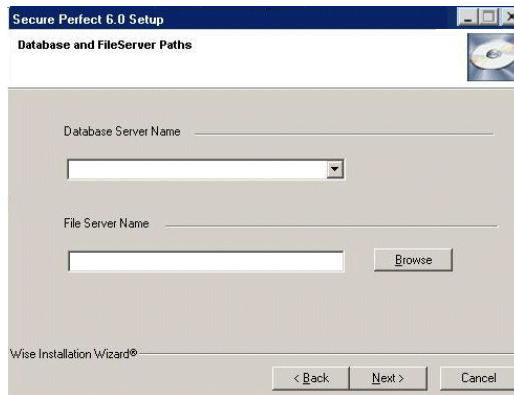


Figure 7-50. Database and File Server Paths

7. If the displayed **Database Server Name** is not correct, select the appropriate name from the drop-down list. If the displayed **File Server Name** is not appropriate, navigate to the File Server computer for this client and select to display in the **File Server Name** dialog box.
8. Click **Next** to display the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window, as in [Figure 7-51 on page 7.84](#).

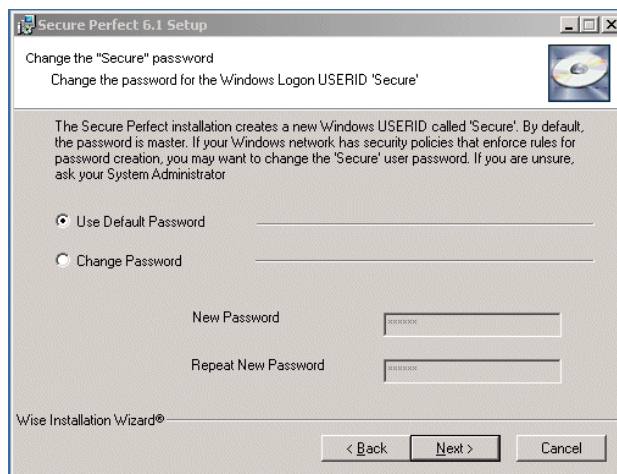


Figure 7-51. Change the 'Secure' Password Window

9. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called *secure*. By default, the password is *master*. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the *secure* user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following on the **Change the 'Secure' Password** window:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

10. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

11. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

12. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

13. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
14. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.
15. Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!						

When Global Custom Configurations are Complete:

Note: Proceed to [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91](#), if you have not already licensed.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
You are here!						

CUSTOM Installation: SP 6.1 Global Edition on a Windows Professional Operating System

Instructions Specific to Windows Professional Operating System Installations

Secure Perfect 6.1 components CANNOT be individually installed on a Windows Professional operating system. However, you MUST select **Custom** as your installation type if you choose one or more of the following options:

- Global Edition features
- Badge Aliasing
- Change the password for the Window logon USERID 'secure.'

➤ **If you chose a Custom installation, follow the instructions below:**

1. Select the type of installation as **Custom** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays as in [Figure 7-52](#). (This window displays only if this computer is part of a domain. You MUST be part of a domain to continue.)

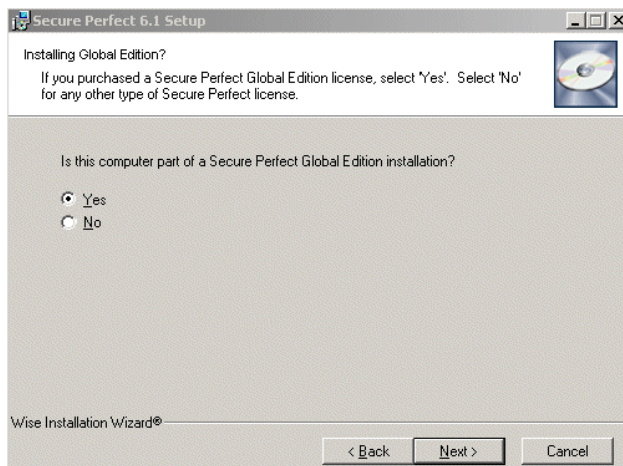


Figure 7-52. Install Global Edition

2. Select **Yes** when asked, **Is this computer part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition Installation**, and click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays, similar to [Figure 7-53](#).

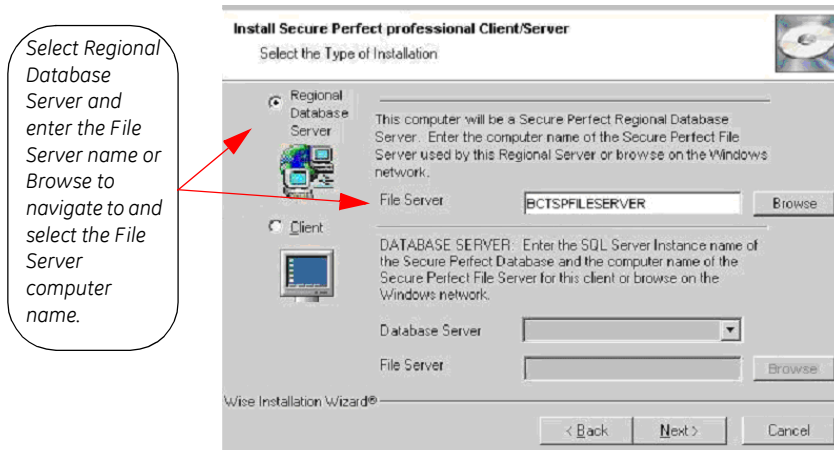


Figure 7-53. Install Client/Server

3. Select **Regional Database Server**. This computer will be the Secure Perfect Regional Database Server.
4. If the **File Server** field does not display the name of the File Server computer used by the Regional Database Server, click **Browse** to navigate the list of Server computers. Select the local computer name to display in the **File Server** field.
5. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Logon Account for SQL Server Services** window displays, similar to [Figure 7-54 on page 7.88](#).

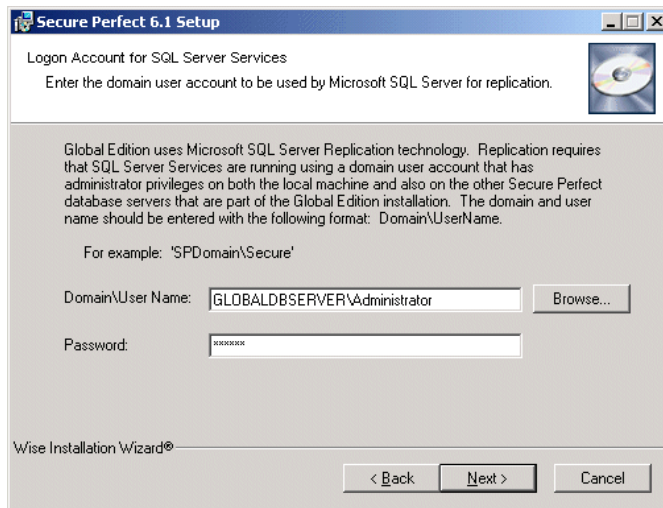


Figure 7-54. Logon Account for SQL Server Services

***Note:** Each Server used in the Secure Perfect Global Edition system requires the database services to run under a domain user name and password account. This account must have administrative privileges to that particular computer. We suggest that you use the identical domain account at each computer used in the GE system.*

6. Enter the user domain and username in the format, **Domain\Username** or click **Browse** to navigate the Windows network and select.
7. Enter the domain user **Password**. The user must have domain administrator privileges for the local machine. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays, as in [Figure 7-55 on page 7.89](#).

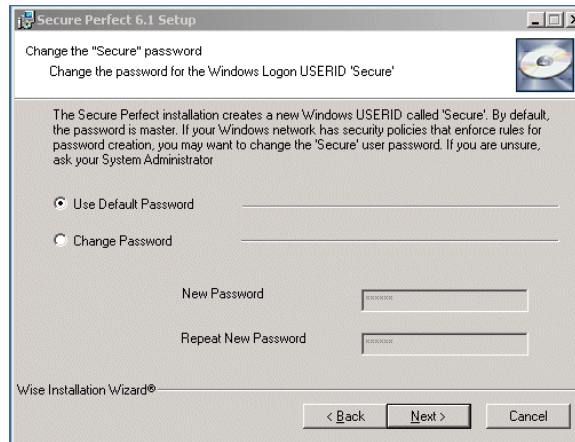


Figure 7-55. Change the Secure Password Window

8. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called `secure`. By default, the password is `master`. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the `secure` user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password** (If you select this option, enter your new password and then enter a second time.)

9. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

10. The default destination folder displays. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
12. At this point, the Secure Perfect installation determines if SPSQL instance of MSDE 2000 and Service Pack 3a needs to be installed.

➤ **Installing MSDE and Service Pack 3a when the required software is not detected on your system:**

1. When the required software is not detected on your system, installation of MSDE and Service Pack 3a continues.
2. When installation of MSDE is complete, the system **automatically** reboots. This takes several minutes.
3. After the reboot, log on as administrator.

Result: The database is created and SQL Server 2000 services are started. A progress bar displays the process. An SQL icon displays in the task bar.

Note: No user interaction is required. Please wait. A log file is created when the Create Database program is run. The log file, called 'SPCreateDB.txt' is found in the Logs folder of Secure Perfect.

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

Note: (If any portion of the Global Edition or MSDE is newly installed, you must set up services for a domain account here.)

➤ **What's next:**

Continue with [“Licensing Your Secure Perfect System” on page 7.91.](#)

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	You are here!					



Licensing Your Secure Perfect System

➤ **To license your Secure Perfect system at this time:**

After obtaining your registered license key as instructed in [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#), follow one of the sequences listed:

- [“First Time License” on page 10.6](#)
- [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 10.8](#)
- [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 10.9](#)
- [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 10.10](#)

Important!

REMINDER: When you have completed a successful licensing sequence, return to this point and continue.

➤ **After a successful licensing sequence, or if you click Cancel to license at another time:**

1. You may receive an **SP 6.1 Installation Complete** dialog box. If so, click **Yes** to reboot your computer.
2. Log on as administrator and continue with [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 7.92](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

***You are
here!***

Setting Services to Automatic Startup

Now, you need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.1 services start. Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2](#), for additional information about Secure Perfect Services.

***Note:** At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.*

➤ **To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays. Expand the list of services and scroll down.

2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.

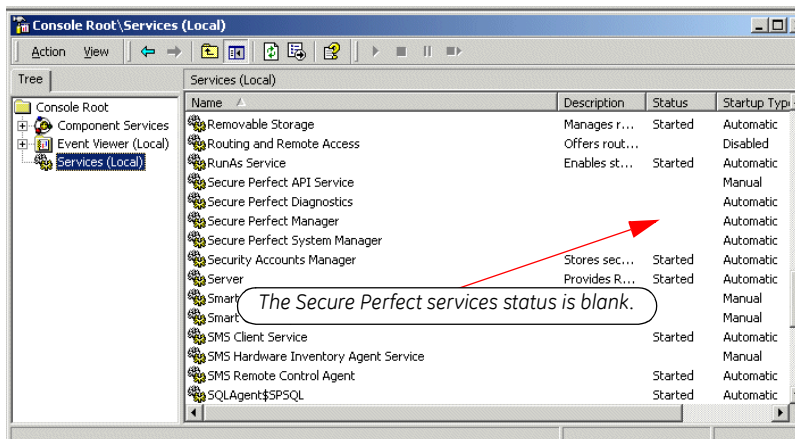


Figure 7-56. Secure Perfect Component Services

3. The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.
 4. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
 5. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
 6. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
 7. Close all windows and applications.
 8. Restart the Secure Perfect Server computer.
- **To start the Secure Perfect API Service:**
- Secure Perfect API Service is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of an Application Program Interface (API) to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.1 and have been previously licensed.
- **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**
1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
 - **Secure Perfect Diagnostic**
 - **Secure Perfect System Manager**
 - **Secure Perfect Manager**
 2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
 3. Exit the window.
 4. Continue with [“Server Folder Structure” on page 7.94](#).

Server Folder Structure

1. During installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software, the following folders are created: Client, Database, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Logs, MSDE2000 (if yours is a Windows Professional system), Rpt, SecureScripts, Signature, and Video.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the \\Program Files/GE Interlogix/ Secure Perfect folder, or to the folder where your Secure Perfect application installed. The folders displayed here vary with the type of installation:
 - If **Typical Server Type** is selected, all folders are present.
 - If **Custom Server Type** is installed:
 - If only **Database Server** feature is selected, Database, Logs, and SecureScripts folders are present.
 - If only **File Server** feature is selected, Client, Designs, English, Externals, Firmware, Graphics, Images, Rpt, Signature, and Video folders are present.
 - The MSDE2000 folder will display only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Server.
3. Some of the folders are shared. (Refer to the example in [Figure 7-57 on page 7.95.](#)) This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, when logged in as an authorized user.

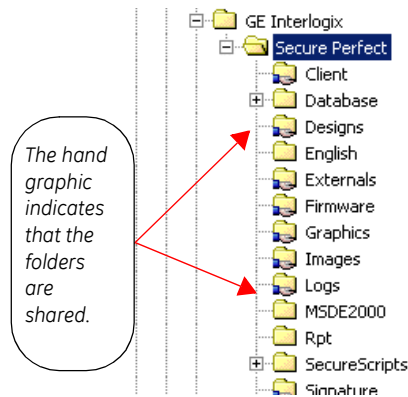


Figure 7-57. Typical Server Folder Structure

Server Folders

- **This is a description of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory:**

Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions. This folder also contain an MSDEAdmin utility, used to access the Secure Perfect databases.

Database

A folder that contains the system database file along with the archive and history database files. SQL Server log files for each database are also found in this folder.

Designs

A shared folder that contains all badge designs used by the imaging stations and sample badge designs.

English

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.1 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

Externals

A shared, empty shared folder created to store reports created by third party report generator.

Firmware

A shared folder that contains the firmware or application code needed to flash the micros.

Graphics

A shared folder that contains maps and icons used for Alarm Graphics.

Images

A shared folder that contains graphics files of captured, badge holder pictures. Sample images are included if you installed the sample database.

Logs

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.1 diagnostic log files.

MSDE2000

This folder displays ONLY following Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Server installation. The user may use these files if re-installation of MSDE is required. These files (Microsoft SQL Desktop Engine (MSDE) with Service Pack 3a) are used by the system during installation of Secure Perfect 6.1.

Replication

This folder is empty if you are not a Global Database Server computer. On a Global Database Server, this shared folder contains a UNC folder that accommodates snapshot data.

Rpt

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

SecureScripts

The scripts and programs used to create the database in SQL Server. It also contains subfolders required for converting and upgrading Secure Perfect systems to Secure Perfect 6.1.

Signature

A shared folder that contains the graphic files of captured signatures.

Video

An empty shared folder created to store video files and JPG image files grabbed from video windows.

Review the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, and continue with [“Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts”](#).

Secure Perfect 6.1 User Accounts

Default local group is SPAdmin. Default local user name is secure and the password is master.

1. During the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer installation, a default Secure Perfect 6.1 local user account was set up for you. If you choose to add users and assign or change user passwords, refer to [“Defining User Accounts” on page 2.6](#).
2. Refer to documentation you received when you purchased your Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or Windows XP operating system, for additional information on setting up a user and assigning passwords.

Adding a New Global Group to the Domain

- To add a new Global group to each computer in the domain that is going to run Secure Perfect:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Computer Management**.
2. Expand **Local User and Groups**, then **Groups**.
3. Select and then right-click **SPAdmin** from the list of Groups displayed.
4. Select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
5. Click **Add** and **Look in** Active Directory. Locate and add **Secure Perfect Users**.
6. Click **Add** and then click **OK**.

Result: Your windowpane should display similar to Figure 7-58 on page 7.98. On the domain, you created a new Global group entitled ‘Secure Perfect Users.’ You then added Administrators as members of that

group. Since the group is Global, any users added to the Secure Perfect Users group at the Active Directory will have permission to start the Secure Perfect program.

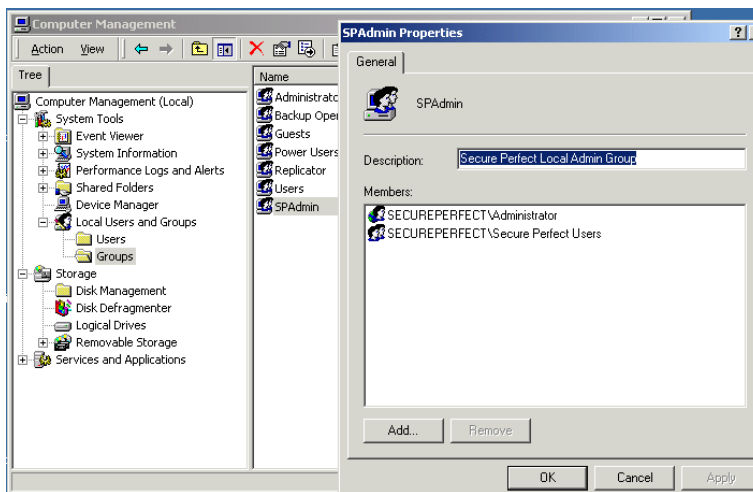


Figure 7-58. SPAdmin Properties Window

Note: Now, any members added to the ‘Secure Perfect Users’ group at the Domain Controller, Active Directory, will have permission to start Secure Perfect at all Secure Perfect system computers.

Verify that the user who is logging on to the computer where Secure Perfect is running, is part of the SPAdmin group on the Domain, Active Directory.

REMINDER: You have just completed installation of the Regional Database Server. NOW, continue with [“Configuring File Replication and Global Edition Options” on page 8.1.](#)



What's Next?

1. If you have not already done so, remove the Secure Perfect installation CD from your CD-ROM drive. You have completed the Global setup.
2. If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1.](#)
3. Proceed to set up the additional client computers on your Secure Perfect system. Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients” on page 9.1.](#)

Note: Following configuration of each new client installation, all currently installed Secure Perfect Global Edition Server computers and client computers must be rebooted in order to be recognized.


Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure DFS	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
						You are here!

What's Next?

NOTES:

Chapter 8: Configuring File Replication and Global Edition Options

NOTE: This chapter uses the following graphic in major headings to indicate Global Edition instructions. 

This chapter includes instructions for Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition configuration for file replication: optional configurations such as convert, backup, and restore of a Global Edition database; and uninstalling a Global Edition system. We recommend that you review the entire chapter and discuss with your IT Department before you begin your configuration.



In this chapter:

["Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft Directory File Services" on page 8.2](#)

["Converting a Secure Perfect Stand-Alone Database to a Global Edition Database" on page 8.13](#)

["Upgrading a Global Edition Global Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1" on page 8.16](#)

["Upgrading a Global Edition Regional Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1" on page 8.26](#)

["Backup of Global Edition Databases" on page 8.35](#)

["Restoring Global Edition Databases" on page 8.36](#)

["Adding Additional Clients to the Database" on page 8.38](#)

["Uninstalling a Global Edition System" on page 8.42](#)

["What's Next?" on page 8.44](#)

Configuring File Replication Using Microsoft Directory File Services

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure File Replication	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	----------------------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

**You are
here!**

REMINDER: At this point, you should have configured the Secure Perfect Global Database Server, all Regional Database Servers, and all client computers to specific Servers.

The next step is configuring for file replication at the Global Database Server computer. There is a global database at the Global Server, and a database at each of the Regional Servers. SQL Server 2000 Replication services are used to distribute the data from the Global Server to each of the Regional Servers. File Replication for Secure Perfect shared directories is accomplished using Microsoft Active Directory® in combination with Microsoft Directory File Services®.

This section includes instructions to configure your system for file replication at the Global Database Server:

1. [“Creating Dfs Root” on page 8.3](#)
2. [“Creating a New Dfs Link” on page 8.8](#)
3. [“Creating a New Replica” on page 8.11](#)

Note: The following instructions use examples of Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server. The properties and windows deviate somewhat in Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server.

➤ **Before attempting to set up File Replication:**

- A domain controller does not require a Secure Perfect system installed to host File Replication services.
- Distributed File System file replication can only be created on a domain controller computer.
- Verify that all Secure Perfect shared folders on each Server computer intended for participation in replication have **SPAdmin** permission and Domain **Administrator** permissions. Those folders include:

Client
Designs
Externals
Firmware
Graphics
Images
Signature
Video

- Verify that the Secure Perfect share folders exist on all Secure Perfect Server computers that will be hosting File Replication.

1. Creating Dfs Root

The Domain Distributed File System provides file replication to the Secure Perfect shared folders called Dfs Root replicas.

➤ **To create Distributed File System Root:**

1. Select **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, and then **Distributed File System**.

Result: The **Distributed File System** snap-in displays as shown in the folder structure in [Figure 8-1 on page 8.4](#).

- The Distributed File System structure should look similar to [Figure 8-1](#).

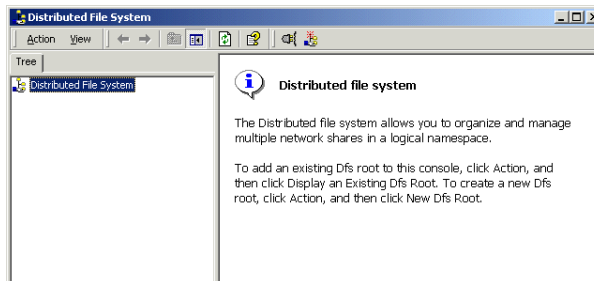


Figure 8-1. Distributed Files System Snap-in

2. Select **Distributed File System** and then click **Action** to display a shortcut menu. Select **New Dfs Root** from the shortcut menu.

Result: The **New Dfs Root Wizard** window displays.

3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Select the Dfs Root Type** window displays, as in [Figure 8-2](#).

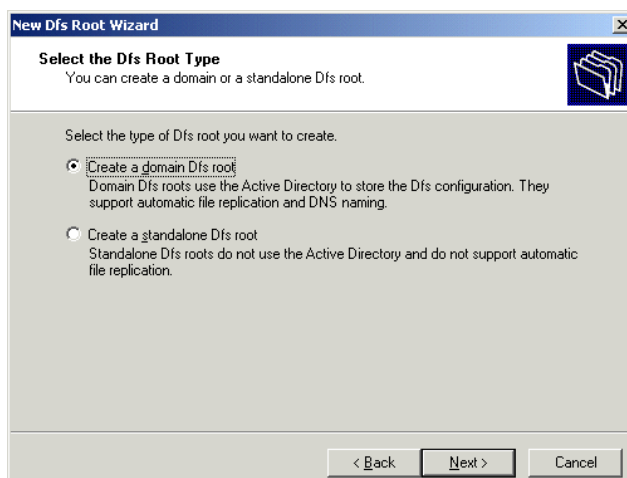


Figure 8-2. Dfs Root Type

4. Select **Create a domain Dfs root** option and click **Next**.

Result: The **Select the Host Domain for the Dfs Root** window opens with the **Domain name** displaying in the dialog box, similar to [Figure 8-3](#).

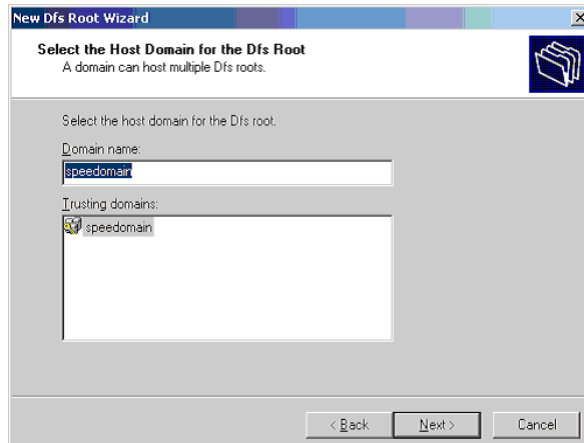


Figure 8-3. Select the Host Domain for the Dfs Root

5. Verify that the **Domain name** is accurate. A domain can host multiple Dfs roots. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Specify the Host Server for the Dfs Root** window opens.

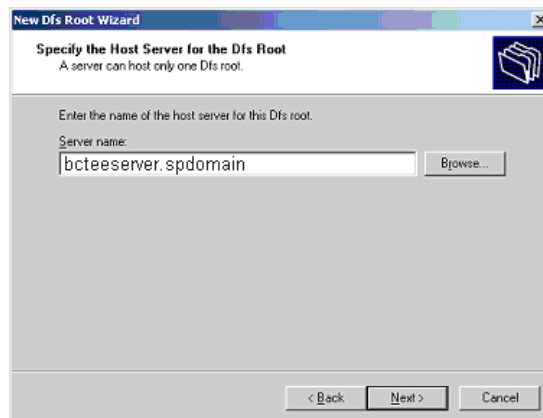


Figure 8-4. Specify the Host Server for the Dfs Root

6. Enter the host Server computer name in the **Server name** dialog box or click **Browse** to navigate to the correct Server computer. The Server computer that you select must have Secure Perfect installed before configuring for file replication.
7. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Specify the Dfs Root Share** window displays, as in [Figure 8-5](#).

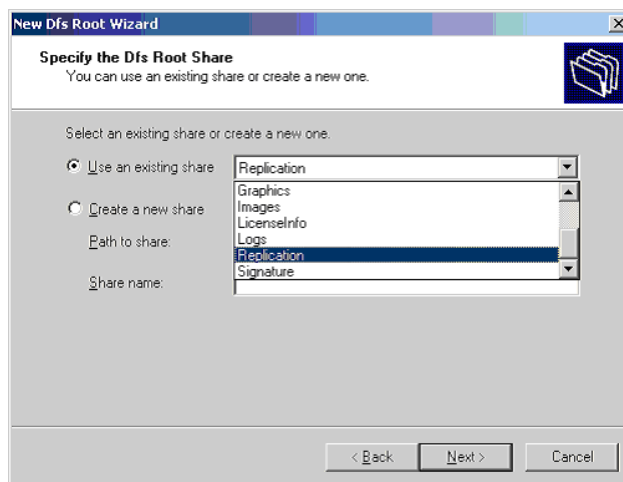


Figure 8-5. Specify the Dfs Root Share

8. Select **Use an existing share**. From the drop-down list of shared folders, select **Replication**, and click **Next**.

Note: If the **Replication** folder is not in the drop-down list, then Secure Perfect was not installed correctly on the referenced host Server computer. Click **Cancel**, reinstall Secure Perfect on the Server computer, and begin the process of creating a Domain Dfs root, as in [Step 1. on page 8.3](#).

Result: The **Name the Dfs Root** window opens with the default folder **Replication** displayed.

9. On the **Name the Dfs Root** window:

- Do not change the **Dfs root name** as displayed.
- Enter `Secure Perfect Replication Share` in the **Comment** dialog box.
- Click **Next**.

Result: The **Completing the New Dfs Root Wizard** window displays all settings as configured.

10. Review the settings. If you need to change an entry due to discrepancies, click **Back** to return to the appropriate window and correct the incorrect entry; or you can click **Cancel** to exit the Wizard and begin the process again. Your settings should look similar to [Figure 8-6](#).

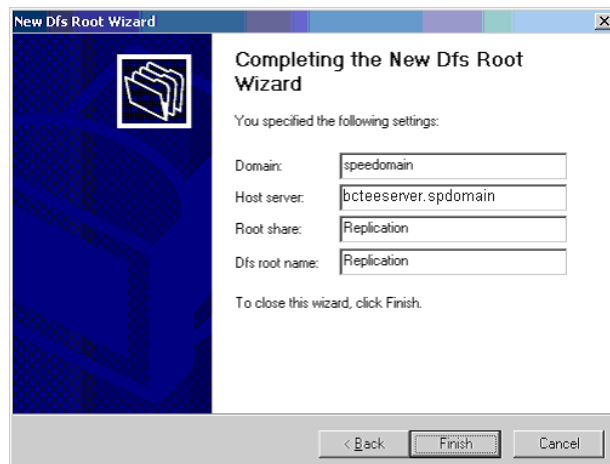


Figure 8-6. Completing the New Dfs Root Wizard

11. When all settings are accurate, click **Finish** to close the Wizard.
12. The Distributed File System snap-in displays similar to [Figure 8-7 on page 8.8](#).

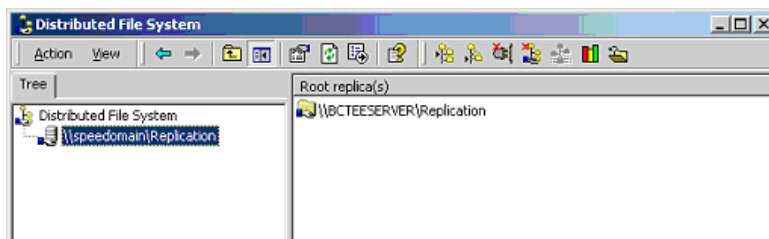


Figure 8-7. Distributed File System Snap-In with the Replication Dfs Root

2. Creating a New Dfs Link

The actual configuration of file shares takes place when you create the Dfs links.

***Note:** Complete this section for each Secure Perfect file share to be created.*

► To create the Dfs link:

1. Right-click the Distributed File System Snap-in to display a shortcut menu as displayed in [Figure 8-8](#).

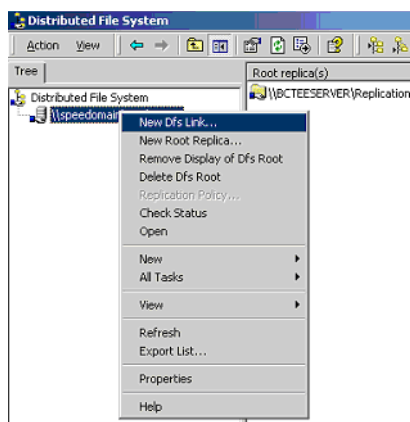


Figure 8-8. Distributed File System Snap-In Shortcut Menu

2. Select **New Dfs Link**.

Result: The **Create a New Dfs Link** window displays similar to [Figure 8-9](#).

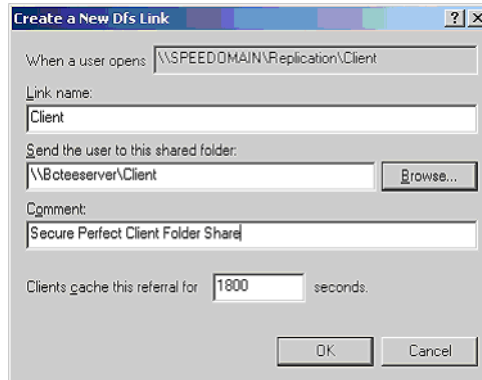


Figure 8-9. Create a New Dfs Link

3. In the **Create a New Dfs Link** window:

- Enter one of the Secure Perfect shared folder names as the Secure Perfect **Link Name** folder to replicate.
- Enter the path or click **Browse** to navigate to the appropriate share folder on the same computer that has the Replication share configured in [“Creating Dfs Root” on page 8.3](#).
- Enter the name of the appropriate Secure Perfect shared folder name in the **Comment** dialog box, such as Secure Perfect xxxx Folder Share (where xxxx is the name of the folder).
- Leave the default ‘xxxx cache this referral for 1800 seconds.’
- Click **OK**.

Result: The Distributed File System snap-in with Replication displays similar to [Figure 8-10 on page 8.10](#), after the first folder Dfs link is created.

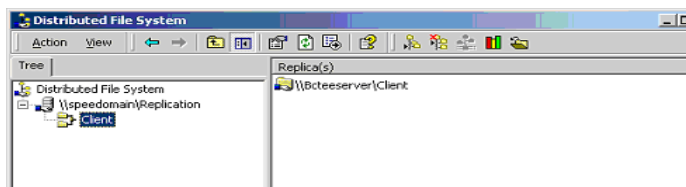


Figure 8-10. Distributed File System Snap-In with Replication Dfs Root and First Client Dfs Link

- Now, the other file shares can be added as replicas to the main Dfs link. Repeat [Step 2.](#) and [Step 3. on page 8.9](#) for all shares:

Client
Designs
Externals
Firmware
Graphics
Images
Signatures
Video

Result: When complete, your window displays similar to [Figure 8-11.](#)

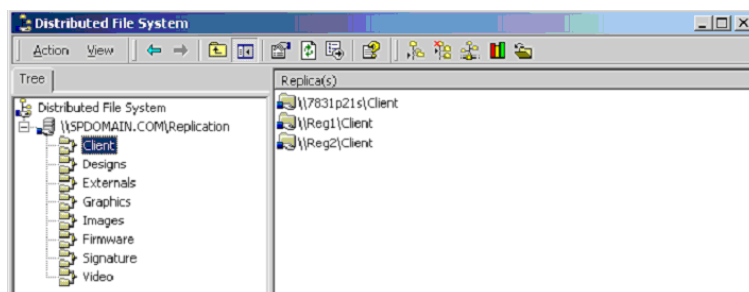


Figure 8-11. Distributed File System Snap-In with Replication Dfs Root and Three Client Dfs Links

3. Creating a New Replica

As many replicas as necessary can be created for a single folder share. Follow the procedures below for each additional Secure Perfect Server computer that will act as a file replication share.

1. Right-click the Dfs link to display the shortcut menu and select **New Replica**.

Result: The **Add a New Replica** window displays.

2. On the **Add a New Replica** window:
 - In the **Send the user to this shared folder:** field, enter an alternate Server computer name (this computer must have Secure Perfect installed) or click **Browse** to navigate to an alternate Server computer. At this point, your windows should look similar to [Figure 8-12](#).

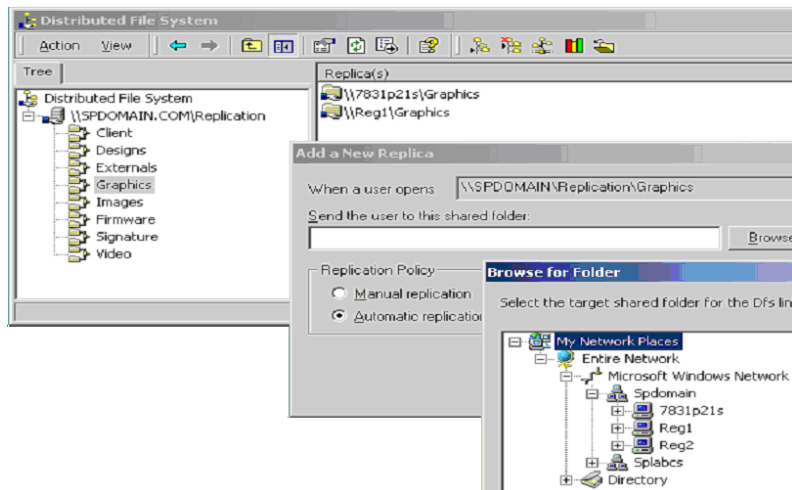


Figure 8-12. Adding a New Replica

- From the **Replication Policy** options, select **Automatic replication**, if not already selected.

- Click **OK**.

Result: At this time, because at least two shared folders exist, the **Replication Policy** window displays as in [Figure 8-13](#).

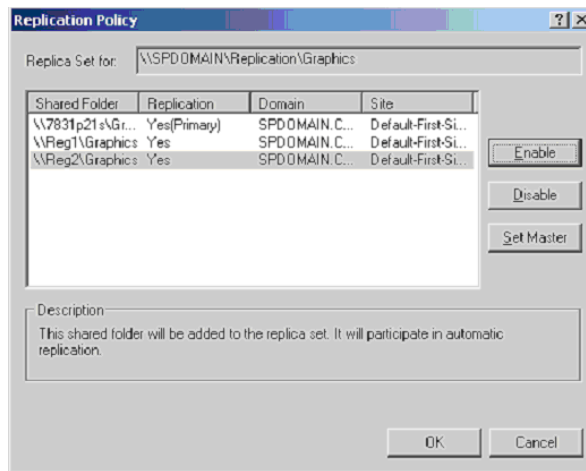


Figure 8-13. Replication Policy

Note: If you have additional replicas (shares) to add to this particular folder (in this example, the folder is **Graphics**), return to [“Creating a New Replica” on page 8.11](#).

Reminder: Repeat instructions for each additional replica.

3. To return later to the **Replication Policy** wizard, right-click the Dfs link to display the shortcut menu and select **Replication Policy**.
4. In the **Replication Policy** window:
 - Select the **Shared Folder** that contains the primary Dfs link.
 - Click **Set Master**.
 - Select the next **Shared Folder** and click **Enable**.
 - Select all additional **Shared Folders** and click **Enable**.

- When the Master is set and all shared folders are enabled, click **OK**.

Result: The Distributed File System Snap-in displays similar to [Figure 8-14](#).

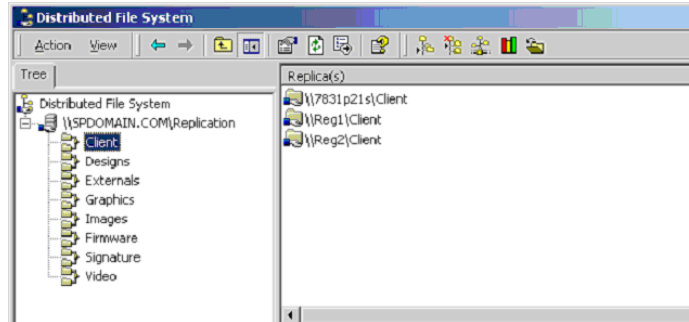


Figure 8-14. Distributed File System Snap-In with Shared Folders Added and Enabled for Replication Services

5. Repeat instructions for each additional replica. [Figure 8-14](#) displays only one of the shared folders, **Client**.

Note: Your Secure Perfect Global Edition system is now configured for file replication. File Replication to process added, revised, or deleted files can take from five minutes to approximately one hour.

Converting a Secure Perfect Stand-Alone Database to a Global Edition Database

Note: Converting a database to a Regional Server is not allowed.

- **An existing Secure Perfect database can only be converted to a Global Database Server. If you are creating or converting a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence:**
 1. Navigate to the Secure Perfect directory of your computer and double-click SPCreateDB.exe.

OR

From the **Start** menu, click **Start, Programs**, then **Secure Perfect**. The Secure Perfect menu displays. Select **Create SP Database**.

Result: A window displays, as in [Figure 8-15](#).

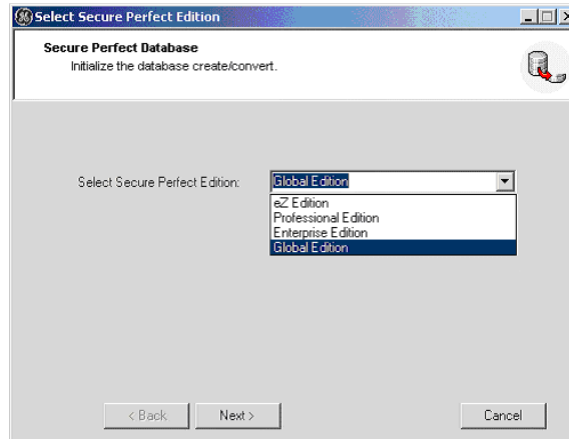


Figure 8-15. Create SP Database - Select Secure Perfect Edition

2. Select Global Edition as the appropriate Secure Perfect software Edition installed on your computer from the drop-down list, and click **Next** to proceed with converting your database.

Result: The **Create/Convert Database** login information window displays.

3. Enter the applicable administrator **Username** and **Password**.
4. Click **Create/Convert Database**.

Result: The message **Do you wish to convert to the current version of Secure Perfect Database?** displays.

5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays.

6. A message dialog may display asking if you want this computer to be your Global Server. Click **Yes** to proceed.

7. Click **Convert Database**.

Result: A status bar displays the progress of the conversion.

8. If errors occurred during the database creation, a message may display, similar to the following:

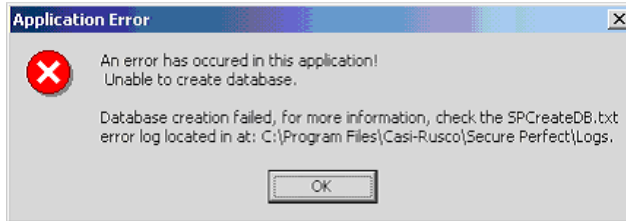


Figure 8-16. Database Creation Error

9. Click **OK**.

Note: A log file 'SPCreateDB.txt' is created when the Create/Convert Database program is run. The log files are found in the Secure Perfect/Logs folder.

The Integrity utility runs automatically, following a database creation. No user interaction is required. Refer to your Secure Perfect Online Help for addition information about the Integrity utility.

10. Correct any installation configuration problems by reviewing the SPCreatedB.txt error log.

- If you were able to resolve the problem, recreate the database.
- If you continue to have a problem, contact GE Customer Support.

Result: Upon completion, a message displays, **Secure Perfect Database successfully converted**.

11. Click **OK**.

Result: The dialog box closes.

Upgrading a Global Edition Global Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1

This scenario assumes that your SP 6.1 Global Edition Server database will be using the same computer as your existing SP 6.0 Global Edition Server database.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using the same computer:**

[“Before You Begin” on page 8.16](#)

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 8.17\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on the SP 6.0 Global Database Server Computer \(page 8.17\)](#)
3. [Back Up Entire Secure Perfect Folder \(page 8.18\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 8.18\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 8.18\)](#)
6. [Install Secure Perfect 6.1 \(page 8.20\)](#)
7. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 8.24\)](#)
8. [Upgrade Regional Database Server Computers \(page 8.25\)](#)
9. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 8.25\)](#)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All Regional Database Servers and all clients to the Database Server computers are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the exact case used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on the SP 6.0 Global Database Server Computer

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 6.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP Global 6.0 computers.

► To stop services on the 6.0 Server computer and all clients:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three Secure Perfect services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

3. If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped. Skip to [Step 5](#).

If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

4. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.

5. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
6. Exit the **Services** application.

3. Back Up Entire Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder EXCEPT the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Databases using the Backup Utility or Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager.**

4. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Refer to [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#).

Note: Your backup should include the following Secure Perfect databases:

master
msdb
SecurePerfect
SecurePerfectArchive
SecurePerfectHistory
SecurePerfectDistributor
SecurePerfectGlobalHistory

5. OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard

On your SP 6.0 Global Edition Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

➤ **To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.

Result: The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.

9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.
13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** window. Click **Next**.

17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** window. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** window displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.
20. If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the databases would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. “[Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Global Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager](#)” on page 8.18.

6. Install Secure Perfect 6.1

***Note:** During the installation, the conversion of databases can be reduced if an archive is performed at each Region within the 24-hour time period before a database conversion takes place.*

► To install the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in [Chapter 6 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Global Database Server](#). Review the list of exceptions below in [Step 3](#).
 - If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
 - Secure Perfect 6.0 is automatically uninstalled.
3. The ‘Create SP Database’ utility automatically launches. If the conversion program does not launch, click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 8-17 on page 8.21](#).

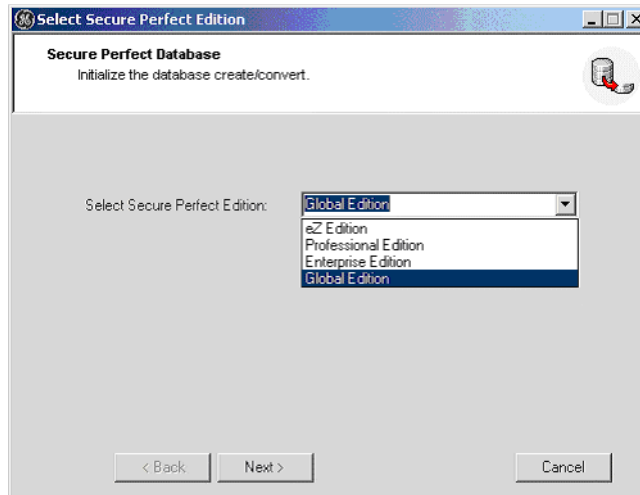


Figure 8-17. Create SP Database - Global Edition

4. Select Global Edition from the drop-down list and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Result: The **Select Database Server Type** window displays as in [Figure 8-18](#).

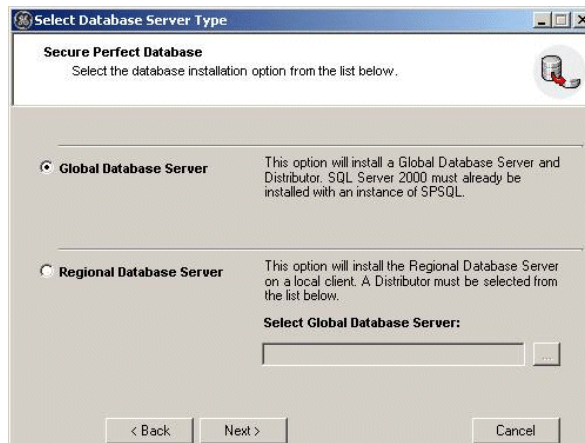


Figure 8-18. Select Database Server Type

5. Select **Global Database Server** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Create/Convert Database** window displays.

6. Enter the SQL Server administrator username and password and click **Next**.

Result: A message displays as in [Figure 8-19](#)

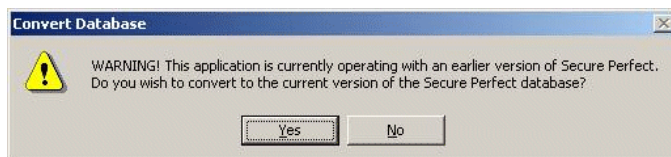


Figure 8-19. Convert Database Warning Dialog

7. Click **Yes** to indicate that you want to convert your database.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays.

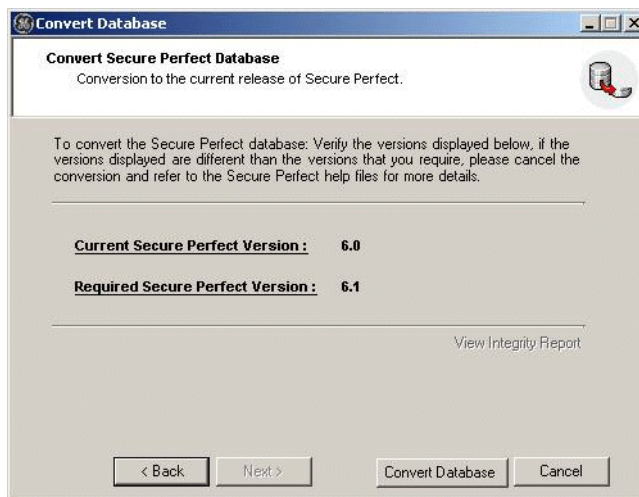


Figure 8-20. Convert Secure Perfect Database Window

8. Verify that the window displays the current and required versions of Secure Perfect software. Click **Convert Database**.

Result: A Regional Database Status window displays as in [Figure 8-21](#).

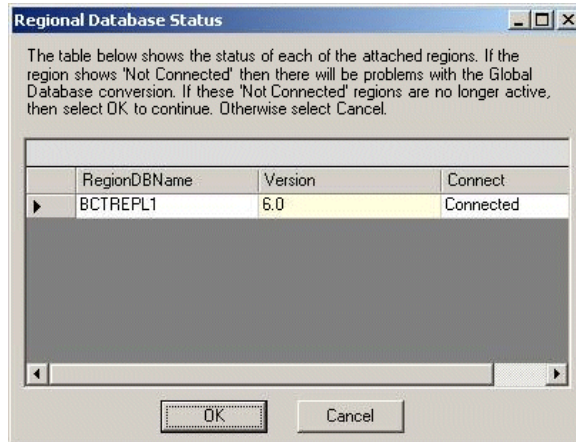


Figure 8-21. Regional Database Status

9. Review the status list and verify that all Regional Database Server computers on your Global Edition system are connected and click **OK**.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays as the conversion progress begins. A status bar displays the progress. Please wait. This may take some time. As the size of the database increases and the number of Regions increase, the time for conversion increases as well.

10. When the database conversion from SP 6.0 to 6.1 is complete, the Regional databases have new tables, columns, and triggers. (The Regional Database Server database has SP 6.0 stored procedures. You will convert the Regional Database later.)
11. The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

7. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

► **Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [8. “Upgrade Regional Database Server Computers” on page 8.25.](#)
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).OR
 - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps [5](#) through [8](#).
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

8. Upgrade Regional Database Server Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Global Database Server computer, you will need to upgrade all Regional Database Server computers. Refer to [“Upgrading a Global Edition Regional Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1” on page 8.26](#).

9. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

Note: *We do not recommend that you connect micros to the Global Database Server computer.*

SP 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 6.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after

the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.

Upgrading a Global Edition Regional Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1

This scenario assumes that your SP 6.1 Global Edition Regional Database Server database will be using the same computer as your existing SP 6.0 Global Edition Regional Database Server database.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using the same computer:**

[“Before You Begin” on page 8.27](#)

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 8.27\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on the SP 6.0 Regional Database Server Computer \(page 8.27\)](#)
3. [Back Up Entire Secure Perfect Folder \(page 8.28\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Regional Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 8.28\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 8.29\)](#)
6. [Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System \(page 8.30\)](#)
7. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 8.33\)](#)

8. [Upgrade Additional Client Computers to Each Regional Database Server Computer \(page 8.35\)](#)
9. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 8.35\)](#)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All Regional Database Servers and all clients to the Regional Database Server computers are logged off and client services are stopped at the Region.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed at the Region.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the exact case used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on the SP 6.0 Regional Database Server Computer

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 6.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 6.0 Regional Database Server computers.

➤ To stop services on the 6.0 Server computer and all clients:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics

Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

3. If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped. Skip to [Step 5](#).

If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

4. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.

5. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
6. Exit the **Services** application.

3. Back Up Entire Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder EXCEPT the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility or Microsoft Enterprise Manager. Verify that your backups work correctly.**

4. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Regional Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Refer to [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#).

Note: Your backup should include the following Secure Perfect databases:

master
msdb

SecurePerfect
SecurePerfectArchive
SecurePerfectHistory

5. OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard

On your SP 6.0 Regional Database Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct any suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

► **To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.

Result: The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.

9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.

13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** window. Click **Next**.
17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** window. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** window displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.
20. If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the database files would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. [“Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Regional Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 8.28.

6. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System

➤ To install the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in Chapter 7: “Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition: Regional Database Server” on page 7.1. Review the exceptions in [Step 3](#).
 - If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
 - When the message **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** displays, click **OK**.

3. The 'Create SP Database' utility automatically launches. If the conversion program does not launch, click **Start**, **Programs**, **Secure Perfect**, and then **Create SP Database**.

Result: A **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays, as in [Figure 8-22](#).

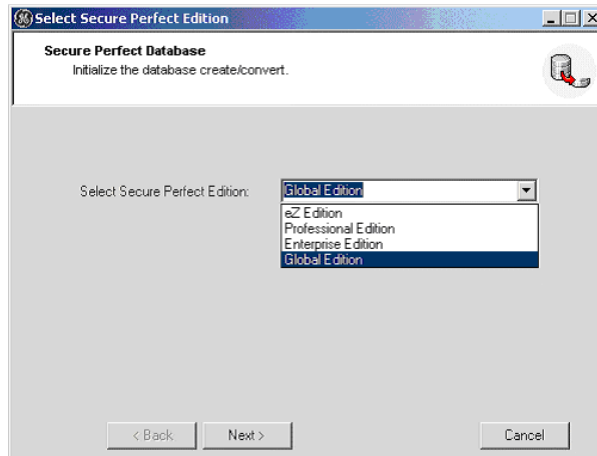


Figure 8-22. Create SP Database - Global Edition

4. Select **Global Edition** from the drop-down list and click **Next** to proceed with creating a database.

Result: The **Select Database Server Type** window displays as in [Figure 8-23 on page 8.32](#).

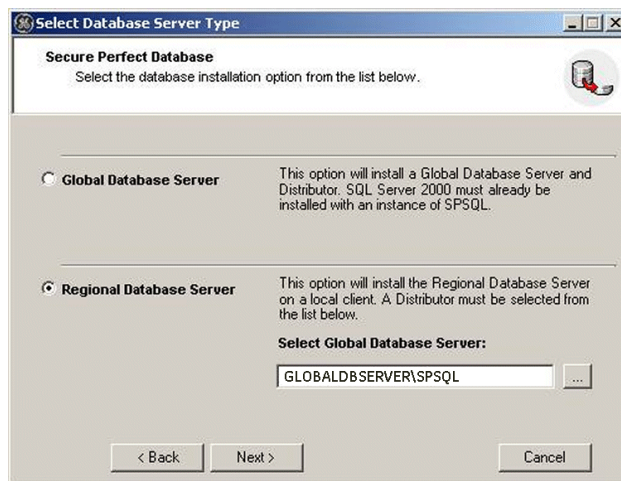



Figure 8-23. Select Database Server Type

5. Select **Regional Database Server** and enter the name of the Global Database Server and SQL instance. Click  to browse on the network domain for the appropriate Server. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Create/Convert Database** window displays.

6. Enter the SQL Server administrator username and password for the Regional Database Server and the Global Database Server. Click **Next**.

Result: A message displays as in [Figure 8-24](#).

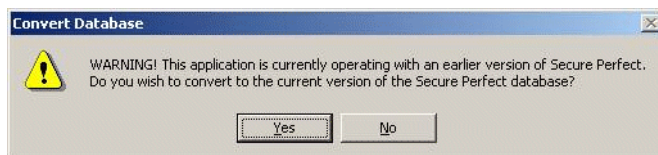


Figure 8-24. Convert Database Warning Dialog

7. Click **Yes** to indicate that you want to convert your database.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays.

8. Verify that the window displays the current and required versions of Secure Perfect software. If the versions displayed are different than the versions that you require, select the required versions from the drop-down lists. Click **Convert Database**.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays as the conversion progress begins. A status bar displays the progress. Please wait. This may take some time.

9. When the database conversion from SP 6.0 to 6.1 is complete, the Regional databases have been converted.
10. The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

7. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

► Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to step 8. [“Upgrade Additional Client Computers to Each Regional Database Server Computer”](#) on page 8.35.
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

- Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.

4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

8. Upgrade Additional Client Computers to Each Regional Database Server Computer

Now that you have upgraded your Regional Database Server computer, you need to upgrade all client computers. Once you have finished upgrading your client computers, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

9. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

SP 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 6.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.



Backup of Global Edition Databases

Note: The following information is an overview of processes for database backup. For additional information, refer to *Microsoft SQL Books Online*.

Remember to back up databases often.

Backing Up the Global Server Databases

Backups should be performed as instructed in [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#).

Note: In addition to the *SecurePerfect*, *SecurePerfectHistory*, and *SecurePerfectArchive* database, the Global Server has the

SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database. Depending on the timing of the backup, the SecurePerfectGlobalHistory database may contain little or nothing. It is advisable to perform a backup on all four databases.

Backing Up the Regional Server Databases

Backups should be performed as instructed, depending on the operating system you are backing up:

1. [Chapter 13 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server](#)
- OR
2. [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#)



Restoring Global Edition Databases

Note: *The following information is an overview of processes for restoring to a single computer; of the same database. For additional information, refer to Microsoft SQL Books Online.*

It is advisable to restore only one region at a time, including the Global Database Server. Do not restore two or more regions or a region and a Global Database Server system at the same time.

Restoring at the Global Database Server

SecurePerfectHistory:

Restore as instructed in [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#).

- If the history database needs to be restored, any data that was inserted into the history database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the other Regional databases.
- The time that this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.
- If the backup is more than 14 days old, or the data from different regions has already been archived, the history will not synchronize

all data. The data will still be in the Regional Server's history or archive databases.

SecurePerfectArchive:

Restore as instructed in [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#). This database does not directly participate in replication.

SecurePerfect:

Restore as instructed in [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#).

- Data that was inserted into the database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the other Regional databases.
- The time this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.

Restoring at the Regional Database Server

SecurePerfectHistory:

Restore as instructed in [Chapter 13 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server](#) or “[Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#)” on page 14.1.

- If the history database needs to be restored, any data that was inserted into the history database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the other Regional databases.
- The time that this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.
- Restoring a backup database that is older than the most recent archive may cause duplicate data to be inserted at the Global Server.

SecurePerfectArchive:

Restore as instructed in [Chapter 13 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server](#) or [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#). This database does not directly participate in replication.

SecurePerfect:

Restore as instructed in [Chapter 13 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server](#) or [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#).

- Data that was inserted into the database between the time the backup was processed and the time of the restore, will need to be resynchronized with the Global and Regional databases.
- The time this process of synchronization takes to complete is dependent on the amount of data needed to be synchronized.



Adding Additional Clients to the Database

Pinging Additional Client Computers

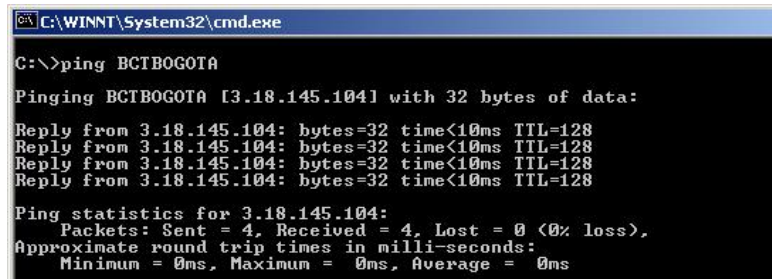
In order to add an additional client computer in the database, you must verify that the computer can be reached by name.

➤ **To reach the client computer:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

Result: A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <name>` where `<name>` is the name of the client computer. Press **Enter**.



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping BCTBOGOTA

Pinging BCTBOGOTA [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:

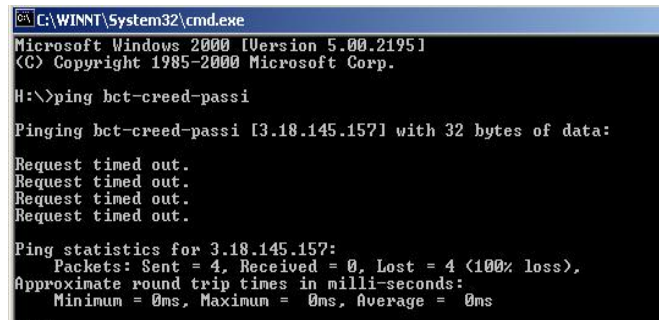
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms
  
```

Figure 8-25. Successful Ping to Client Computer

Result: A successful ping reveals the client computer address was reached. Your window will display similar to [Figure 8-25](#). Proceed to add the clients to the database. Refer to [“Adding Clients to the Database”](#) on page 8.40.

OR



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping bct-creed-passi

Pinging bct-creed-passi [3.18.145.157] with 32 bytes of data:

Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.157:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms
  
```

Figure 8-26. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer

Result: If the client computer could not be reached, your window will display similar to [Figure 8-26](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup ([“Preparing the Operating System”](#) on page 3.6 for an Windows 2000 Standard Server or [“Preparing the Operating System”](#) on page 2.4 for a Professional Server) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

Note: You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved. Contact your network administrator.

4. Continue with [“Adding Clients to the Database”](#).

Adding Clients to the Database

You need to add all client computers to your Secure Perfect database that will be in your Secure Perfect system. To do this, log on and start the Secure Perfect 6.1 application.

➤ **To add clients to the Secure Perfect 6.1 database:**

1. When you have installed and licensed the Secure Perfect application for the first time (this is the First Time License computer), start the Secure Perfect 6.1 application by double-clicking the Secure Perfect desktop icon.
 - **Typical Installation:** The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
 - **Custom Installation:** The components required to license may be stored on two separate computers:
 - The File Server stores the LicenseInfo file.
 - The First Time License computer stores the Component Services files.

You must be able to reach the computer(s) for both sources.

2. From the **File** menu, select **Login**.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure File Replication	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
----------------	------------------------	---------------------	----------------------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------

*You are
here!*

3. Log on as `secure` with a password of `master`.
4. If client computers have Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional installed and if they are on the network, you can access the Client Form in the Secure Perfect application, and proceed with adding clients to the database.


Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure File Replication	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
					You are here!	


► **To access the Client Form:**

1. Select **Client** from the **Administration** menu.

Result: A new client form is displayed.

2. Click **Add**  from the Secure Perfect main menu.
3. Enter data describing your new client. Refer to Online Help for details of each individual field.

Note: *If a client computer is currently offline or connected to the network by a gateway or hub, you may not see that computer. You may need to correct network issues with the client computer before proceeding. You may also see computers that cannot be clients since they do not use TCP/IP protocols.*

4. Click **Save** .
5. Repeat [Step 2. on page 8.41](#), through [Step 4. on page 8.41](#), for all clients.
6. You can add as many clients as you want. However, only the licensed maximum number can connect to the server at the same time. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 10.12](#).

Uninstalling a Global Edition System

The sequence of uninstalling a Secure Perfect Global Edition system is a reverse of the installation and enabling process. The following instructions assume an un-install of all computers in a Global Edition system.

***Note:** If you are removing a single Region, call GE Customer Support.*

➤ **To uninstall Secure Perfect Global Edition:**

1. Log off Secure Perfect clients.
2. Close all Secure Perfect applications such as DiagView.
3. You **MUST** be logged in as administrator user to the domain. If not, log off and log back on as a user with administrator permissions.
4. Stop all Secure Perfect services. (Secure Perfect Manager, Secure Perfect System Manager, and Secure Perfect Diagnostics). Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2](#).
5. **OPTIONAL:** If you choose, do a backup of your databases. Refer to [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#). Complete your backups as instructed.
6. **OPTIONAL:** To disable Dfs services at the Global Database Server computer, refer to the following. All shared files will remain unless manually removed.
 - Click **Start, Programs, Administrative Tools**, then **Distributed File System**.
 - Locate and expand the Secure Perfect Dfs Root to display all Replicas.
 - Select a Replica and right-click to display the shortcut menu and select **Replication Policy**.
 - When the **Replication Policy** window opens, select a shared folder and click **Disable**.
 - Continue until all shared folders of this Replica are disabled.
 - Exit the **Replication Policy** window.

- Repeat this process for all Replicas and all shared folders.
 - Exit the **Distributed File System** window.
7. To disable Publishing at the Global Database Server:
 - Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
 - Select the SQL Global Server.
 - Select **Tools, Replication, then Disable Publishing**.
 - From the **Disable Publishing and Distribution Wizard**, select **Yes** to Disable Publishing.
 - Exit **Enterprise Manager**.
 8. To uninstall the Secure Perfect application, refer to [Chapter 15 - Uninstalling Secure Perfect or Deleting a Database](#). for further instructions. Process in this order:
 - Uninstall Secure Perfect client computers to a Regional Database Server.
 - Uninstall Secure Perfect Regional Database Servers.
 - Uninstall the Secure Perfect Global Database Server.
 9. OPTIONAL: Delete Secure Perfect databases at the Global Database Server.
 10. OPTIONAL: Uninstall File Replication in Distributed File System as follows:

***Note:** If you plan to re-install, you do not need to delete this file structure.*

- In **Active Directory, Users and Computers**, select **Action**, and then **Advanced Features**.
- Expand to display the folder tree by clicking **System, File Replication System, Dfs Volume**, and **Replication**. Delete all Dfs links to Secure Perfect.
- Delete all Replicas.

- Delete the Dfs Root.
11. If you plan to re-install, you can restore a database from your backup. Refer to [Chapter 14 - Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server](#) for instructions.

What's Next?

1. If you have not already done so, remove the Secure Perfect installation CD from your CD-ROM drive. You have completed the Global setup.
2. If you have not licensed your system, do so now. Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1.](#)

Note: *Following configuration of each new client installation, all currently installed Secure Perfect Global Edition Server computers and client computers must be rebooted in order to be recognized.*

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Configure File Replication	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
						You are here!

Chapter 9: Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients

This chapter includes instructions for installation and configuration of Secure Perfect 6.1 on additional client computers. These computers can be communication clients for hosting micros and digital video recorders, and available as Imaging stations. Follow instructions in the order presented.



In this chapter:

- [“Defining Additional Clients” on page 9.2](#)
- [“Pinging the First Time License Computer” on page 9.2](#)
- [“Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Additional Client Computer” on page 9.4](#)
- [“TYPICAL Installation” on page 9.7](#)
- [“CUSTOM Installation” on page 9.8](#)
- [“Licensing the Client Computer” on page 9.13](#)
- [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 9.13](#)
- [“Logging On to Client Computer” on page 9.15](#)
- [“Viewing Imaging Status” on page 9.17](#)
- [“Client Folder Structure” on page 9.20](#)
- [“What’s Next?” on page 9.21](#)

Defining Additional Clients

If you have not already done so, you must add the client computers to the Secure Perfect 6.1 database before installing the Secure Perfect 6.1 software on the additional clients. Refer to the appropriate section for your installation:

eZ/Professional Edition: [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 4.25](#).

Enterprise Edition: [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 5.77](#)

Global Edition: [“Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 8.38](#)

Pinging the First Time License Computer

Verify that you can reach the First Time License computer by computer name before you install Secure Perfect on additional clients.

- **Typical Installation:** The Server computer is the First Time License computer and you can add clients at the Server computer.
- **Custom Installation:** The file components required to license may be stored on two separate computers:
 - The File Server stores the LicenseInfo file.
 - The First Time License computer stores the Secure Perfect Component Services files.

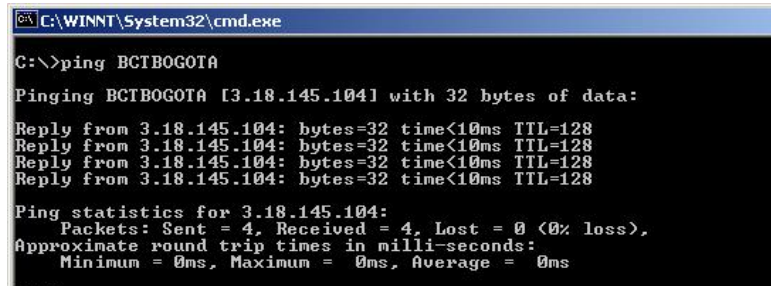
You must be able to reach the computer(s) for both sources.

➤ **To communicate with the First Time License computer by computer name:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. Type `cmd` then click **OK**.

Result: A command prompt window displays.

3. Type `ping <servername>` where `<servername>` is the name of the First Time License computer. Press **Enter**.



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

C:\>ping BCTBOGOTA

Pinging BCTBOGOTA [3.18.145.104] with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128
Reply from 3.18.145.104: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=128

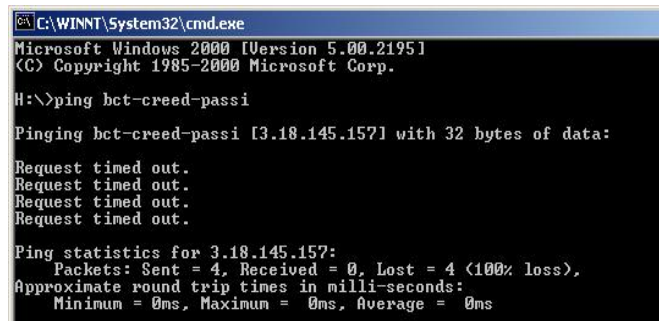
Ping statistics for 3.18.145.104:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

```

Figure 9-1. Successful Ping to Server Computer

Result: A successful ping reveals the computer address was reached. Your window should look similar to [Figure 9-1](#). Proceed to install Secure Perfect on the client computer. Refer to “[Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Additional Client Computer](#)” on page 9.4.

OR



```

C:\WINNT\System32\cmd.exe

Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp.

H:\>ping bct-creed-passi

Pinging bct-creed-passi [3.18.145.157] with 32 bytes of data:

Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 3.18.145.157:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

```

Figure 9-2. Unsuccessful Ping to Server Computer

Result: If the computer could not be reached, your window will display similar to [Figure 9-2](#). Verify your network settings as configured during the operating system setup (“[Preparing the Operating System](#)” on page 2.4) or contact your network administrator for assistance.

Note: You cannot proceed until the networking issues are resolved.

Prepare to Install: Windows 2000 Professional or XP Professional Additional Client Computer

Note: The Secure Perfect application can be successfully installed on a Windows 2000, 2003, or Advanced Server computer as well, if applicable to your system configuration.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
You are here!					

If you purchased this system from GE, Secure Perfect 6.1 is installed for you. Skip to ["Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1" on page 11.1.](#)

➤ To install the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:

1. You MUST be logged in as administrator user to the local computer. If not, log off and log back on as a user with administrator permissions. (If you are logging onto a domain, log off and log on as an administrator to the domain.) This user must also have local administrative privileges.
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive. If the disk does not launch, you must manually start the software. Double-click (or run) **setup.exe**.
3. When the Secure Perfect Install window displays, click **Install**.

Result: A series of windows displays as the listed components install. Answer the prompts as appropriate and continue. This takes several minutes.

- .NET Framework
- DirectX 9.0
- MDAC
- Windows 2000 Service Pack
- Windows Installer

4. Four components will cause the system to reboot when a new version is installed.
 - DirectX 9.0
 - MDAC
 - Windows 2000 Service Pack
 - Windows Installer

Installing Non-English Operating Systems:

During installation of Secure Perfect, the installation process checks your system for minimum required components. If the following Microsoft Windows components are not detected, installation is halted:

- .NET Framework Version 1.1 or later
- DirectX 9.0b End-User Runtime
- MDAC 2.8 or later
- Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 4 or later
- SQL Server 2000 with Service Pack 3a or later

A popup message displays, informing you that installation will be cancelled until you install the required software, **in the appropriate language to the operating system you are installing**. You cannot install Secure Perfect until this is accomplished.

5. If your computer reboots, log on as administrator and installation continues.
6. Please wait as the Secure Perfect installation processes updates on your system. When the latest versions of each component are updated and identified, Secure Perfect 6.1 installation begins, and the Welcome window displays. Continue with [“When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:” on page 9.6.](#)

➤ **When the Secure Perfect software installation begins:**

***Note:** A **Cancel** button displays on every Secure Perfect installation window. If you click **Cancel** at any time during the installation, the installation process stops and your system returns to the state prior to beginning the installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software.*

1. The **Secure Perfect Welcome** window displays. Click **Next**.
2. During installation, provide the appropriate answers to prompts as they display.
3. When the **License Agreement** window displays, select **I accept the license agreement**.

Selecting Installation Type

➤ **To select a type of installation:**

1. If you are installing a **Typical** configuration, follow the instructions in [“TYPICAL Installation” on page 9.7](#).
2. If you are installing any of the following, you must choose **Custom**:
 - If you are installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Global Edition.
 - If your Secure Perfect Database Server and File Server were installed on one or more separate computers.
 - If you changed the secure password.
 - If you installed on a Windows Cluster Server.

Skip to [“CUSTOM Installation” on page 9.8](#).

TYPICAL Installation

➤ **If you choose a Typical installation, follow the instructions below:**

1. Select the type of installation as **Typical**. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window displays as in [Figure 9-3](#).

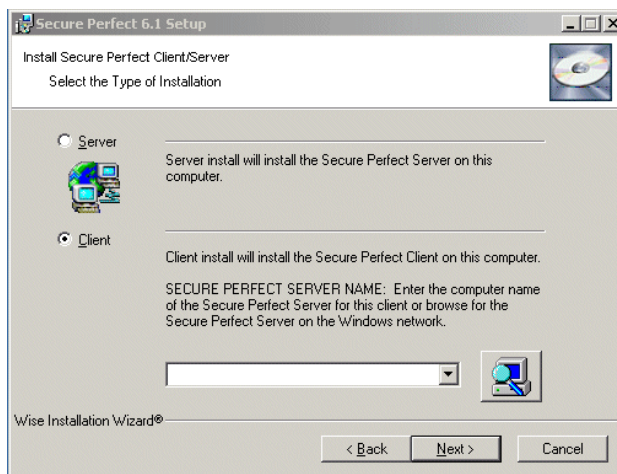


Figure 9-3. Select Type of Installation - Typical Client

2. At the **Install Secure Perfect Client/Server** window, select **Client**. The **Secure Perfect Server Name** field is now available. Enter the name of the Secure Perfect Database Server and File Server for this client workstation or **Browse** by clicking the computer icon, for the Server computer name on the Windows network. (This is the Server computer you configured in a previous chapter.)
3. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

4. The default program folder is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to the program folder of your choice for placement of Secure Perfect files.

5. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

6. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.
7. A **License Setup, Welcome** dialog box displays. Click **OK**.

Result: The **Secure Perfect Setup** window displays. You are required to license this client installation in order for Secure Perfect to function.

8. Continue with [“Licensing the Client Computer” on page 9.13](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
	You are here!				

CUSTOM Installation

Recommended for experienced software installers.

You must select **Custom** in order to accomplish the following:

- Install Global Edition software.
- Complete the configuration when the **Database Server** and **File Server** are on one or more separate computers.
- Change the secure password.

Note: *If you change the default Secure Perfect user password, all computers must use the identical Secure Perfect replacement user password.*

► **To select type of installation and continue:**

1. Select the type of installation as **Custom**, as displayed in [Figure 9-4](#).

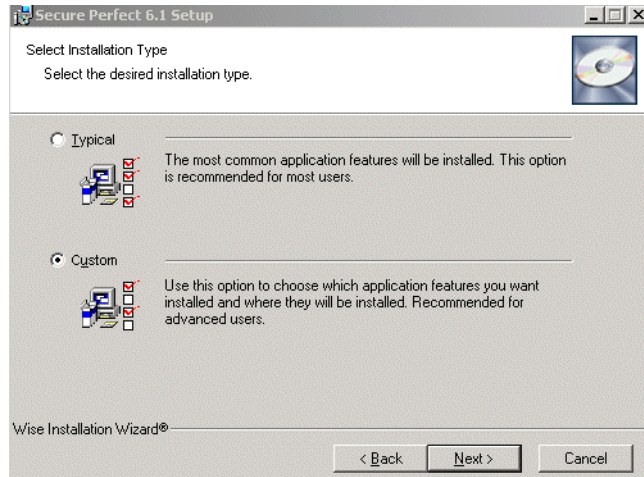


Figure 9-4. Select Installation Type - Custom

2. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Installing Global Edition** window displays as in [Figure 9-5](#) on page 9.10.

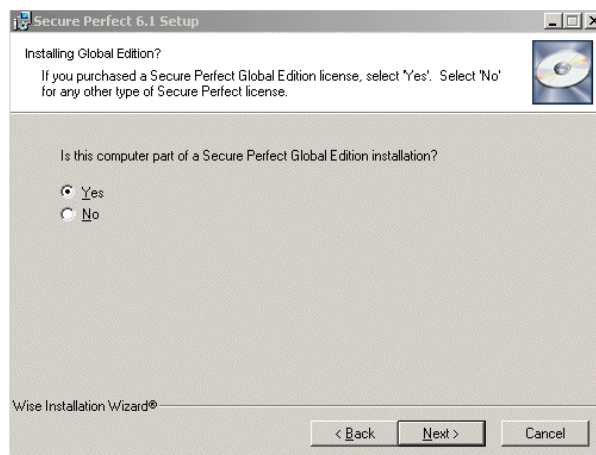


Figure 9-5. Installing Global Edition Election Window

3. Select **Yes**, this computer is part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition installation and click **Next**.

Result: The **Install Secure Perfect Professional Client/Server** window displays as in [Figure 9-6](#).

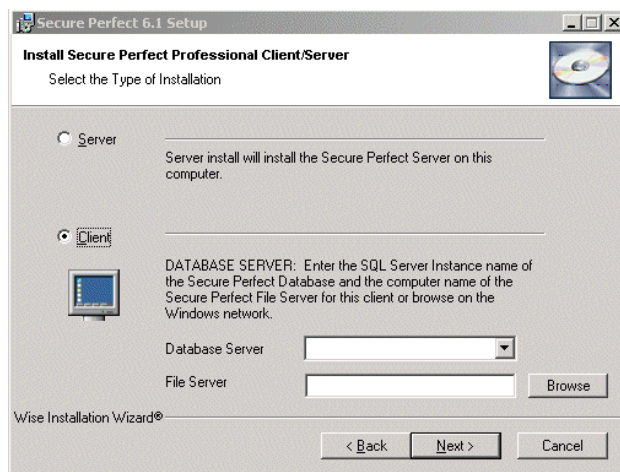


Figure 9-6. Custom Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Client

4. Select **Client**.

Result: The **Database Server** field is now available. Enter the name of the Secure Perfect Database Server and SPSQL instance or select from the drop-down list of available Server computers for this client.

5. Enter the **File Server** for this client or **Browse** for the **File Server** name on the Windows network. (These are the Server computers you configured in the previous chapters.)

6. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Change the 'Secure' Password** window displays as in [Figure 9-7](#).



Figure 9-7. Change the Secure Password Window

7. The Secure Perfect installation creates a new Windows User ID called **secure**. By default, the password is **master**. If your Windows network has security policies that enforce rules for password creation, you may need to change the **secure** user password. If you are unsure, ask your system administrator. Select one of the following:

- **Use Default Password**
- **Change Password**

Enter your new password and then enter a second time.

***Note:** This password must be the same for all computers in the Secure Perfect system.*

8. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Ready to Install the Application** window displays.

9. The default **Destination Folder** is indicated. You may want to install to another location. Click **Browse** to navigate to another program folder for placement of Secure Perfect files.

10. Click **Next** to continue.

Result: Secure Perfect 6.1 copies system files, updates the system configuration, and displays the Secure Perfect icon on your desktop. This may take a few minutes.

11. When the **Secure Perfect 6.1 has been successfully installed** window displays, click **Finish**.

12. Remove the Secure Perfect CD from the CD-ROM drive.

13. Continue with [“Licensing the Client Computer” on page 9.13](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
	You are here!				

Licensing the Client Computer

1. Typically, you are configuring computers that are running additional Secure Perfect client applications. The reminder to license is placed at this point to maintain the proper sequence in completing the installation. At this time, proceed to [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

Important!

Reminder: When the licensing sequence is complete, return to this step and continue the installation.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
		You are here!			

Setting Services to Automatic Startup

Note: At this point in the installation, the Secure Perfect services are stopped.

Now, you will need to change the startup method of the **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager** services to automatic. This means every time the computer starts, the Secure Perfect 6.1 services start.

► To set the startup method of Secure Perfect Services:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Component Services**.

Result: The **Component Services** window displays.

2. Expand the services and scroll down.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.

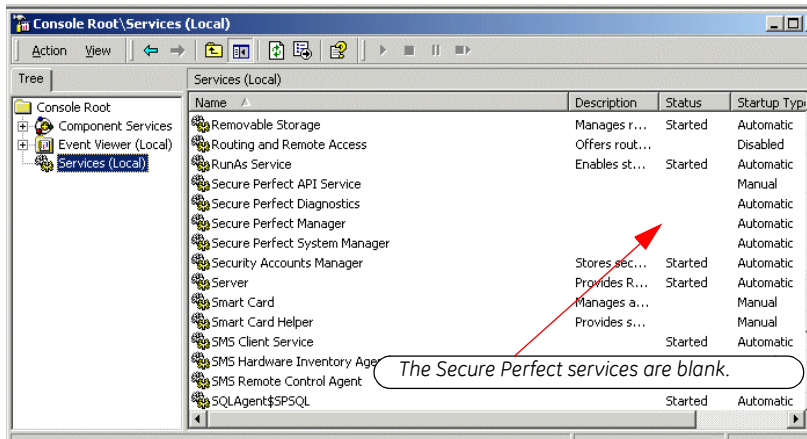


Figure 9-8. Secure Perfect Component Services

4. The status will be blank, indicating that the service is not running.
 5. Right-click and select **Properties**. In the **Startup type** field, select **Automatic**.
 6. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the window.
 7. Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the **Secure Perfect Manager** service and the **Secure Perfect System Manager** service.
 8. Close all windows and applications.
 9. Restart the Secure Perfect client computer.
- **To set the start of Secure Perfect API Service:**

Secure Perfect API Service is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of Application Program Interface to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.1 and have been previously licensed.

► **If you ever need to restart Secure Perfect services manually, follow these steps:**

1. You will need to manually start the Secure Perfect services in this order:
 - Secure Perfect Diagnostic
 - Secure Perfect System Manager
 - Secure Perfect Manager
2. Right-click each service and click **Start** on the shortcut menu. Allow sufficient time for the first service to start before proceeding to the next service.
3. Exit the window.

Global Edition Client Installations

When this additional client is part of a Secure Perfect Global Edition, in order for the new client to be recognized, all currently installed Global Edition Server computers and client computers must be rebooted.

What's Next?

Proceed to [“Logging On to Client Computer”](#)

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
			You are here!		

Logging On to Client Computer

Note: Reboot the client computer at this time if you have not already done so.

During installation of the Secure Perfect 6.1 software, a default local Windows user is created. You will need to log on to the client computer as a user that is part of the SPAdmin local group. By default, a user `secure` with the password `master` was created for you and added to the SPAdmin group.

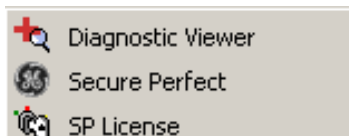
If the services are started, you are now ready to open the Secure Perfect 6.1 application. Refer to [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 9.13](#) to verify if Secure Perfect Services are started.

➤ **To access Secure Perfect after installation:**

1. To access Secure Perfect from your desktop icon, double-click:



2. As an alternative, access Secure Perfect from the **Start** menu. Click **Start, Programs**, then **Secure Perfect**. The **Secure Perfect** menu displays:



The options are as follows:

- **Diagnostic Viewer**

Refer to the document, *Diagnostics and Troubleshooting*, on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, for details of this option.

- **Secure Perfect**

Refer to [Chapter 11 - Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1](#).

- **SP License**


Refer to [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 10.9](#).

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
				You are here!	

Viewing Imaging Status

➤ **To verify whether you currently have Imaging capabilities:**

1. Log on to Secure Perfect. In Secure Perfect, select the **Client Monitor** icon  from the main Secure Perfect toolbar to display the **Client Monitor Form**. The number of Imaging licenses purchased with your system displays in a lower section of the form.

***Note:** Keep in mind that Imaging installs on all computers in your Secure Perfect system. Your Secure Perfect 6.1 license controls the number of Imaging stations active at the same time.*

2. Select a client computer from the list displayed, then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
3. Select **Client Form** from the shortcut menu.

Result: The **Client Form** opens, displaying the record for the selected client.

4. Select **Imaging Status** as **Enabled** and click **Save**.

Result: The photo ID badging system is now enabled for use at this station.

Windows 2000 Imaging Login Setup

If the operator that is running Secure Perfect 6.1 and Imaging system is not a member of the local Administrator's group, you **MUST** add the Power Users

group to this account. The operator login should belong to at least the following local groups:

- Users
- Power Users
- SPAdmin

These groups grant the Windows user access to the Imaging system registry keys and file system.

➤ **To add an operator to user groups:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Computer Management**.
2. Select **Local Users and Groups**, then **Users**.

Result: Your window should look similar to [Figure 9-9](#).

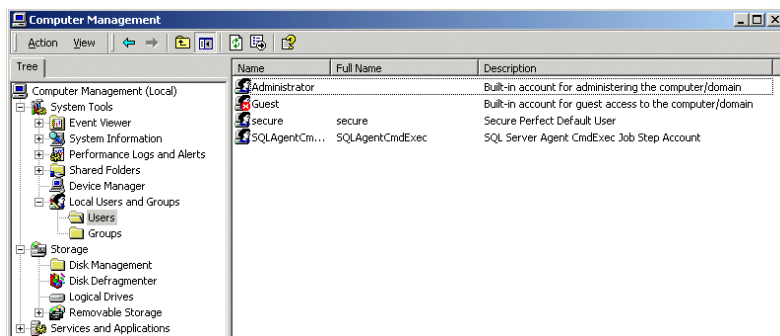


Figure 9-9. Windows 2000 or Windows XP Professional Imaging Login Setup

3. Double-click the user login **Name** to which you are adding access to login groups.

Result: The user **Properties** window displays.

4. Select the **Member Of** tab, then click **Add**.

5. When the **Select Groups** window displays, select those groups from the list of **Names** to which you are adding the user login, click **Add**, then click **OK**.

Result: The window should look similar to [Figure 9-10](#). The operator running the Secure Perfect 6.1 and Imaging systems is a member of the groups listed.

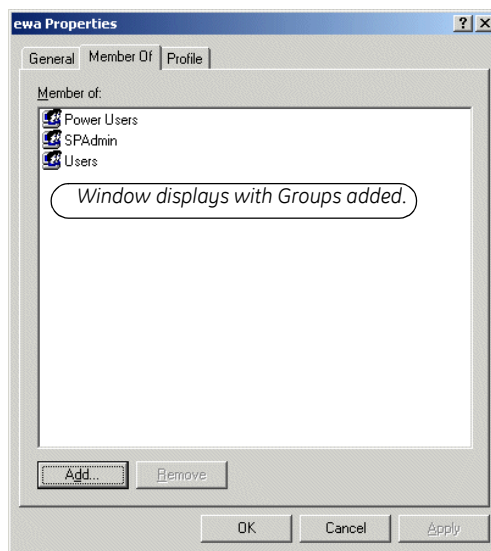


Figure 9-10. Login Groups - Properties Window

Setting Share Permissions on the Secure Perfect Server if Using a Domain

In order for Imaging clients to save badge designs, capture images, and capture signatures, the Designs, Signature, and Images folders on the Server computer must include share properties for the **SPAdmin** group.

The Secure Perfect installation set up the shares for Designs, Signature, and Images folders under a workgroup environment. If the Secure Perfect system is part of an existing domain, the user must add global groups to these shares to allow domain users access to those shares from Secure Perfect client computers. Global groups that need to be added are those to which Secure

Perfect operators belong when logging on to the domain. Consult with your IT Department for instructions to perform this action.

Client Folder Structure

During installation of Secure Perfect 6.1 software, the following folders are created: Client, English, Graphics, Logs, and Rpt. (If this is a Custom installation, the Graphics folder is on the File Server.)

Some of the folders are shared. This allows other computers to gain access to the information stored in these folders, as long as they logged in as an authorized user.

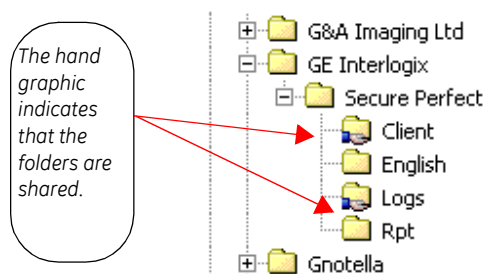


Figure 9-11. Typical Client Folder Structure

Client Folders

- **To review a description of the folders in your Secure Perfect directory, refer to the following:**

Client

A shared folder that contains a self-extracting Microsoft utility, Microsoft Component Checker. This tool checks for compatibility and consistency of MDAC versions. This folder also contains an MSDEAdmin utility, used to access the Secure Perfect databases.

English

The files required to display the Secure Perfect 6.1 client software in English. As more languages are installed, more language-specific folders display.

Logs

A shared folder that contains the Secure Perfect 6.1 diagnostic log files.

Rpt

A folder that contains files used by the report engine to create Secure Perfect reports.

What's Next?

You have completed the client computer setup. Now, proceed to configure the client parameters. You may want to review [Table 1-4, “Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1,”](#) on page 1.16.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Enable Imaging	Finished!
					<i>You are here!</i>

NOTES:

Chapter 10: Licensing the Secure Perfect System

This chapter details procedures to follow when licensing your new Secure Perfect system. Follow instructions in the sequence presented.

REMINDER: Keep in mind that you may have to return to a previous section of this Manual to continue the installation sequence following the licensing process.



In this chapter:

[“Licensing Capacities” on page 10.2](#)

[“Licensing Secure Perfect” on page 10.3](#)

[“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 10.12](#)

[“What’s Next?” on page 10.13](#)

Licensing Capacities

Table 10-1: Secure Perfect 6.1 License Types

Supported Capacities	*Enterprise Edition	*Professional Edition	†eZ Edition Kit
Secure Perfect Server OS	Win2000/ Win2003 Standard	Win2000 & WinXP Professional	Win2000 & WinXP Professional
SQL Server 2000 Database	Standard	MSDE	MSDE
Workstations	Server + 25 Clients	Server + 5 Clients	Server + 5 Clients
Micros	256 (PX-2000, Micro/5 Series)	32 (PX-2000, Micro/5 Series)	32 (PX-2000 Series)
Readers	4,096	256	128
Alarm Inputs	20,480	2,560	320
Aux Outputs	16,384	2,048	256
Badges	100,000	25,000	25,000
DVRs Cameras	64 1,024	16 256	8 128
Cluster Design	Yes	No	No
Client Redundancy	Yes	Yes	No
Visitor: PassagePoint	Yes	Yes	Yes
Report Commander	Yes	Yes	No

* Licensing for **Global Edition** is completed at each Region. Refer to the capacity levels for the applicable edition being installed.

† Upgrading an eZ Edition system to a Professional system is a simple process: Purchase and apply for a new license key and then enter the new license key. Refer to [page 10.3](#) and [page 10.6](#).

Licensing Secure Perfect

Obtaining the License

You must have a valid GE Customer Support Web site login in order to enable the licensing program.

Secure Perfect Installation Progress Bar:

Install SP 6.1	Obtain/Install License	Set/Verify Services	Log On	Add Add'l Client Computers	Finished!
	<i>You are here!</i>				

➤ **To access the GE security business Web site and license your system:**

1. From a Web browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator, enter www.ge-security.com.
2. At the GE security business main window, a login box displays as in [Figure 10-1](#).

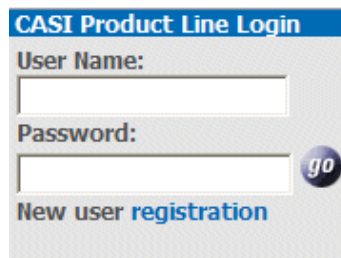


Figure 10-1. CASI Business Partner Login

► **If you ALREADY HAVE a GE security business Customer Support password:**

1. Type your **User Name** and **Password**, and then click **Go**.
2. Select **Software & Key Registration** from the side menu of the window displayed.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Key Generation** from the list of **Registered Products Summary for GE Security**.

Result: The **Key Generation** window displays. Complete all fields by typing the requested information based on your setup environment and then click **Create key**.

► **If you DO NOT have a Customer Support password:**

1. Click **New user registration**.

Result: The **Business Partner Registration** profile displays.

2. Complete the required fields of the profile.

***Note:** Please remember to scroll down and complete all required fields.*

3. Click **Submit**.

Result: Within 48 hours, you will be notified by e-mail when the sections of the GE library to which you are allowed access have been made available to you.

4. Return to the GE security business Web site.
5. At the GE security business main window, click the **CASI Business Partner Login** icon.

Result: The login box displays as part of the **Access Control & Security Management** window.

6. Type your **User Name** and **Password**, and then click **Go**.
7. Select **Software & Key Registration** from the side menu of the window displayed.

8. Select **Secure Perfect Key Generation** from the list of **Registered Products Summary for GE Security**.

Result: The **Key Generation** window displays. Complete all fields by typing the requested information based on your setup environment and then click **Create key**.

9. We recommend that you store your license agreement number in a safe place, so that if the license key is ever destroyed or corrupted, you can re-install without having to contact GE Security.

Note: *This individual License Key Number can be used three times for this individual Machine Seed Key number. After three times, you will need to contact Customer Support at GE for assistance.*

If you purchased this system from GE, the license key is entered for you.

10. The Licensing program is used to enter the license key for Secure Perfect 6.1. The license key controls the following:

- Number of client licenses

You can install Secure Perfect on any number of computers. The license controls the number of client computers connected to the Server computer at the same time.

- Number of Photo Imaging licenses

You can install Imaging on any number of computers. The license controls the number of Imaging stations active at the same time.

- Number of Reader licenses
- Number of DVR licenses
- Number of API licenses
- Thin Client licenses
- Expiration date of the license
- Client Redundancy enabling
- Visitor license
- Web Reporting license
- Guard Tour license

A summary of this information can also be viewed by selecting **About Secure Perfect** from the Secure Perfect **Help** menu. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 10.12.](#)

Entering the License Key

When you have a registered license key, it is time to enter the key in SP License Setup, at the Secure Perfect Application Server computer.

1. If the license program is not already open, select **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP License**.

Result: A **Welcome** dialog box displays.

2. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and display the **SP License Setup** window.
3. Continue with the instructions as presented in one of the following scenarios:
 - [“First Time License” on page 10.6.](#)
 - [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 10.8.](#)
 - [“Second and Any Additional Client Licenses” on page 10.9.](#)
 - [“If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence” on page 10.10.](#)

First Time License

This scenario assumes that this is the first computer that has the Secure Perfect application installed, and this client is licensing during the Secure Perfect installation sequence:

1. The **First Time License** check box is selected for you. Do not change. If it is not selected, please select it now.
2. The **Machine Seed Key** is displayed for information only and is a read-only field.
3. In the **License Key** sections, enter the 35-character license key string obtained through the GE security business Web site. You can type the

entry into the control dialog boxes OR select, copy, and then paste by clicking any **License Key** edit control boxes to paste the entire key.

4. In the **File Server** box:

- The **Path for license information file located on the File Server** is a read-only dialog box and displays for information only.
- The **Browse** button is enabled and allows selection of a path for File Server license information, to give the user an opportunity to log on to the remote computer, if the currently logged in user does not have permissions for the folder. When you navigate to and find the Server computer, you must select the **LicenseInfo** folder to display the Server name/folder name combination in this dialog box.

5. Click **Register**.

Result: An **SQL Server Login** window displays.

6. Enter the password for the SQL Server 'sa' user and click **OK**.

Professional Servers: The initial password will be `master` and it is set up for you during the installation of MSDE.

Result: A message displays informing you that the license setup was successful and Secure Perfect services will be stopped.

7. Click **OK**.

Result: The license program exits. The system registers the license key for this client and the Secure Perfect software is licensed for use. This process takes several minutes.

Note: *The computer in your Secure Perfect system that accesses and completes the registration for the first time is the license controller computer. The license key is stored on the File Server computer; therefore, the license controller computer AND File Server computer must be online when services are started and the newly licensed client is brought online for the first time.*

8. If you do not enter a license key, then Secure Perfect will run in Demo Mode with only limited functionality. Refer to [“Running in Demo Mode” on page 10.8](#).

9. We recommend that you store your license agreement number in a safe place, so that if the license key is ever destroyed or corrupted, you can reinstall without having to contact GE.

***Note:** A summary of your license displays in the **About Secure Perfect** window of Secure Perfect. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 10.12](#), for additional details.*

10. Following the licensing sequence, you **MUST** return to your installation sequence. Unless otherwise instructed, you are ready to set services. Refer to “Setting Services to Automatic Startup,” in the section of this manual pertaining to the operating system you are installing.

Running in Demo Mode

- **If you are licensing your Secure Perfect system for the first time and click Cancel during the licensing configuration:**

When the **License Setup** window displays during the installation sequence, the option to **Cancel** can be selected. Installation of Secure Perfect will complete and operation of your system will continue in **Demo Mode** until you properly license your system. After each hour of login time, the system will shut down and you will be required to restart Secure Perfect to continue operations. This sequence will continue indefinitely if you have not properly licensed your system.

Operation during Demo Mode is limited to the following:

- 1 license controller computer
- 1 additional client computer
- 1 Imaging session
- 4 readers
- 1 digital video recorder
- 1 API connection
- Client Redundancy

Second and Any Additional Client Licenses

Note: ONLY Windows XP Professional Clients: *If the client is part of a domain, the logon user must be a domain user assigned to the SPAdmin group on the Server; and not logged on locally as administrator. If you are logged on locally as administrator, you will not be able to license successfully because the LicenseInfo folder will not be found.*

You MUST license all additional clients in order to operate Secure Perfect.

1. Click **OK** on the **License Setup** dialog box, if you have not already done so.
2. The **First Time License** check box is open. Ignore and do not select.
3. The **Machine Seed Key** is displayed for information only and is a read-only field.
4. Ignore the **License Key** section. (This section is disabled and was completed when **First Time License** was completed.)
5. The **Path for license information file located on the File Server:** may have a default path listed. Verify the path or click **Browse** to navigate to the \\<pname>\LicenseInfo file on the File Server computer. Select and click the file name. It now displays, in the **Path for license information file located on the File Server:**.
6. Click **Register**.

Important!

Result: A message displays informing you that the license setup was successful and Secure Perfect services will be stopped.

7. Click **OK**.

Result: The license program exits. The system registers the license key for this client and the Secure Perfect software is licensed for use.

8. Following the licensing sequence, return to your installation sequence.

NOTES:

- *A summary of your license displays in the **About Secure Perfect** window of Secure Perfect. Refer to “[About Secure Perfect: License Summary](#)” on page 10.12, for additional details.*
- *Clients must re-license if the network card has been changed.*
- *If the license controller computer is re-licensed, ALL clients must be re-licensed.*

If You Do Not License During the Secure Perfect Installation Sequence

If you do not license during the Secure Perfect installation sequence, installation will complete and operation of your system will continue in Demo Mode until you properly license your system. Refer to “[Running in Demo Mode](#)” on page 10.8, for details.

This scenario assumes that this is the first client, and this client is licensing some time AFTER the Secure Perfect installation sequence:

1. Select the check box **First Time License**.
2. Accept and do not change the **License Controller, Machine Seed Key**, as displayed.
3. In the **License Key** sections, enter the 35-character license key string obtained through the GE security business Web site. You can type the entry into the control dialog boxes OR copy, cut, and click any License Key control dialog box to paste the entire key.
4. The **Path for license information file located on the File Server** is a read-only dialog box and displays for information only.
5. The **Browse** button is enabled and allows selection of File Server license information path to give the user an opportunity to log on to the remote computer if the currently logged in user does not have permissions for the folder.

6. Click **Register**.

Result: The **SQL Server Login** dialog box displays, as in [Figure 10-2](#).

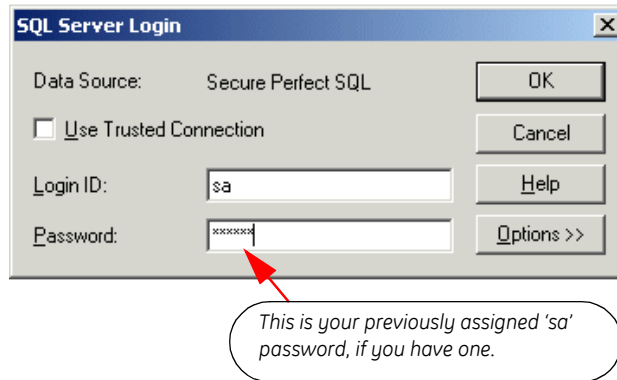


Figure 10-2. SQL Server Login Dialog Box with Data

7. Clear the **User Trusted Connection** check box, if checked, and enter **Login ID** as 'sa' and enter sa's **Password**. If you purchased your system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned. We recommend that you enter a password of your choice. Click **OK**.

Result: The license program exits. The system registers the license key for this client and the Secure Perfect software is licensed for use. A message displays informing you that the license setup was successful and Secure Perfect services will be stopped.

8. Following the licensing sequence:
- You are ready to log on. Refer to [“Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1” on page 11.1](#) for login instructions.
 - A summary of your license displays in the **About Secure Perfect** window of Secure Perfect. Refer to [“About Secure Perfect: License Summary” on page 10.12](#), for additional details.

Note: The computer in your Secure Perfect system that accesses and completes the registration for the first time is the license controller computer. The license key is stored on the license controller computer;

therefore, the license controller computer must be online, with Secure Perfect services running in order to license additional client computers.

9. We recommend that you store your license agreement number in a safe place, so that if the license key is ever destroyed or corrupted, you can reinstall without having to contact GE.

About Secure Perfect: License Summary

Following a successful login, the Edition of Secure Perfect installed on your computer, as well as the Service Pack (if any), and parameters of your system display in the Secure Perfect application, **Help** menu, **About Secure Perfect** window, similar to the following:

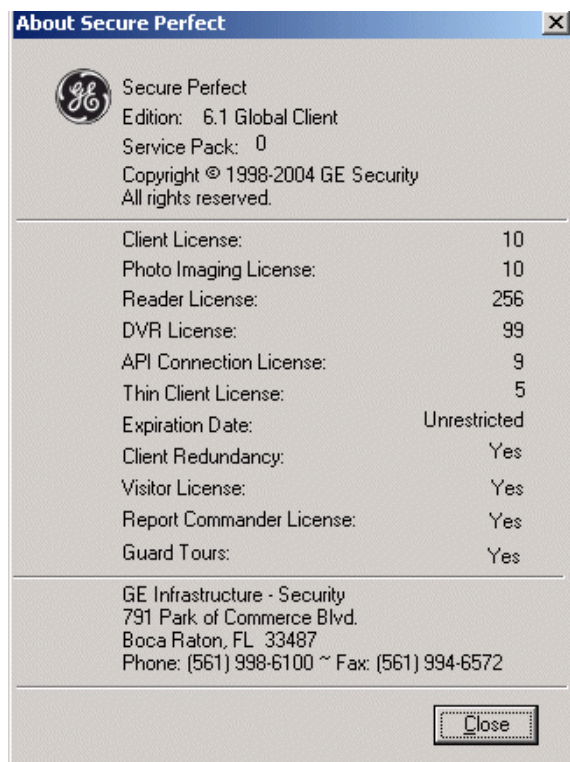


Figure 10-3. Help Menu - About Secure Perfect Window

What's Next?

Unless otherwise stated in your installation sequence, continue the installation for your system by selecting one of the following sequences:

- **Secure Perfect Server Computers:**
 - eZ/Professional Edition: [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 4.20](#)
 - Enterprise Edition: [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 5.72](#)
 - Global Edition Global Database Server: [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 6.92](#)
 - Global Edition Regional Database Server: [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 7.92](#)

OR

- **Secure Perfect Client Computers:**
 - [“Setting Services to Automatic Startup” on page 9.13](#)

What's Next?

NOTES:

Chapter 11: Logging On and Configuring Secure Perfect 6.1

Once you have installed the Secure Perfect 6.1 software, you will need to log on to the Server computer and set a few parameters before beginning to create any micro records or badges. Review [“Steps for Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1” on page 1.16](#) and “Getting Started” in the Secure Perfect Online Help for a recommended order of initial setup and configuration.



In this chapter:

[“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2](#)

[“Starting Secure Perfect 6.1 and Logging On” on page 11.4](#)

[“Accessing Help” on page 11.6](#)

[“Adding Yourself as an Operator in Secure Perfect 6.1” on page 11.7](#)

[“Initial Setup of Secure Perfect Records” on page 11.7](#)

[“Setting E-mail Accounts” on page 11.7](#)

[“Changing the Secure Perfect Server Computer Name” on page 11.7](#)

Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview

Windows computers use special programs called services. A service is a process that can automatically start when the system boots and remain running as a background process independently of anyone being logged in.

All computers running **Secure Perfect 6.1 client** software use three services: **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**, **Secure Perfect Manager**, and **Secure Perfect System Manager**.

- **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** controls the diagnostic information log.
- **Secure Perfect Manager** controls the communication to and from the micros and DVRs.
- **Secure Perfect System Manager** coordinates the communications of data between computers and handles Secure Perfect 6.1 licensing.

These services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or Secure Perfect 6.1 (unless Auto Shutdown is enabled on the Client Form). In other words, the computer must be turned on but no one needs to be logged in.

These services **MUST** be running in order for connection to the client computers and for micros to communicate with their Server computer.

If you are going to be using an API interface, your computer will use a fourth service:

- Secure Perfect API Service can be started manually at the time you install an API interface.

► **To access the Services form:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** form displays, similar to [Figure 11-1 on page 11.3](#).

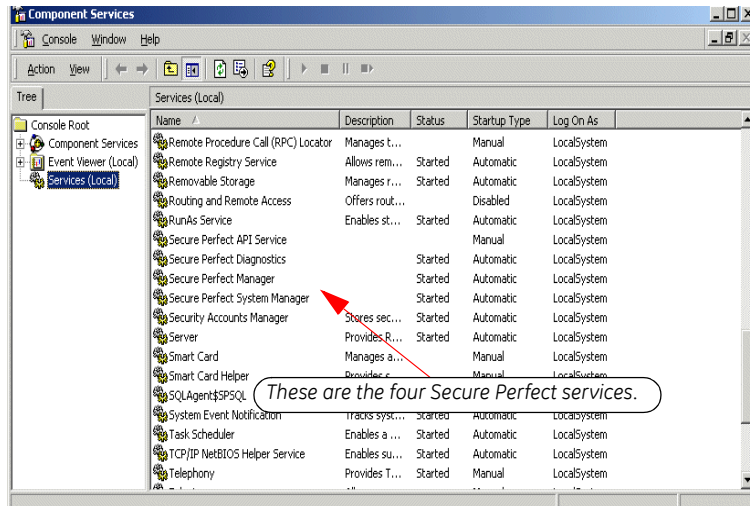


Figure 11-1. Secure Perfect Services - Windows 2000

During your installation sequence, services were set to automatic. Refer to “Setting Services to Automatic Startup” in the section of this Manual that pertains to your system setup. Once set to automatic, Secure Perfect 6.1 initializes these services with an automatic startup which means that it starts as soon as the computer is started. We recommend that you do not change this setting.

The status will be either **Started** or blank. If it is blank, then the service is not running.



Changing the state of services without a good working knowledge of the services' purpose can cause the computer to act erratically!

► **To stop the Secure Perfect services:**

1. Shut down all client applications to ensure that any work in progress is saved.
2. Access the **Services** form. See [“To access the Services form.”](#) on page 11.2.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Manager**.

4. Right-click the service and click **Stop**.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for **Secure Perfect System Manager**, and then **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.

➤ **To start the Secure Perfect services:**

1. Access the **Services** form. See [“To access the Services form:” on page 11.2](#).
2. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics**.
3. Right-click the service and click **Start**.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for **Secure Perfect System Manager**, and then **Secure Perfect Manager**.

To verify or troubleshoot the **Secure Perfect** services problems, look at your log files.

➤ **To set the Secure Perfect API Service:**

Secure Perfect API Service is used when an external system is sending or receiving transactions by way of Application Program Interface to Secure Perfect. Do not start this service or change the settings unless you are using the API option in Secure Perfect 6.1 and have been previously licensed.

Starting Secure Perfect 6.1 and Logging On

➤ **To open the Secure Perfect 6.1 client application.**

1. To access Secure Perfect 6.1 from your desktop icon, double-click:



2. As an alternative, access Secure Perfect 6.1 from the **Start** menu. Click **Start**, **Programs**, then **Secure Perfect**. The **Secure Perfect** menu displays. The following options are available:

- **Diagnostic Viewer**

Refer to the document, *Diagnostics and Troubleshooting*, on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format or Online Help, for details of this option.

- **Secure Perfect**

Select and click this option to open the Secure Perfect application.

- **SP License**

Refer to the licensing section of this manual for instructions to license your new system.

The following features are available on machines with Typical Server installed or Custom installation with the Database Server component installed.

- **Create SP Database**

Select this option if you are creating a database OUTSIDE of the normal installation sequence. The database creation process is outlined in the appropriate installation section of this manual for your operating system.

- **SP Maintenance Utility**

This menu option opens the database backup, restore, and password utilities.

- **Install SQL Server 2000 Desktop Edition (MSDE)**

This menu option displays only for Windows 2000 Professional and Windows XP Professional Server systems.

***Note:** The Client menu is detailed in [“Logging On to Client Computer”](#) on page 9.15.*

3. Select **Secure Perfect**.

Result: The **Secure Perfect 6.1** program starts. The Secure Perfect 6.1 menu bar displays a **File** and **Help** menu. Log on to access **Secure Perfect 6.1**.

➤ **To log on to the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:**

Default login ID is secure and the password is master. The language is English.

1. Select the **File** menu and then **Login**.
2. Enter your login ID and password. If this is a client machine, the Server computer must be installed, configured, and licensed. The Secure Perfect 6.1 services must be running on the Server computer.
3. Click **OK**.

Note: *If logging onto Secure Perfect 6.1 using a client, you MUST have a valid user name, and password, along with a valid Secure Perfect 6.1 login ID and password on the Server computer. Those login IDs must be part of the SPAdmin local group on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer.*

Accessing Help

To access the Online Help, select **Help Topics** from the Secure Perfect 6.1 **Help** menu.

You do not have to be logged in to access Help.

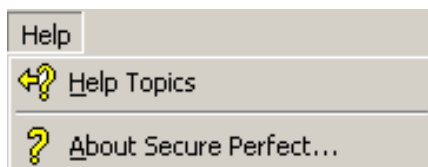


Figure 11-2. Accessing Online Help

Defining Additional User Accounts

Adding additional Windows users is **optional** but recommended since this clearly identifies each user in Windows.

Note: *If you do choose to add additional users, you must assign them to the group 'SPAdmin' after Secure Perfect is installed.*

Adding Yourself as an Operator in Secure Perfect 6.1

➤ **To add yourself as an operator in Secure Perfect 6.1:**

1. When you log on, change the password of the default login ID, *secure*.
2. Add yourself as an operator in Secure Perfect 6.1. This will allow Secure Perfect 6.1 to track you and the steps you take in setting up the system. To add yourself as an operator, select the **Administration** menu and then **Operator**.

For detailed instructions to configure an operator record, refer to the *Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual* or the Online Help.
3. Log off and then log on as the new operator.

Initial Setup of Secure Perfect Records

Refer to the table, “[Initial Setup of Secure Perfect 6.1](#)” on page 1.16, as a guideline in setting up your system records. The steps follow a specific sequence that is suitable for a smooth system configuration.

Setting E-mail Accounts

Configuring e-mail accounts can be accomplished by accessing the **Administration** menu, and enabling on the **Parameter Form**, then **Alarm Notifier** form. This capability allows you to notify an e-mail account when incoming Secure Perfect alarms are received. Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help for details of this option.

Changing the Secure Perfect Server Computer Name

This section is provided for changes to the computer name, as applicable to your configuration:

- In a Typical installation, to the Database Server computer.

- In a Custom installation that has the Database Server, File Server, and Secure Perfect Application installed on the same computer.

For any other scenario, you MUST consult GE Customer Support for assistance.

Three methods are detailed:

1. In **System Properties**
2. Using the SPServer.exe utility
3. **SQL Server Client Tools** (Enterprise-level installations)

Details of each method are included in the following sections.

1. Server Computer Name in System Properties

***Note:** These instructions assume that you are at the Server computer of a Typical installation. All database and Server components and the Secure Perfect application are on the same computer.*

If your database and Server components and application are on separate and different computers, call GE Customer Support for assistance.

- **To change the Server computer name on the Identification Changes tab of your Server Computer System Properties:**

***Note:** You must be at the Database Server computer.*

1. Stop Secure Perfect services.
2. Right-click the **My Computer** icon on your desktop.
3. Select **Properties** from the context menu.
4. Select the **Network Identification** tab from the System Properties.

5. Click **Properties**.

Result: The **Identification Changes** window displays your **Computer Name**. Enter the new name of the Server computer. It should consist of a maximum of 15 alphanumeric characters with no spaces.

6. Click **OK**, then **Apply**. You will be asked to reboot your computer. Select **Yes**.

2. Server Computer Name Change using *SPServer.exe* Utility

***Note:** These instructions must be followed on every computer in your Secure Perfect system, including the Server computer.*

- **Secure Perfect 6.1 has a utility to assist you in changing your Server computer name. To change the Server computer name:**

1. Stop Secure Perfect services. If you need assistance, review [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2](#).
2. Navigate to the Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect folder of your Server computer.
3. Double-click the **SPServer.exe** file.

Result: The **Secure Perfect Server Name Definition** window displays similar to [Figure 11-3 on page 11.10](#).

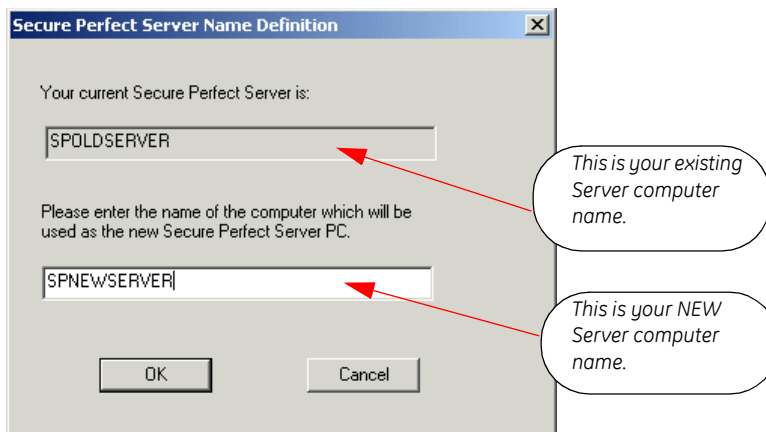


Figure 11-3. Secure Perfect Server Name Definition Window

4. Your EXISTING Server computer name displays as a read-only field. Ignore this field.
5. Enter the NEW Server computer name in the appropriate field.
6. Click **OK**.

Result: A **Server Name Definition** dialog box displays an update message similar to the following:

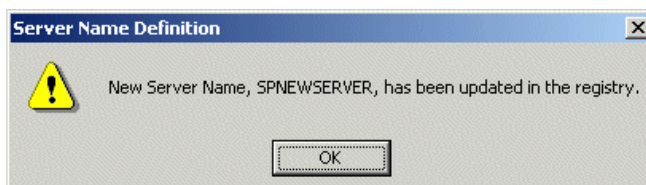


Figure 11-4. Server Name Definition Update Message

7. Click **OK** to close this window.
8. Relicense your Secure Perfect system at this time.

If the computer has NOT changed, just the computer name, you can use your existing license key provided at the time you purchased your

system.

If the computer has changed, your system needs to be relicensed with a NEW license key. Be prepared to obtain a new license from GE. Refer to [“Obtaining the License” on page 10.3](#).

9. Click **OK**.
10. Proceed to change the Server computer name on all clients in your Secure Perfect system, repeating the steps beginning with [“Server Computer Name in System Properties” on page 11.8](#).

REMINDER: Remember to change the client name in the Secure Perfect application, Client table.

3. Re-Creating a Microsoft SQL Server Registration

- **If you have Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise installed, you may want to reconfigure the SQL Server client tools.**

1. Click **Start, Programs, MSSQL Server Enterprise Manager**.
2. Select, then right-click **SQL Server Group**.
3. Select **Delete SQL Server Registration**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Right-click **SQL Server Group**.
6. Your **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window should look similar to [Figure 11-5 on page 11.12](#).

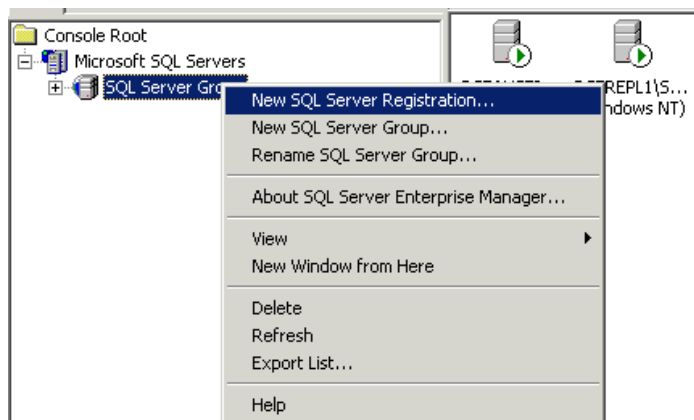


Figure 11-5. SQL Server Enterprise Manager

7. Select **New SQL Server Registration**.

Result: A **Registered SQL Server Properties** window displays as in [Figure 11-6](#).

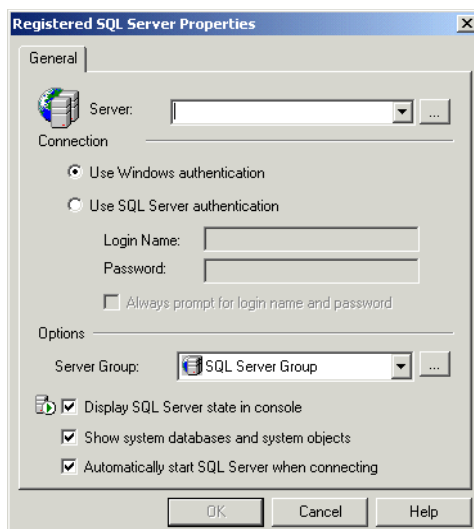


Figure 11-6. Registered SQL Server Properties

8. Click the **Server** drop-down list to display the list of Server names in your Secure Perfect network system. Your newly created Server name should display on this drop-down list. Select your new Server name.
9. Select **Use SQL Server Authentication**.
10. Enter the 'sa' login name and 'sa' password.
11. Do NOT change any other selections.
12. Click **OK**.

Result: The new Server name displays under **SQL Server Group** in your SQL Server Enterprise Manager navigation tree similar to [Figure 11-7](#).

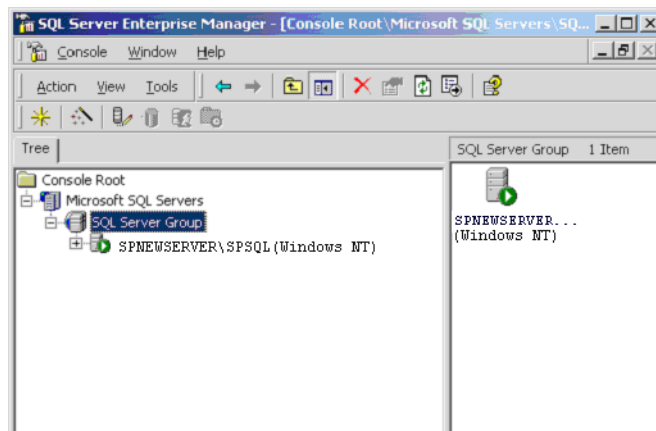


Figure 11-7. SQL Server Enterprise Manager Navigation Tree

13. Close the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

NOTES:

Chapter 12: Logging Off and Shutting Down

This chapter details the process of exiting, logging off, or shutting down Secure Perfect 6.1 and your computer.



In this chapter:

[“Exiting Secure Perfect 6.1” on page 12.2](#)

[“Quitting Secure Perfect Application” on page 12.2](#)

[“Shutting Down” on page 12.2](#)

[“Logging Off of Windows” on page 12.3](#)

[“Automatic Client Shutdown” on page 12.3](#)

Exiting Secure Perfect 6.1

When exiting Secure Perfect 6.1, you have two options:

- **Exit**
Exit logs off the operator and shuts down the Secure Perfect 6.1 client application.
- **Log Off**
Log off allows an operator to log off and another operator to log on without exiting the program.

Quitting Secure Perfect Application

You have the option of logging off without shutting down the computer. In this case, the Secure Perfect services are still running. However, you will not receive any alarm notifications. To receive these notifications, you need to have the Secure Perfect 6.1 client application running. If you select the option to receive notifications on the **Client Form**, you need to be logged into the Secure Perfect 6.1 client application. The alarm notification displays based on the operator's facility assignment which is evaluated upon login to the Secure Perfect application.

Shutting Down

➤ To do a total shutdown of Secure Perfect 6.1 and your computer:

1. Exit the Secure Perfect 6.1 client application by selecting **Exit** from the **File** menu. Enter your password in the **Password** field of the **Exit** window and click **OK**.
2. From the Desktop, click **Start**, then **Shut Down**.
3. From the **Shut Down Windows** form, select the **Shut down** option and click **OK**.



You can cause serious damage to your computer if you do not follow the procedure above. In fact, the

resulting damage may require that you reload all the software on your computer.

Logging Off of Windows

➤ **To log off:**

1. Exit Secure Perfect 6.1 by selecting **Exit** from the **File** menu. Enter your password in the **Password** field of the **Exit** window and click **OK**.
2. From the Desktop, click **Start**, then **Shut Down**.
3. From the **Shut Down Windows** form, select **Log off xxxx** (where **xxxx** is the user name that was used to log on.) Click **OK**.

Result: This logs off the current user and allows another user to log on. Keep in mind that the Secure Perfect 6.1 services are still running but you will not receive any alarm notifications.

***Note:** Also see “Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2, for additional information relating to Secure Perfect services.*

Automatic Client Shutdown

➤ **Services will automatically shut down if this option is selected on the Client Form (unless you disable Auto Shutdown on the Parameter Form) when a client closes the Secure Perfect application and meets all of the following criteria:**

1. Does not host any micros or DVRs.
2. Does not have any API connections.
3. Does not host a Thin Client.
4. Is not a backup client for or have any backup clients of its own.
5. Is not a CCTV client.

6. Does not host a Guard Tour.

The shutting down of a particular client computer designates that license capacity unused. Now, that license is available for another computer that can now be designated a Secure Perfect client.

Chapter 13: Backing Up and Restoring Data to a Professional Server

This chapter provides information for system administrators to archive, back up, and restore a Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional system.



In this chapter:

[“Overview” on page 13.2](#)

[“Professional System Recovery Checklist” on page 13.2](#)

[“Backing Up” on page 13.3](#)

[“Restoring” on page 13.6](#)

Overview

- **To define the difference between archiving and backing up:**
 - **Archiving** creates a copy of the latest history transactions. You will still need to back up the archive file in order to maintain a copy. Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help or the *Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual* on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system, in PDF format, for details of this function.
 - **Backing up** creates a copy of selected data, such as the three databases, and stores it either on the computer or other media, such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder.

Professional System Recovery Checklist

If your system or hard drive crashes, your database may be determined to be beyond repair. Follow a sequence of steps to recover your system, as in [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Recovery”](#).

Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Recovery

- **To assist you in recovering your Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional system, refer to this checklist. Complete the steps in the order they are listed here.**
 - ☐ Install Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system. Install applicable operating system service packs. (Refer to [“Preparing the Operating System”](#) on page 2.4.)
 - ☐ Install Secure Perfect 6.1 software from the CD. (Refer to [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ or Professional Edition Server Software](#).)
 - ☐ Restore the three Secure Perfect 6.1 databases from your backup media. (SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive). (Refer to appropriate section of this chapter.)

- ☐ Restore the Images, Signature, Graphics, and Designs folders from your backup media to the appropriate folders. (Refer to the appropriate section of this chapter.)
- ☐ If restoring to a different Server computer with a different server name, you will need to run a script to reset the database security. (Refer to [“Changing the Secure Perfect Server Computer Name”](#) on page 11.7. Follow the steps in the order they are listed.)
- ☐ Run the licensing program, Secure Perfect 6.1 License, and enter your 35-character license key string. (Refer to [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System.](#))
- ☐ Reboot the computer.

Backing Up

A backup is a copy of selected data. You should keep two or more backups of the Server computer on another computer:

1. Secure Perfect 6.1 data to include the following:
 - **SecurePerfect Database**
Contains configuration data, such as badges and micros.
 - **SecurePerfectHistory Database**
Contains current history including badge transactions and operator history.
 - **SecurePerfectArchive Database**
Contains copies of Secure Perfect 6.1 history data based on archive period.
 - **Externals**
A shared, empty folder created to store reports created by third party report generators.
 - **Designs**
Contains the badge design files. The Designs folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Images**

Contains the picture files of badge holders. The Images folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Signature**

Will only need to be backed up if you have Imaging installed.
Contains the signature files of badge holders. The Signature folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Graphics**

Will only need to be backed up if you are using Alarm Graphics.
Contains the alarm graphics maps. The Graphics folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Video**

A shared folder that contains captured video files.

You should back up this data more often since it changes so frequently. While your internal policies may dictate your backup requirements, we recommend that you create a backup at least every week.

2. Entire Secure Perfect 6.1 installation.

The entire Secure Perfect 6.1 folder should be backed up when you first set up the system and have confirmed that it is working, and any time you upgrade. It is very important that you also back up the registry settings. In most backup programs, you will be prompted to back up these settings.

ALWAYS MAINTAIN A CURRENT BACKUP. If you have any problems with your system, you are able to restore your backup. This includes your databases as well as your files.

Backing Up the Entire Secure Perfect Folder

1. If you purchased your system from GE, then your system contains a CD-RW drive acceptable for backup purposes. It is recommended that you do a backup of the entire Secure Perfect folder.
2. In Microsoft Windows Explorer, navigate to the Secure Perfect program folder.

3. Copy the Secure Perfect folder to your backup media.

Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Databases

The Secure Perfect 6.1 databases contains configuration data, such as badges and micros. They should be backed up on a continual basis since the information may change frequently.

► **To back up your Secure Perfect databases:**

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after restoring the database files.*

1. Create a folder on your system where the backup files will be stored.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: Maintenance.exe

Result: A **Maintenance** window displays.

3. Click **Backup**.

Result: A **Maintenance - [Backup]** destination window displays.

4. Accept the default **Login** of 'sa' and enter the **Password** for sa. The default password assigned for the 'sa' user was `master`.
5. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files will be stored. Double-click to open the **Destination** folder.
6. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop the destination folder onto each of the fields:
 - SecurePerfect
 - SecurePerfectArchive
 - SecurePerfectHistory

Result: The .BAK files in each field will be automatically named, to include the directory path, file name, date, and time.

7. If you choose not to back up any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is selected but no destination is entered in the database field, backup of that database file will not occur.
8. Click **Backup**.

Result: The backup process begins. When backup is complete, a dialog box displays a message verifying the successful backup of the chosen databases.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the **Maintenance** window.

Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos

1. Backing up creates a copy of selected data. You can use any backup program you want and any media such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder. The size of the files in the folder you want to back up will be a determining factor of which media to use.
2. If you purchased your system from GE, then your system contains a CD-RW drive acceptable for backup purposes.
3. In Microsoft Explorer, navigate to the Secure Perfect program folder. Select the Designs, Graphics, Images, Signature, and Video folders.
4. Copy the folders to your backup media.

Restoring

How you restore depends on how you backed up the system. What you should restore is detailed below.

1. Restoring your **SecurePerfectArchive** will happen more frequently than other restores in order to run reports.

2. Restoring your **SecurePerfect** database and **SecurePerfectHistory** should **ONLY** be done if you are having problems with your system.

Restoring Databases on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

► To restore a database backup:

1. Verify that Secure Perfect 6.1 is installed on the destination computer.
2. Stop Secure Perfect 6.1 services.
3. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

***Note:** If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: Maintenance.exe*

Result: A **Maintenance** window displays.

4. Click **Restore**.

Result: A **Maintenance - [Restore]** destination window displays.

5. Accept the default **Login** of 'sa'. Enter the 'sa' password, if applicable. The default password assigned to the sa user is 'master.'

***Note:** Although you cannot change the password here, GE recommends assigning a unique SQL system administrator password to your database using the SP Maintenance Utility.*

6. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files are presently stored. Double-click to open the folder.
7. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop from the **Backup Source File** window onto each of the fields:
 - SecurePerfect
 - SecurePerfectArchive
 - SecurePerfectHistory

8. If you choose not to restore any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is checked, but no destination is entered, the restoration will not occur.
9. Click **Restore**.

Result: The restoration process begins. When restoration is complete, a dialog box displays a message, verifying the restoration of the chosen databases.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Exit **Restore**. The database restoration is complete.
12. If you are restoring the database from another MSDE installation, you need to run the utility, Reset Application Password, located in the SP Maintenance Utility, Database menu.
13. Relicense your Secure Perfect system.
14. Start Secure Perfect services.

Restoring Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos

➤ **To restore the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders to the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer:**

1. Copy the designs from the backup source into the Designs folder on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the backup source into the Graphics folder on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the backup source into the Images folder on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the backup source into the Signature folder on the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer.

Chapter 14: Backing Up and Restoring Data to an Enterprise Server

This chapter provides information for system administrators to archive, back up, and restore the Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise system.



In this chapter:

[“Overview” on page 14.2](#)

[“Enterprise System Recovery Checklist” on page 14.2](#)

[“Backing Up” on page 14.3](#)

[“Restoring” on page 14.11](#)

[“Reclaiming Hard Drive Space” on page 14.19](#)

Overview

What's the difference between archiving and backing up?

- **Archiving** creates a copy of the latest history transactions. You will still need to back up the archive file in order to maintain a copy. Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help or the *Secure Perfect 6.1 Administrator's Manual* on CD for details of this function.
- **Backing up** creates a copy of selected data, such as a database or archive, and stores it either on the computer or on another media, such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder.

Enterprise System Recovery Checklist

If your system or hard drive crashes, your database may be determined to be beyond repair. Follow a sequence of steps to recover your system. See [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Recovery” on page 14.2.](#)

Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Recovery

- **To assist you in recovering your Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise system, refer to this checklist. Complete the steps in the order they are listed here.**

- ☐ Install Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server operating system. Install applicable operating system service packs. (Refer to [“Preparing the Operating System” on page 3.6.](#))
- ☐ Install SQL Server 2000. (Refer to [“Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2000” on page 3.10.](#))
- ☐ Install Secure Perfect 6.1 software from the CD. (Refer to [“Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Edition Server Software” on page 5.1.](#))
- ☐ Using SQL Server Enterprise Manager, restore the three Secure Perfect 6.1 databases from your backup media (SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectHistory, and SecurePerfectArchive). (Refer to appropriate section of this chapter.)

- ☐ Restore the Images, Signature, Graphics, Designs, and Video folders from your backup media to the appropriate folders. (Refer to the appropriate section of this chapter.)
- ☐ If restoring to a different Server computer with a different server name, you will need to run a script to reset the database security. Refer to [“Changing the Secure Perfect Server Computer Name” on page 11.7](#). Follow the steps in the order they are listed.
- ☐ Run the licensing program, Secure Perfect 6.1 License, and enter your 35-character license key string. (Refer to [“Licensing the Secure Perfect System” on page 10.1](#).)
- ☐ Reboot the computer.

Backing Up

A backup is a copy of selected data. Since Secure Perfect 6.1 does not contain a backup option, you can use any method you like to back up the data.

***Note:** Using SQL Server Enterprise Manager, backups can be scheduled so that you do not have to remember to back up your databases.*

You should keep two backups of the Server computer, as follows:

1. Secure Perfect 6.1 data to include the following:
 - **SecurePerfect Database**
Contains configuration data, such as badges and micros. Your backup will be performed using Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Manager. Refer to [“Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfect Database” on page 14.5](#).
 - **SecurePerfectArchive Database**
Contains copies of Secure Perfect 6.1 history data based on archive period. Your backup will be performed using Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Manager. Refer to [“Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive” on page 14.7](#).

- **SecurePerfectHistory Database**

Contains current history including badge transactions and operator history. Your backup will be performed using Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Enterprise Manager. Refer to [“Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory” on page 14.8.](#)

- **Externals**

A shared empty folder created to store reports created by third party report generators.

- **Images**

Contains the picture files of badge holders. The Images folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Signatures**

Contains the signature files of badge holders. The Signature folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Graphics**

Will only need to be backed up if you are using Alarm Graphics. Contains the alarm graphics maps. The Graphics folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Designs**

Will only need to be backed up if you have Imaging installed. Contains the badge design files. The Designs folder is located in the Secure Perfect folder.

- **Video**

A shared folder that contains captured video files.

You should back up this data more often since it changes so frequently. While your internal policies may dictate your backup requirements, we recommend that you create a backup at least every week.

2. Entire Secure Perfect 6.1 installation.

The entire Secure Perfect 6.1 folder should be backed up when you first set up the system and have confirmed that it is working, and any time you upgrade. It is very important that you also back up the registry settings. In most backup programs, you will be prompted to back up these settings.

Note: *ALWAYS MAINTAIN A CURRENT BACKUP. Should you have any problems with your system, you can always restore your backup. This includes your database as well as your files.*

Backing Up the Entire Secure Perfect Folder

1. If you purchased your system from GE, then your system contains a CD-RW drive acceptable for backup purposes. It is recommended that you do a backup of the entire Secure Perfect folder.
2. In Microsoft Windows Explorer, navigate to the Secure Perfect program folder.
3. Copy the Secure Perfect folder to your backup media.

Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfect Database

The SP 6.1 **SecurePerfect** database contains configuration data, such as badges and micros. It should be backed up on a continual basis since the information may change frequently.

► **Before you back up your SP 6.1 SecurePerfect database:**

1. Verify that you have the correct permission level to access the database. We recommend logging on as Administrator 'sa' or whatever the current Administrator login assigned at installation.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Managers** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL servers**.

3. Navigate to and open the Databases folder. This procedure may take several minutes.
4. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

Result: The shortcut menu displays.

Note: *Although there are other methods, we have included the following steps as a guide to assist you in performing one type of backup.*

➤ **To back up your SP 6.1 SecurePerfect database:**

1. Click **All tasks**, then **Backup database**.

Result: The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

2. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
3. Select the **Database - complete** option button.
4. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network. The two options are **Tape** or **Disk**.

5. Double-click the file name displayed in the **Backup to:** list box.

Result: The database name displays in the **Edit Backup Destination** file name window.

6. Edit the file path name as appropriate for the folder that you have created to receive the database. Do not change the database name. Click **OK**.
7. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data. We recommend that you append to the file.
8. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
9. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.

Result: A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.

Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive

***Note:** The SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive database contains copies of Secure Perfect 6.1 history data. It should be backed up on a continual basis since the information will change frequently based on your archive interval set on the Parameters Form. If the database is TOO LARGE, you may have to back up directly to electromagnetic storage tape. A tape can hold 20 to 40 gigabytes of storage.*

➤ **Before you begin to back up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Open the Databases folder.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectArchive** to display a shortcut menu.

➤ **To back up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive:**

1. Click **All tasks**, then **Backup database**.

Result: The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

2. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
3. Select **Database - complete**.
4. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. **If you back up to a file name, you MUST change the name of the file each time you back up or the file will be overwritten.**
5. Double-click the file name displayed in the **Backup to:** list box.

Result: The database name displays in the **Edit Backup Destination** file name window.

6. Edit the file path name as appropriate for the folder that you have created to receive the database. Do not change the database name. Click **OK**.
7. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
8. You can schedule the backup by clicking the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
9. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.

Result: A **Backup Progress** dialog box displays.

11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.

***Note:** The backup may take a long time to complete. As the size of your Secure Perfect 6.1 database increases, the required backup time increases. If the database is TOO LARGE, you may have to back up directly to electromagnetic storage tape. A tape can hold 20 to 40 gigabytes of storage.*

Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory

The Secure Perfect 6.1 history database contains current history including badge transactions, alarm transactions, and operator history. It should be backed up on a continual basis since the information may change frequently.

► **Before you begin to back up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.

2. Open the Databases folder.
 3. Right-click **SecurePerfectHistory** to display a shortcut menu.
- **To back up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory:**
1. Click **All tasks**, then **Backup database**.
Result: The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.
 2. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
 3. Select **Database - complete**.
 4. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network. The available options are **Tape** or **Disk**.
 5. Double-click the file name displayed in the **Backup to:** list box.
Result: The database name displays in the **Edit Backup Destination** file name window.
 6. Edit the file path name as appropriate for the folder that you have created to receive the database. Do not change the database name. Click **OK**.
 7. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
 8. You can schedule the backup by clicking the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
 9. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
 10. Click **OK** to start the backup.
Result: A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.
12. If all backups were created successfully, close the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

Backing Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos

Backing up creates a copy of selected data. You can use any backup program you want and any media such as tape, zip disks, CD, or a network folder. The size of the files in the folder you want to back up will be a determining factor of which media to use.

If you purchased your system from GE, then your system contains a tape drive. Refer to the section below for details on using this tape drive for backup purposes.

Backing Up the Secure Perfect Folder

If you purchased your system from GE, then your system may contain a tape drive, depending on when the purchase was made. The instructions for using this tape drive are listed below.

➤ **To back up to the tape drive on the Windows 2000 Server computer:**

1. Insert the tape to which you want to back up.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Accessories, System Tool**, then **Backup**.
Result: Welcome to Win2000 Backup and Recovery Tools will display.
3. Click **Backup Wizard**, then click **Next**.
4. In the **What to Back Up** window, select the appropriate category of items to back up, then click **Next**.
5. Navigate to c:\Program Files\GE Interlogix\Secure Perfect. Select the folder to back up. Click **Next**.

Result: The **Where to Store the Backup** window displays.

6. Select the **Backup media type** and **Backup media or file name** and click **Next**.

Result: Completing the Backup Wizard window displays.

7. Click **Finish**.

Restoring

How you restore depends on how you backed up the system. What you should restore is detailed below.

1. Restoring your **SecurePerfectArchive** will happen more frequently than other restores in order to run reports.
2. Restoring your **SecurePerfect** database and **SecurePerfectHistory** should ONLY be done if you are having problems with your system.

Restoring Secure Perfect 6.1 SecurePerfect Database

You should restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfect database backup ONLY if you have problems with your **Secure Perfect 6.1** system and all other attempts to correct the system have failed.

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

➤ **Before you restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfect database backup:**

1. Verify that all Secure Perfect 6.1 network clients other than the Server computer have logged off and that the Secure Perfect 6.1 services are shut down.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
3. Open the Databases folder.
4. Select, then right-click **SecurePerfect** to display the shortcut menu.
5. From the drop-down menu, select **Delete**.

Result: You will be asked to confirm the delete.

6. Click **Yes**.

➤ **To restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfect database backup:**

***Note:** Although there are other ways, our instructions are for one example to perform a restore.*

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.

Result: The **Restore database** window displays.

2. In the **Restore as database:** field, type `SecurePerfect`.
3. In the **Restore** category, select **From device**.
4. In the **Parameters** section of the window, click **Select Devices**.

Result: The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.

5. In the **Restore from** area, select **Disk** and click **Add**.

Result: The **Choose Restore Destination** window displays.

6. Select **File name**, click **Browse**, and navigate to where the backup file is stored. When the path and file name display in the **File name** window, click **OK** in the **Backup Device Location**.

7. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Destination** window.

8. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Devices** window. Click **OK** to begin the restore process.

Result: The **Restore Progress** dialog displays.

9. Upon completion, you should receive a message stating that the restore was successful.

10. Click **OK**.

Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfect Database from Tape

► To restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfect database from tape:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
2. From **Enterprise Manager**, right-click **Databases, All tasks**, then **Restore database**.
3. Enter *SecurePerfect* or select from the drop-down list
4. At the **Restore:** category, select the **From device** option button.
5. In the **Parameters Devices** area, click **Select Devices**.

Result: The **SQL 2000 Choose Restore Devices** window displays:

6. Select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

Result: The tape drive displays as the default in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box.

7. On the **Restore Database** window, **Parameters** pane, verify that **Restore backup set** and **Database - complete** are selected. Click **OK** three times.

If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click **View Contents**. A list of files will display with the contents of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list.

If restoring to a different Server computer, you will need to run a script to reset the database security. Refer to [“Changing the Secure Perfect Server Computer Name” on page 11.7](#). Follow the steps in the order they are listed.

Result: An **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window will display stating, **Restore of database, ‘Secure Perfect’ completed successfully**. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive

You may need to restore backups of your archive more frequently in order to run reports on that data.

These restoration procedures are guidelines only. **Additional detailed information is located in the literature received with the SQL Server software and Online Help.**

➤ **Before you restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive backup:**

1. Verify that all Secure Perfect 6.1 network clients other than the Enterprise Server computer have logged off and that the Secure Perfect 6.1 services are shut down.
2. Back up your current archive. See [“Backing Up SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive” on page 14.7.](#)
3. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.
4. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
5. Navigate to the Databases folder.
6. In the **Databases** folder, right-click **SecurePerfectArchive** to display the shortcut menu.

➤ **To restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive backup:**

1. Select **All tasks**, then **Restore database**.
Result: The SQL Server Manager window displays. The **Restore Database** dialog box should be displayed. If not, select it.
2. In the **Restore** area, select the **Database** option.
3. In the **Show backups of database** area, select **SecurePerfectArchive** from the drop-down list.

4. To find the backup file:
 - If the backup file is located on the hard drive, in the **First backup to restore** field, select the backup you would like to restore.
 - If you are not able to locate the desired backup on the drop-down list, select **From Device**, click **Select Devices**, then **Add** and navigate to the backup file.
 - If the backup file is on another computer in your network, create a folder on your computer, then move the file to your Secure Perfect 6.1 computer into the newly created folder.

The one file to be restored should look similar to:
c:\Microsoft SQL Server\BACKUP\SecurePerfect Archive-db-200007140007.BAK

5. Click **OK**.

Result: The **Restore Progress** dialog displays.

6. Upon completion, a dialog box displays with a message stating the database was restored successfully.
7. Click **OK**.

Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive from Tape - SQL 2000

► In SQL 2000, to restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfectArchive from tape:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. From **Enterprise Manager**, expand **Microsoft SQL Servers**, then **SQL Server Group**, then your specific server, then the Databases folder.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectArchive**. From the shortcut menu, select **All tasks**, then **Restore database**.

Result: The **Restore database** window displays.

4. Select from the drop-down list or type in the name of the database you want to restore.

5. At the **Restore:** area, select the **From device** option button.
6. In the **Parameters Devices** area, click **Select Devices**.

Result: The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.

7. Select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

Result: The tape drive displays as the default option in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box. Verify the accuracy of the tape.

8. Click **OK** three times.

***Note:** If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click **View Contents**. A list of files will display with the contents of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list.*

Result: A **Restore Progress** window will appear.

9. Click **OK**.

Result: An **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window will display stating, **Restore of database, 'Secure Perfect Archive' completed successfully**. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory

You should restore the Secure Perfect 6.1 history backup **ONLY** if you have problems with your Secure Perfect 6.1 system and all other attempts to correct the system have failed.

***Note:** These restore procedures are guidelines only.*

► Before you begin to restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory backup:

1. Perform a backup of your **SecurePerfectHistory** file.
2. Verify that all Secure Perfect 6.1 network clients and the Enterprise Server computer have logged off. Shut down the Secure Perfect 6.1 services on the clients and Server computer.

3. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
 4. Open the **Databases** folder. Select, then right-click **SecurePerfectHistory** to display the shortcut menu.
 5. From the drop-down menu, select **Delete**.
Result: You will be asked to confirm the delete.
 6. Click **Yes**.
- **To restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory backup:**
1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.
 2. The **Restore database** window displays.
 3. In the **Restore as database:** field, type **SecurePerfectHistory**.
 4. In the **Restore** area, select **From device**.
 5. In the **Parameters** group box, click **Select Devices**.
Result: The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.
 6. In the **Restore from** area, select **Disk** and click **Add**.
Result: The **Choose Restore Destination** window displays.
 7. Select **File name**, click **Browse**, and navigate to where the backup file is stored. When the path and file name display in the **File name** window, click **OK** to close the **Backup Device Location** window.
 8. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Destination** window.
 9. We recommend that you select the **Options** tab, then select **Verify backup upon completion** option to guarantee that you perform a good backup.

10. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Devices** window. Click **OK** to begin the restore process.

Result: The **Restore Progress** dialog displays.

11. Upon completion, you should receive a message stating **Restore of database 'SecurePerfectHistory' completed successfully**.
12. Click **OK**.

Restoring SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory from Tape

► To restore the SP 6.1 SecurePerfectHistory from tape:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. From **Enterprise Manager**, right-click **Databases**, **All tasks**, then **Restore database**.

Result: The **SQL 2000 Restore Database** window displays.

3. Select or type in the name of the database you want to restore.
4. At the **Restore:** category, select the **From device** option button.
5. In the **Parameters Devices** area, click **Select Devices**.
6. Select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

Result: The tape drive displays as the default option in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box. Verify that it is the appropriate tape.

7. Click **OK** three times.

***Note:** If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click "View Contents." An additional window displays, listing the file content of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list, then click OK.*

Result: An **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window will display stating, **Restore of database, 'Secure Perfect Archive' completed**

successfully. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

Restoring the Secure Perfect Folder

If you purchased your system from GE, then your system may have a tape drive. The instructions for using this tape drive are listed below.

➤ **To restore from the tape drive on the Server computer:**

1. Insert the tape you want to restore.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Accessories, System Tools**, then **Backup**.

Result: **Welcome to the Win2000 Backup and Recovery Tools** window displays.

3. Click **Restore Wizard**.

Result: The **Restore Wizard** window displays.

4. Click **Next**.
5. In the **What to Restore** window, select the files to restore, then click **Next**. If you are unsure of files in the Secure Perfect 6.1 folder, the files are listed in [“Server Folder Structure” on page 5.74](#).
6. When prompted, click **Finish**.

Reclaiming Hard Drive Space

In time, you will notice that the database continues to use more and more hard drive space. Some of this space can be reclaimed by shrinking the database.

At times, the amount of space reclaimed may be small; sometimes, the results may be quite dramatic. The results will vary depending on your setup and the amount of activity of your system.

Shrinking the Database

► **To set the database to shrink:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. In the **Enterprise Manager**, expand the **Databases** folder and click to select the database you want to shrink: **SecurePerfect**, **SecurePerfectHistory**, or **SecurePerfectArchive**.
3. Right-click the selected database file. From the shortcut menu, select **All Tasks**, then **Shrink Database**.
4. Leave the defaults and click **OK**. You may want to set up a schedule by selecting the **Schedule** check box. If you set up a schedule, make sure there are no conflicts.
5. Leave the default settings and click **OK**.

Result: The process of shrinking the database may take an extended period of time, depending on the size of the database. The **Enterprise Manager** may stop responding. That is not a problem. Your system and database operations will continue normally.

Other Maintenance Options

SQL Server 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard

At this point you might want to run the **SQL 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard** to set up scheduled maintenance operations for the three databases. The following settings are suggested for the **SecurePerfect**, **SecurePerfectHistory**, and **SecurePerfectArchive** and master databases.

***Note:** Refer to Microsoft SQL Server Online Help and books for details to set up a maintenance plan. The following are general guidelines only.*

► **Before you begin the SQL 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.

2. Navigate to the database on which you want to run maintenance, select, then right-click to display the shortcut menu.
 3. Select **All Tasks**, then **Maintenance Plan**.
- **To run the SQL 2000 Maintenance Plan Wizard:**
1. When the **Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays, select the **Reorganize Data and Index Pages** check box. Then select **Change free Space Per Page Percentage to**. You may leave the default setting of 10, although you may need to increase it in the future.
 2. Select **Remove Unused space from Database Files** check box. You may accept the defaults, but as the database grows you may need to change these.
 3. Set your backup schedule by clicking **Change**.
 4. Click **OK**, then **Next**.
 5. Select **Check Database integrity**, then **Attempt to repair any minor problems**. (The default selection is **Exclude indexes**.) Then select **Perform These Checks Before doing the Backups**.

***Note:** The plan can be scheduled but remember to check if the plan conflicts with any other job you have set up.*

6. Click **Next**.
7. Continue to answer the prompts in the windows of the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** according to your backup location, media and strategy. When you have completed the selections on the final window, click **Finish**.

Clear TempDB log and Shrink Archive

There are two database maintenance jobs associated with Secure Perfect 6.1.

1. The **Clear TempDB log** job empties the TEMPDB log file. TEMPDB log needs to empty because the `badgehistory` and `alarmhistory` report process creates large temporary tables that consume excessive

amounts of hard drive space. This job runs every six hours beginning at 12:00 A.M.

2. The **Shrink Archive** job empties the SecurePerfectArchive log. This is done to control the size of the SecurePerfectArchive database.

➤ **To adjust or modify an existing job schedule:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Expand the Servers folder to locate and expand your server folder.
3. Select **Management, SQL Server Agent**, then **Jobs**.

Result: A list of jobs displays.

4. Right-click the job you want to modify and select **Properties** on the shortcut menu.

Result: The **New Job Schedule** window displays.

5. Select the **Schedules** tab and click **New Schedule**.
6. Rename, then set options.
7. Click **OK**.

Chapter 15: Uninstalling Secure Perfect or Deleting a Database

This chapter outlines instructions for removal of software and deleting a database.



In this chapter:

[“Uninstalling Secure Perfect 6.1 Software” on page 15.2](#)

[“Deleting the Database” on page 15.6](#)

[“Removing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition” on page 15.8](#)

[“Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine \(MSDE\) - Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional” on page 15.9](#)

Uninstalling Secure Perfect 6.1 Software

Before You Begin

Before you uninstall Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.
- All Secure Perfect services are stopped. (Secure Perfect Manager, Secure Perfect System Manager, and Secure Perfect Diagnostics). Refer to [“Secure Perfect 6.1 Services Overview” on page 11.2.](#)

Uninstalling

► To uninstall Secure Perfect 6.1:

1. Log on as someone with administrative privileges other than `secure`, such as `administrator`.
2. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
3. From the list of currently installed programs that display, select **Secure Perfect**.
4. Click **Change**. The **Remove** button is unavailable.

Result: The **Application Maintenance** window displays.

5. Click **Next**.

Result: An additional uninstall window displays as in [Figure 15-1 on page 15.3.](#)

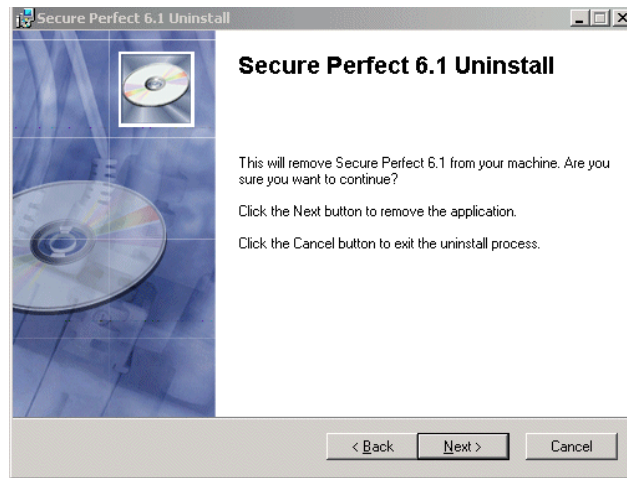


Figure 15-1. Uninstall Secure Perfect

6. Click **Next**.
7. Uninstall begins and a status bar indicates the uninstall progress. Once the uninstall begins, the **Cancel** button is unavailable.
8. When uninstall is complete, click **Finish**, then exit the **Add/Remove Programs** window and the **Control Panel**.

The database and log files are NOT removed during the uninstall of Secure Perfect 6.1 on the Server computer.

► **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), do the following:**

1. Press Ctrl-Alt-Delete.
Result: The Windows **Security Dialog** displays.
2. Click **Task Manager**.
3. At the **Task Manager** window, **Perform Uninstall** will display a status of **Not Responding**.

4. Select the line **Perform Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
5. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.

Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall

You may encounter problems while uninstalling from a Server computer. Sometimes, this results in an incomplete uninstall which means miscellaneous files are left behind. If you did encounter problems, the sections that follow detail some troubleshooting steps to assist you in troubleshooting your uninstall. The first step is to verify that Secure Perfect uninstalled cleanly. Refer to [“Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly” on page 15.4](#).

Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly

Check the Secure Perfect folder and verify that the Database and Logs folders are the only items left.

► **To verify a Secure Perfect uninstall:**

1. Go to Windows Explorer and navigate to your Secure Perfect folder.
2. You should see the Database and Logs folders only. If you see any other files, select them and click **Delete**.
3. Next, continue with [“Deleting Subkeys from the Registry”](#).

Deleting Subkeys from the Registry



Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require you to re-install your operating system. Neither GE nor Microsoft guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk!

► **To delete the GE Interlogix subkey from the registry:**

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. At the **Run** window, enter: `regedit`

3. Click **OK**.
4. Locate the **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE** key.
5. Double-click the **SOFTWARE** icon to expand the folder tree.
6. If you have a **GE Interlogix** key, select in the Registry, and click **Delete**.
 - If you have a problem deleting the GE Interlogix key, you may need to change the registry permission. Refer to [“If you have a GE Interlogix key and need to change permission for the registry:”](#).
 - If you do not have a GE Interlogix key, this is an indication that the deletion proceeded well. Continue with step 8.

Result: You will be asked to confirm the deletion.

7. Click **Yes**.
8. From the main menu, select **Registry**, then **Exit**.
9. Reboot your computer at this time.

► **If you have a GE Interlogix key and need to change permission for the registry:**



Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require you to re-install your operating system. Neither GE nor Microsoft guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk!

1. Click **Start**, then **Run**.
2. At the **Run** window, enter: `regedt32`
3. Click **OK**.
4. Locate the **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE** key.
5. Double-click the **SOFTWARE** icon to expand the folder tree.
6. Select **GE Interlogix**.

***Note:** If GE Interlogix is not there, do not proceed. Check with your Information Systems Department.*

Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation

7. From the main menu, select **Security**, then **Permissions**.
8. Click **Add**.
9. At the **Select Users or Groups** window, locate and select **SPAdmin**.
10. Click **Add**.
11. Click **OK**.
12. Select the **Allow inheritable permissions from parent to propagate to this object** check box.
13. In the **Permissions** portion of the **Security** window, select **Allow** for **Full Control**. Click **Apply**, then click **OK**.
14. Click **OK**.
15. From the main menu, select **Registry**, then **Exit**.

Deleting the Database



The following steps cannot be done if you have already uninstalled Microsoft SQL Server or Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) software.

Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Server

As we have mentioned earlier, the database is NOT removed when you uninstall Secure Perfect from the Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Server computer.



Make a backup of your database BEFORE performing these steps!

➤ **To delete the database from the Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Server:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Locate and open the Databases folder. This may take a few minutes.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfectHistory** to display the shortcut menu.
4. At the menu, select **Delete**.
5. Right-click **SecurePerfectArchive** to display the shortcut menu.
6. Select **Delete**.
7. Right-click **SecurePerfect** to display the shortcut menu.
8. Select **Delete**.
9. From the SQL Server Enterprise Manager main menu, select **Console**, then **Exit**.

Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Server



Make a backup of your database BEFORE performing these steps!

➤ **To delete the database from the Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional Server computer:**

1. Select the **Tools** menu, **Database Utilities, Drop SQL Database** feature of Microsoft Access 2002, if installed. Refer to Microsoft Access 2002 Online Help for additional information.

OR

1. Uninstall Microsoft Desktop Engine (MSDE). Refer to [“Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine \(MSDE\) - Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional”](#) on page 15.9.
2. In Windows Explorer, delete all files from the **Secure Perfect/Database** folder.

Removing Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition



Removing Microsoft SQL Server will delete all Secure Perfect databases.

- **If you are required to remove Microsoft SQL Server software due to file corruption beyond recovery, you will need to perform the following:**
 1. Stop SQL Server services. Refer to [“Setting SQL Server Agent Service Properties Through Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 3.14.
 2. Stop any applications that are currently using SQL Server software.
 3. Back up your database files. See [“Backing Up”](#) on page 14.3.
- **To uninstall Microsoft SQL Server software:**
 1. Click **Start**, select **Settings, Control Panel**, and then **Add/Remove Programs**.
 2. On the **Add/Remove Program Properties** page, select **Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (SPSQL)**.
 3. Click **Change/remove**.
 4. You will receive a **Confirm File Deletion** popup window asking: **Do you want to completely remove the selected application and all of its components?** Click **OK**.
 5. You are returned to the **Add/Remove Programs** window. Your system reboots at this time.

6. Log on and start Windows Explorer. Navigate to the Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server folder, select, and delete. If it exists, select the MSSQL\$SPSQL folder and delete.
7. Exit Windows Explorer and click **Start**, then **Run**. At the **Run** window, enter `regedit` and click **OK**.
8. In the **Registry Editor** window, locate and expand the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft` key.
9. Locate, select, and delete the following keys:

 Microsoft SQL Server

 MSSQLServer
10. Exit **Registry Editor**.
11. Reboot the Server computer.

Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) - Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional

***Note:** Removing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) does not delete Secure Perfect 6.1 databases; however, the database files are not accessible because the engine to access and control the database will be removed.*

➤ **Before you remove MSDE:**

1. Stop any applications that are currently using SQL Server software.
2. Back up your database files using the **Maintenance** utility. Click **Start**, **Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

***Note:** Secure Perfect 6.1 Professional databases will need to be restored after the re-install of MSDE.*

➤ **To remove Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) software:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
2. Select **Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine (SPSQL)** from the **Currently Installed Programs** list, verify that you want to delete, and click **Remove**.

Result: A progress bar displays during the uninstall.

3. When the uninstall process completes, exit the Control Panel and start Windows Explorer. Navigate to your hard drive, typically, C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server folder, select, and delete. If it exists, select the Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\$SPSQL folder and delete.
4. Exit Windows Explorer and click **Start**, then **Run**. At the **Run** window, enter `regedit` and click **OK**.

Result: Registry Editor opens.



Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require you to re-install your operating system. Neither GE nor Microsoft guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk!

5. In the **Registry Editor** window, locate and expand the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft` key.
6. Locate, select, and delete the following keys:
Microsoft SQL Server
MSSQLServer
7. Exit **Registry Editor**.
8. Reboot the Server computer.

Chapter 16: Upgrading Your 6.0 System to Secure Perfect 6.1

This chapter outlines the steps to convert your database and upgrade your Version 6.0 system to Secure Perfect 6.1.



In this chapter:

[“Upgrading Versions Prior to Secure Perfect 6.0” on page 16.2](#)

[“Upgrading Secure Perfect Global Edition Computers” on page 16.2](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1 - PROFESSIONAL SERVERS ONLY” on page 16.2](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1 - ENTERPRISE SERVERS ONLY” on page 16.21](#)

[“Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1 - CUSTOM SPLIT INSTALLATION” on page 16.44](#)

[“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#)

[“Upgrade Configuration Notes - Ensuring Success” on page 16.56](#)

Upgrading Versions Prior to Secure Perfect 6.0

Note: *Upgrading from previous versions earlier than Secure Perfect 6.0 is NOT covered in this manual.*

- If you are upgrading from Secure Perfect versions earlier than Version 3.1, GE does not provide you with the media. For a nominal fee, GE provides a service for converting these earlier versions.
- If you are upgrading from versions 3.1, 4.0, or 5.0, you will require a copy of *Secure Perfect Upgrades: Versions 3.1, 4.0, and 5.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1* to complete your upgrade process. This document is provided on the Documentation CD shipped with your Secure Perfect system.

Upgrading Secure Perfect Global Edition Computers

This chapter does not cover upgrading a Secure Perfect Global Edition Database Server or Regional Database Server. Refer to the appropriate section for your upgrade:

- “Upgrading a Global Edition Global Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1” on page 8.16
- “Upgrading a Global Edition Regional Database Server from SP 6.0 to SP 6.1” on page 8.26
- “Adding Additional Clients to the Database” on page 8.38

Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1 - PROFESSIONAL SERVERS ONLY

The SP 6.1 Professional Server computer runs on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional Server. Client computers can run on Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional, in addition to Windows 2000 Standard or Advanced and Windows 2003 Standard Edition Server.

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

You may follow one of two scenarios when converting to SP 6.1:

***Note:** If your SP 6.1 Server computer will be the same computer as your existing Secure Perfect system, refer to Scenario 1. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.1 Server computer.*

Scenario 1: The existing SP 6.0 computer will become the SP 6.1 Server computer.

Scenario 1 begins on [page 16.3](#).

***Note:** If you plan on using a new or different computer for your SP 6.1 Server, refer to Scenario 2. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.1 Server computer.*

Scenario 2: The SP 6.1 Server computer will be a different computer than the existing SP 6.0 computer.

Scenario 2 begins on [page 16.10](#).

Scenario 1 - Same Computer

If your SP 6.1 Server computer will be the same computer as your existing SP 6.0 system, then follow the instructions in this section.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using the same computer:**

***Note:** To perform the upgrade, log on as a user with administrative rights, such as administrator.*

[Before You Begin \(page 16.4\)](#)

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 16.4\)](#)

2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 \(page 16.4\)](#)
3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 16.5\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases \(page 16.5\)](#)
5. [Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System \(page 16.7\)](#)
6. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 16.8\)](#)
7. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 16.10\)](#)
8. [Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code \(page 16.10\)](#)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.1. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 6.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

► To stop services on the SP 6.0 Server computer and all clients:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three Secure Perfect services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
 - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the Diagnostic service will stop the Manager and System Manager as well if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.
- Result:** The **Status** columns should now be blank.
4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
 5. Exit the **Services** application.

3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Images, Graphics, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility which is explained in the next step. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos will need to be restored after SP 6.1 is installed.

4. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.*

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect database:**

1. Create a folder on your system where the backup files will be stored.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Backup & Restore SP Databases**.

If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: Maintenance.exe

Result: A **Maintenance** window displays.

3. Click **Backup**.

Result: A **Maintenance - [Backup]** destination window displays.

4. Accept the default **Login** of 'sa' and enter the **Password** for sa. If you have not already done so, we strongly suggest that you assign a unique password of your choice.
5. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files will be stored. Double-click to open the **Destination** folder.
6. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop the destination folder onto each of the fields:
 - SecurePerfect
 - SecurePerfectArchive
 - SecurePerfectHistory

Result: The .BAK files in each field will be automatically named, to include the directory path, file name, date, and time.

7. If you choose not to back up any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is selected but no destination is entered in the database field, backup of that database file will not occur.
8. Click **Backup**.

Result: The backup process begins. When the backup is complete, a dialog box displays a message verifying the successful backup of the chosen databases.

9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the **Maintenance** window.

5. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System

► **To install the Secure Perfect 6.1 application and license your system:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in the appropriate Chapter for the Secure Perfect Edition you are installing. Some items to note:
 - If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
 - Secure Perfect 6.0 is automatically uninstalled. (See steps below.)
 - The **Ready to Install** window does not give you choice of destination folders.
 - The 'Create SP Database' utility automatically launches.

NOTE DURING DATABASE CONVERSION: During a conversion, if a database already exists:

- a. You must select the Secure Perfect edition that you want to install.*
- b. You are prompted for your SQL 'sa' password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.*
- c. A warning message displays stating that this application is currently operating with an earlier version of Secure Perfect. Click **Yes**, you want to convert.*
- d. A window displays your current Secure Perfect version. Click **Convert Database** to accept the required version and begin the database creation.*

- The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

➤ **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Ctrl-Alt-Delete**.
2. The **Windows Security** dialog displays.
3. Click **Task Manager**.
4. At the **Task Manager** window, **Install** will display a status of **Not Responding**.
5. Select the line **Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
6. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.
7. Once the steps above are completed, follow the instructions in the sections of this manual listed below:
 - “[Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall](#)” on page 15.4
 - “[Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly](#)” on page 15.4
 - “[Deleting Subkeys from the Registry](#)” on page 15.4
 - “[Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation](#)” on page 15.6 (if applicable)

6. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [7. “Upgrade Client Computers” on page 16.10](#).

2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).OR
 - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**
5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**
6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.

9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

7. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54.](#)

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

8. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code

Secure Perfect 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 6.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.

Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers

If your Server computer will be a different computer than your existing Secure Perfect computer, then follow the instructions in this section.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using a second computer:**

Before You Begin (page 16.11)

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords (page 16.11)
2. Set Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Server (page 16.12)
3. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server (page 16.12)
4. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder (page 16.13)
5. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server (page 16.14)
6. Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.1 Server (page 16.15)
7. Run Create SP Database (page 16.16)
8. License Your Secure Perfect 6.1 System (page 16.17)
9. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server (page 16.17)
10. Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number (page 16.18)
11. Upgrade Client Computers (page 16.19)
12. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code (page 16.20)
13. Uninstall SP 6.0 from Original Computer (page 16.20)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.1. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Set Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

➤ **To set up your Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer:**

1. Since your new SP 6.1 database Server computer will be a different computer than your current SP 6.0 computer, you will need to set it up now. This includes setting up:
 - Hardware (such as the monitor, network board, and Digi board, if one is used)
 - Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP Professional operating system
2. Install Secure Perfect 6.1. Follow instructions in the appropriate Chapter for the Secure Perfect Edition you are installing.
3. Return to this point and continue.

3. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or Secure Perfect as long as services are set to automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 6.0 computers.

➤ **To stop services on the 6.0 Server computer and all clients:**

1. Set all micros offline in Secure Perfect.
2. Shut down all client applications to ensure that any work in progress is saved.
3. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

4. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
- If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

5. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the Diagnostic service will stop the Manager and System Manager as well if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.

6. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
7. Exit the **Services** application.

4. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Databases using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility which is explained in the next step. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos will need to be restored after SP 6.1 is installed.

5. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.*

► **To back up the databases:**

1. Create a folder on your system where the backup files will be stored.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Backup & Restore SP Databases**.

If this utility is not found in the **Start** menu, then go to the Secure Perfect directory and double-click the file: Maintenance.exe

Result: A **Maintenance** window displays.

3. Click **Backup**.

Result: A **Maintenance - [Backup]** destination window displays.

4. Accept the default **Login** of sa. Enter the 'sa' password, if applicable. If you have not already done so, we strongly suggest that you assign a unique password of your choice.
5. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files will be stored. Double-click to open the **Destination** folder.
6. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop the destination folder onto each of the fields:
 - SecurePerfect
 - SecurePerfectArchive
 - SecurePerfectHistory

Result: The .BAK files in each field will be automatically named, to include the directory path, file name, date, and time.

7. If you choose not to back up any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is selected but no

destination is entered in the database field, backup of that database file will not occur.

8. Click **Backup**.

Result: The backup process begins. When backup is complete, a dialog box displays a message verifying the successful backup of the chosen databases.

9. Click **OK**.
10. Exit the **Maintenance** window.

6. Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases on Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

***Note:** When you are restoring the SP 6.0 database, you will replace the databases that were created during the SP 6.1 installation.*

► To restore a SP 6.0 database backup:

1. Verify that Secure Perfect 6.1 is installed on the destination computer.
2. Stop Secure Perfect 6.1 services.
3. Click **Start, Programs, Secure Perfect**, and then **SP Maintenance Utility**.

Result: A **Maintenance** window displays.

4. Click **Restore**.

Result: A **Maintenance - [Restore]** destination window displays.

5. Enter your 'sa' password.
6. Navigate to the drive and directory folder on your system where the backup files are presently stored. Double-click to open the folder.

7. Holding down the left mouse button, drag and drop from the **Backup Source File** area onto each of the fields:
 - SecurePerfect
 - SecurePerfectArchive
 - SecurePerfectHistory
 8. If you choose not to restore any of the three databases, clear the check box at the end of that field. If the check box is checked, but no destination is entered, the restoration will not occur.
 9. Click **Restore**.

Result: The message **Did you turn off the Secure Perfect Services?** displays.
 10. Click **Yes**.

Result: The restoration process begins. When restoration is complete, a dialog box displays a message, verifying the restoration of the chosen databases.
- Note:** The restoration message includes text advising that you must license your Secure Perfect 6.1 system.*
11. Click **OK**.
 12. Exit **Restore**. The database restoration is complete.

7. Run Create SP Database



*The database Server computer **MUST** be the computer on which you run the database conversion.*

The 'Create SP Database' utility converts the SP 6.0 database format to SP 6.1 database format. During this process, the Database Integrity Tool also runs. This tool checks the integrity of your database.

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.*

➤ **To run ‘Create SP Database’ on your SP 6.1 Server computer:**

1. Click **Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Create SP Database**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

2. Select **Professional Edition** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Create/Convert Database** window displays.

3. Enter your ‘sa’ password.

4. Click **Create/Convert Database**.

Result: The popup **Do you wish to convert to the current version of Secure Perfect Database?** displays.

5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays.

6. Click **Convert Database**.

Result: A status bar displays the progress of the conversion. Upon completion, the message **Secure Perfect Database successfully converted!** displays.

7. Click **OK**.

8. License Your Secure Perfect 6.1 System

At this time, you must license SP 6.1. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

9. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

This step moves the SP 6.0 designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos to the Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer. Move only the contents of folders and not the folders themselves.

➤ **To restore designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 6.0 computer into the Designs folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 6.0 computer into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 6.0 computer into the Images folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 6.0 computer into the Signature folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
5. Copy the videos from the SP 6.0 computer into the Video folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.

10. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [11. “Upgrade Client Computers” on page 16.19.](#)
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

- Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**
 5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**
 6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
 7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
 8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
 9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
 10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

11. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to

the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

12. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code

Secure Perfect 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 6.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.

13. Uninstall SP 6.0 from Original Computer

Once SP 6.1 is installed, configured, and running on the new computer, you may uninstall SP 6.0 from the original computer.

► To uninstall SP 6.0:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
2. Click **Secure Perfect 6.0**. You may need to scroll down.
3. Click **Remove**.

Result: The message **Are you sure you want to remove Secure Perfect 6.0 from your computer?** displays.

4. Click **Yes**.

Result: The Secure Perfect 6.0 application will be removed.

Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1 - ENTERPRISE SERVERS ONLY

The Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Server computer runs on Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard operating system. Client computers run on Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server operating systems.

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

You may follow one of two scenarios when converting to SP 6.1:

***Note:** If your SP 6.1 Server computer will be the same computer as your existing Secure Perfect system, refer to Scenario 1. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.1 Server computer.*

Scenario 1: The existing SP 6.0 computer will become the SP 6.1 Server computer.

Scenario 1 begins on [page 16.21](#).

***Note:** If you plan on using a new or different computer for your SP 6.1 Server, refer to Scenario 2. Throughout this chapter, we refer to the new computer as the SP 6.1 Server computer.*

Scenario 2: The SP 6.1 Server computer will be a different computer than the existing SP 6.0 computer.

Scenario 2 begins on [page 16.31](#).

Scenario 1 - Same Computer

If your SP 6.1 Enterprise Server computer will be the same computer as your existing SP 6.0 system, then follow the instructions in this section.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these**

steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using the same computer:

[Before You Begin \(page 16.22\)](#)

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 16.22\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 16.23\)](#)
3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 16.24\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 16.24\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 16.26\)](#)
6. [Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases \(page 16.27\)](#)
7. [Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System \(page 16.27\)](#)
8. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 16.29\)](#)
9. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 16.30\)](#)
10. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 16.31\)](#)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.0. Before you upgrade, note the exact case used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 6.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 6.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

➤ **To stop services on the 6.0 Server computer and all clients:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
 - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.

4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
5. Exit the **Services** application.

3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility or Microsoft Enterprise Manager. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos will need to be restored after SP 6.1 is installed.

4. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 6.0 Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.1 Server computer.

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.*

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with [5. “OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard” on page 16.26](#).

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers**.

2. Navigate to and open the Databases folder. This procedure may take several minutes.

3. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect Shortcut** menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks**, then **Backup Database**.

Result: The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.

6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.

7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.

8. Double-click the file name displayed in the **Backup to:** list box.

Result: The database name displays in the **Edit Backup Destination** file name window.

9. Edit the file path name as appropriate for the folder that you have created to receive the database. Do not change the database name. Click **OK**.

10. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.

11. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.

12. Click **OK** to start the backup.

Result: A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.

13. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.

14. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.
15. Exit the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

5. OPTIONAL: Run *Database Maintenance Plan Wizard*

On your SP 6.0 Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

► **To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.
8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.
Result: The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.

13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** window. Click **Next**.
17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** window. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** window displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.

6. Back Up Clean Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases

If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the cleaned database files would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. [“Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 16.24.

7. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System

➤ To install the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in the Chapter that is appropriate for your operating system and Secure Perfect Edition.

Some items to note:

- If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
- Secure Perfect 6.0 is automatically uninstalled. (See steps below.)
- The ‘Create SP Database’ utility automatically launches. Note the following exceptions.

NOTE DURING DATABASE CONVERSION: *During a conversion, if a database already exists:*

- a. You must select the Secure Perfect edition that you want to install.*
- b. You are prompted for your SQL ‘sa’ password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you.*
- c. A warning message displays stating that this application is currently operating with an earlier version of Secure Perfect. Click **Yes**, you want to convert.*
- d. A window displays your current Secure Perfect version. Click **Convert Database** to accept the required version and begin the database creation.*

- The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

► **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Ctrl-Alt-Delete**.
2. The **Windows Security** dialog displays.
3. Click **Task Manager**.
4. At the **Task Manager** window, **Install** will display a status of **Not Responding**.
5. Select the line **Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
6. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.

7. Once the steps above are completed, follow the instructions in the sections of this manual listed below:
 - [“Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall” on page 15.4](#)
 - [“Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly” on page 15.4](#)
 - [“Deleting Subkeys from the Registry” on page 15.4](#)
 - [“Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation” on page 15.6](#) (if applicable)

8. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

► Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [9. “Upgrade Client Computers” on page 16.30.](#)
2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).OR
 - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.

4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.
8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

9. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

10. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

SP 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 6.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.

Scenario 2 - Using Two Computers

If your Server computer will be a different computer than your existing Secure Perfect computer, then follow the instructions in this section.

- **This scenario follows a specific sequence of steps. FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW. Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade using a second computer:**

[Before You Begin \(page 16.32\)](#)

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords \(page 16.32\)](#)
2. [Set Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Server \(page 16.32\)](#)
3. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server \(page 16.33\)](#)
4. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder \(page 16.34\)](#)
5. [Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 16.34\)](#)

6. [Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server \(page 16.36\)](#)
7. [Run Create SP Database \(page 16.40\)](#)
8. [License Your Secure Perfect 6.1 System \(page 16.41\)](#)
9. [Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server \(page 16.41\)](#)
10. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 16.41\)](#)
11. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 16.43\)](#)
12. [Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code \(page 16.43\)](#)
13. [Uninstall Secure Perfect 6.0 from Original Computer \(page 16.43\)](#)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.1. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Set Up Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

► To set up your SP 6.1 Server computer:

1. Since your new SP 6.1 database Server computer will be a different computer than your current SP 6.0 computer, you will need to set it up now. This includes setting up:
 - Hardware (such as the monitor, network board, and Digi board, if one is used)
 - Software

- Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server operating system
 - SQL Server 2000 with appropriate Service Pack (At this time, Service Pack 3a is required and auto installs with SP 6.1.)
2. Install Secure Perfect 6.1. Follow instructions in the appropriate Chapter for the Secure Perfect Edition you are installing.

***Note:** Exception during the installation process: DO NOT license at this time (as instructed in the sequence). You will license your system after the database is converted.*

3. Return to this point and continue.

3. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or Secure Perfect as long as services are set to automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 6.0 computers.

➤ **To stop services on the 6.0 Server computer and all clients:**

1. Set all micros offline in Secure Perfect.
2. Shut down all client applications to ensure that any work in progress is saved.
3. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

4. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
 - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
5. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.

6. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
7. Exit the **Services** application.

4. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Back up the Database folder using the Backup and Restore Maintenance Utility or Microsoft Enterprise Manager. Verify that your backups work correctly. All designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos will need to be restored after Secure Perfect 6.1 is installed.

5. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

***Note:** This scenario uses SQL Server Enterprise Manager to perform a backup. You can also perform a backup using the Secure Perfect Maintenance Utility.*

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 6.0 Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.1 Server computer.

Note: Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with [6. “Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server”](#) on page 16.36.

➤ **To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers**.

2. Navigate to and open the Databases folder. This procedure may take several minutes.
3. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect Shortcut** menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks**, then **Backup Database**.

Result: The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.
6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.
7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.

8. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.
9. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.

Result: A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.
11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.
12. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.
13. Exit the Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager application.

6. Restore Secure Perfect 6.0 Database to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

These restore procedures are guidelines only.

***Note:** When you are restoring the SP 6.0 database, you will replace the databases that were created during the SP 6.1 installation.*

If you are:

- NOT familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- FAMILIAR with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, restore the three databases and then proceed with [7. “Run Create SP Database” on page 16.40.](#)

➤ **To restore the SP 6.0 databases backup:**

1. Verify that all SP 6.1 network clients other than the Enterprise Server computer have logged off and that the SP 6.1 services are shut down.
2. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server, then Enterprise Manager**.
3. Navigate to <Server Name>SPSQL where <Server Name> is the name of the server computer.
4. Open the Databases folder for your Secure Perfect server.

The database was backed up using one of two options: disk or tape. Refer to the list below for the appropriate restore procedures.

- From disk, see [page 16.37](#).
- From tape, see [page 16.38](#).

Restoring from Disk

If the databases were backed up onto disk, follow the procedures below.

If the databases were backed up onto tape, refer to [page 16.38](#).

➤ **To restore the SP 6.0 database backup from disk:**

1. Click **SecurePerfect**.
2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.
Result: The **Restore database** window displays.
3. In the **Restore as database** field, verify that **SecurePerfect** displays.
4. In the **Restore** category, select **From device**.
5. On the **Parameters** pane, verify that **Restore backup set** and **Database - complete** are selected.
6. Click **Select Devices**.

Result: The **Choose Restore Devices** window displays.

7. In the **Restore from** area, select **Disk** and click **Add**.
Result: The **Choose Restore Destination** window displays.
8. Select **File name**, click **Browse**, and navigate to where the backup file is stored. When the path and file name display in the **File name** field, click **OK** in the **Backup Device Location** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Destination** window.
10. Click **OK** to close the **Choose Restore Devices** window.
11. Click **Options**.
12. Check **Force restore over existing databases**.
13. In the **Move to physical file name** field, confirm that the desired location for the database files is displayed. If the correct location does not display, enter the correct path by typing over the existing path.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **OK** to begin the restore process.
Result: The **Restore Progress** dialog displays. Upon completion, you should receive a message stating that the restore was successful. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.
16. Repeat steps 1 through 15 for the SecurePerfectArchive and SecurePerfectHistory databases.
17. Exit the Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager application.

At this time, go to [7. “Run Create SP Database” on page 16.40](#) to continue with the upgrade.

Restoring from Tape

If the databases were backed up onto tape, follow the procedures below.

➤ **To restore the SP 6.0 database from tape:**

1. Click **SecurePerfect**.
2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Restore Database**.
Result: The **Restore database** window displays.
3. In the **Restore as database** field, verify that **SecurePerfect** displays.
4. At the **Restore:** category, select the **From device** option button.
5. In the **Parameters Devices** area, verify that **Restore backup set** and **Database - complete** are selected.
6. Click **Select Devices**.
7. In the window that displays, select **Tape**, then click **Add**.

Result: The tape drive displays as the default in the **Choose Restore Destination** dialog box.

8. Click **OK** two times.

***Note:** If you get an error message or if you have multiple files to restore, click **View Contents**. A list of files will display with the contents of the tape. Select which file or files you want to restore from the list.*

Result: An **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** window will display stating, **Restore of database, 'Secure Perfect' completed successfully**. Depending on the size of your database, this can take from a few minutes to a few hours.

9. Repeat steps 1 through 8 for the **SecurePerfectArchive** and **SecurePerfectHistory** databases.
10. Exit the **Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager** application.

7. Run Create SP Database



*The database Server computer **MUST** be the computer on which you run the database conversion.*

The 'Create SP Database' utility converts the SP 6.0 database format to SP 6.1 database format. During this process, the Database Integrity Tool also runs. This tool checks the integrity of your database.

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.*

➤ **To run 'Create SP Database' on your Secure Perfect 6.1 Server computer:**

1. Click **Programs, Secure Perfect**, then **Create SP Database**.

Result: The **Select Secure Perfect Edition** window displays.

2. Select **Enterprise Edition** and click **Next**.

Result: The **Create/Convert Database** window displays.

3. Enter your sa password.

4. Click **Create/Convert Database**.

Result: The message **Do you wish to convert to the current version of Secure Perfect Database?** displays.

5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

Result: The **Convert Database** window displays.

6. Click **Convert Database**.

Result: A status bar displays the progress of the conversion. Upon completion, the message **Secure Perfect Database successfully converted!** displays.

7. Click **OK**.

8. License Your Secure Perfect 6.1 System

At this time, you must license SP 6.1. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

9. Restore Designs, Graphics, Images, Signatures, and Videos to Secure Perfect 6.1 Server

This step moves the SP 6.0 designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos to the SP 6.1 Server computer.

➤ **To restore designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos:**

1. Copy the designs from the SP 6.0 computer into the Designs folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
2. Copy the graphics from the SP 6.0 computer into the Graphics folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
3. Copy the images from the SP 6.0 computer into the Images folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
4. Copy the signatures from the SP 6.0 computer into the Signature folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.
5. Copy the videos from the SP 6.0 computer into the Video folder on the SP 6.1 Server computer.

10. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique

employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [11. “Upgrade Client Computers” on page 16.43.](#)

2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).

OR

 - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.

8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps 5 through 8.
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

11. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

12. Put Micros Online and Flash Application Code

SP 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 6.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.

13. Uninstall Secure Perfect 6.0 from Original Computer

Once SP 6.1 is installed, configured, and running on the new computer, you may uninstall SP 6.0 from the original computer.

➤ **To uninstall SP 6.0:**

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel**, then **Add/Remove Programs**.
2. Click **Secure Perfect 6.0**. You may need to scroll down.
3. Click **Remove**.

Result: The message **Are you sure you want to remove Secure Perfect 6.0 from your computer?** displays.

4. Click **Yes**.

Result: The SP 6.0 application will be removed.

Secure Perfect 6.0 to Secure Perfect 6.1 - CUSTOM SPLIT INSTALLATION

The Secure Perfect 6.1 Enterprise Server computer runs on Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server Standard operating system. Client computers run on Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server operating systems.

Since the split installation option allows you to install the three Secure Perfect components (Database Server, File Server, and Application) separately, the upgrade will need to proceed in the same order in which they were installed.

Note: *The steps below assume each application is on a separate computer. If you used only two, simply go to the computer where that component is located.*

After you have upgraded the Server computer, you will need to upgrade your client computers. This will be discussed following the Server upgrade, in [“Upgrading Client Computers” on page 16.54](#).

- **FOLLOW THESE STEPS IN THE ORDER PRESENTED BELOW.** Each one of these steps is explained in more detail in the sections that follow. To upgrade a custom split installation:

- **On the Secure Perfect Application:**

[Before You Begin \(page 16.46\)](#)

1. [Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords on the Application Computer \(page 16.46\)](#)
2. [Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server on the Application Computer \(page 16.46\)](#)

- **On the File Server:**

3. [Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer \(page 16.47\)](#)

- **On the Database Server:**

4. [Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager \(page 16.47\)](#)
5. [OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard \(page 16.49\)](#)

- **On All Computers:**

6. [Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System \(page 16.51\)](#)

- **On the Secure Perfect Application:**

7. [Activate Enable Unique & Required Employee Number \(page 16.52\)](#)

- **On Completion of the Upgrade:**

8. [Upgrade Client Computers \(page 16.54\)](#)
9. [Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code \(page 16.54\)](#)

Before You Begin

Before you upgrade Secure Perfect, make sure that:

- All clients are logged off and client services are stopped.
- All Secure Perfect applications, such as DiagView, are closed.

1. Note all Secure Perfect Operator Passwords on the Application Computer

Secure Perfect operator login passwords are case sensitive in SP 6.1. Before you upgrade, note the **exact case** used in all of your Secure Perfect operator login passwords.

2. Stop Secure Perfect Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Server on the Application Computer

The Secure Perfect services run regardless of whether anyone is logged into Windows or SP 6.0 as long as the services are set for automatic startup. In other words, if the computer is turned on, then the services are running.

To continue this upgrade, the services must be stopped on any SP 6.0 computers.



Shutting down the Secure Perfect services shuts down any clients currently connected to the Server without saving any work in progress!

➤ To stop services on the 6.0 Application computer and all clients:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three **Secure Perfect** services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
 - If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.
3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** services as well, if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.
 4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
 5. Exit the **Services** application.

3. Back Up Secure Perfect Folder on the File Server Computer

Everything in your existing SP 6.0 Secure Perfect folder except the Database folder should be backed up. This includes the Designs, Graphics, Images, and Signature folders. Use any backup program you want. **You should back up to an external media device such as a tape, zipdisk, CD, or a network folder. Verify that your backups work correctly.** All designs, graphics, images, signatures, and videos will need to be restored after SP 6.1 is installed.

4. Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager

***Note:** This scenario uses SQL Server Enterprise Manager to perform a backup. You can also perform a backup using the Secure Perfect Maintenance Utility.*

Back up the SecurePerfect, SecurePerfectArchive, and SecurePerfectHistory databases on your SP 6.0 Database Server computer. These databases will be restored onto the new SP 6.1 Database Server computer.

***Note:** Custom stored procedures or triggers added to the Secure Perfect databases need to be removed. You can re-create custom procedures or triggers after the conversion is complete.*

If you are:

- Not familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, use the instructions below.
- Familiar with Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager, back up the three databases and then continue with [5. “OPTIONAL: Run Database Maintenance Plan Wizard” on page 16.49.](#)

► **To back up your Secure Perfect databases using Microsoft SQL Enterprise Manager:**

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** opens to display the **Microsoft SQL Servers**.

2. Navigate to and open the **Databases** folder. This procedure may take several minutes.

3. Right-click **SecurePerfect**.

Result: The **SQL Server Enterprise Manager - Secure Perfect** Shortcut menu displays.

4. Click **All Tasks**, then **Backup Database**.

Result: The **SQL Server Backup** dialog box displays.

5. In the **Name** field, you can keep the default or choose a different name.

6. Select the **Database - complete** option button.

7. Under the **Destination**, you can choose either a file name or a device, such as a tape. (The first time you perform this function, you will be required to create the device by clicking **Add**.) We recommend that you select the device or a file on a network.

8. You may select either **Overwrite existing media** or **Append to media**. The latter option is useful when using a tape that can hold a large quantity of data.

9. You can schedule the backup by selecting the **Schedule** check box. The button with the three dots is now enabled, which allows you to edit the schedule. We recommend that you refer to the SQL Online Help for more information.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup.
Result: A **Backup Progress** dialog box will display.
11. When the **Backup operation has been completed successfully** window displays, click **OK**.
12. Repeat steps 3 through 11 for the other two databases: SecurePerfectHistory and SecurePerfectArchive.
13. Exit the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

5. OPTIONAL: Run *Database Maintenance Plan Wizard*

On your SP 6.0 Database Server computer, if the integrity of your database becomes questionable, you can run the **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard**, which will attempt to correct the suspect data and shrink the size of your database.

► To run the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard:

1. Click **Start, Programs, Microsoft SQL Server**, then **Enterprise Manager**.
2. Click **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Click **SQL Server Group**.
4. Click the name of your server.
5. Click **Databases**.
6. Navigate to each Secure Perfect database folder.
7. Select a database, then right-click.

8. Select **All Tasks** on the shortcut menu, then **Maintenance Plan**.
Result: The **Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** displays.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Select specific databases from the list on the **Select databases for which to create the maintenance plan**. Click **Next**.
11. Select **Update Data Optimization Information** options. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Check database integrity options** choices. Click **Next**.
13. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Database Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
14. Select the where and when options on the **Specify Backup Disk Directory**. Click **Next**.
15. Select the where and when options on the **Specify the Transaction Log Backup Plan** window. Click **Next**.
16. Select the where and when options on the **Reports to Generate** window. Click **Next**.
17. Specify how you want to store the maintenance plan records on the **Maintenance Plan History** window. Click **Next**.
18. When **Completing the Database Maintenance Plan Wizard** window displays, review your selections by scrolling through the list. Click **Finish** if you are satisfied with the selections you have made.
19. Exit the application.
20. If you elected to run the database maintenance plan wizard, a backup of the cleaned database files would be appropriate at this time. Refer to instructions in step 4. [“Back Up Secure Perfect 6.0 Databases Using Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager”](#) on page 16.47.

6. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 and License Your System

➤ **To install the Secure Perfect 6.1 application:**

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions.
2. Follow the instructions as listed in the appropriate Chapter for the Secure Perfect Edition that you are installing. Install in this order:
 - Database Server
 - File Server
 - Application

Some items to note:

- If SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a is not installed, the service pack installation will automatically run.
- Secure Perfect 6.0 is automatically uninstalled. (See steps below.)
- The 'Create SP Database' utility automatically launches.

NOTE DURING DATABASE CONVERSION: During a conversion, if a database already exists:

a. You must select the Secure Perfect edition that you want to install.

b. You are prompted for your SQL 'sa' password. (If you purchased your Secure Perfect 6.1 system from GE, a temporary password of master was assigned for you..)

*c. A warning message displays stating that this application is currently operating with an earlier version of Secure Perfect. Click **Yes**, you want to convert.*

*d. A window displays your current Secure Perfect version. Click **Convert Database** to accept the required version and begin the database creation.*

- The license application automatically launches. Follow the steps as detailed in [Chapter 10 - Licensing the Secure Perfect System](#).

***Note:** If the Application resides on the same computer as either the Database Server or File Server, DO NOT license the application until both the Database Server and File Server are installed and the database has been converted.*

➤ **If the uninstall does not proceed (hangs), follow the instructions below:**

1. Click **Ctrl-Alt-Delete**.
2. The **Windows Security** dialog displays.
3. Click **Task Manager**.
4. At the **Task Manager** window, **Install** will display a status of **Not Responding**.
5. Select the line **Uninstall** and click **End Task**.
6. At the next dialog, click **End Task** again.
7. Once the steps above are completed, follow the instructions in the sections of this manual listed below:
 - “[Verifying and Cleaning Up after an Uninstall](#)” on page 15.4
 - “[Verifying Secure Perfect Uninstalled Cleanly](#)” on page 15.4
 - “[Deleting Subkeys from the Registry](#)” on page 15.4
 - “[Windows 2000 Registry Permission Validation](#)” on page 15.6 (if applicable)

7. Activate *Enable Unique & Required Employee Number*

During the process of converting a database, the system checks for possible blank or duplicate employee numbers in the database.

➤ **Log on and open the Parameter Form to display the Settings tab:**

1. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is selected and unavailable, all converted Person records have unique employee numbers. All future Person records must have a unique

employee number before the record can be saved. Proceed to [8. "Upgrade Client Computers" on page 16.54.](#)

2. If the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box is NOT selected, this is an indication that duplicate or blank employee number records exist in the database.
3. At this time, you have the option to choose one of two preferences:
 - Do nothing and continue to allow blank or duplicate employee numbers in Person records (the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box remains clear).OR
 - Set a control that requires all Person records to have an entry in the **Employee number** field.
4. If you choose to require all Person records to have a unique employee number, select **Enable unique & required Employee Number** and click **Save**.

Result: A message displays informing you: **The Employee number field on the Person Form will be required and unique. Once this is enabled, it cannot be changed back. Do you want to continue with this change?**

5. Click **Yes**.

Result: A second message displays: **Could not enable unique and required Employee number. Duplicates already exist or field is empty in the database. Refer to the Diagnostic Logfile.**

6. Navigate to the logfile. The message in the logfile informs you that Secure Perfect generated a text file and placed the file in the Logs folder of the Secure Perfect Server computer.
7. Navigate to the Secure Perfect\Logs\DuplicateEmployeeNumbers.txt file, consult the list of duplicate or blank employee numbers, locate those Person records, and assign a unique employee number to each.

8. When all records on the .TXT file list have a unique employee number, return to the **Parameter Form**, select the **Enable unique & required Employee Number** check box, and **Save**.
9. If you cannot save and again receive additional messages, you must repeat the process, steps [5](#) through [8](#).
10. The selection to require all Person records to have a unique employee number cannot be reversed and all newly added Person records must have a unique employee number.

8. Upgrade Client Computers

Now that you have upgraded your Server computer, you will need to upgrade all networked client computers (those that are running as client to the database Server computer.) Refer to “[Upgrading Client Computers](#)”.

Once you have finished upgrading your client computer, you will need to identify and flash your micros with application code.

9. Put Micros Online and Flash Micros with Application Code

SP 6.1 software will communicate with micros flashed with 5.x firmware. All offline badge and alarm transactions will be uploaded to the Server after the conversion process and stored in the appropriate history table. Allow all the offline transactions to be processed **before** flashing micros to the 6.1 firmware to minimize data loss. The duration of time that the upload will take is dependent on the number of transactions stored and the length of time that the Server was not communicating with the micros. This might be a few minutes or several hours.

Refer to the Secure Perfect Online Help, Micro Utility Toolbar for instructions to flash your micros with eFlash.

Upgrading Client Computers

If you have networked computers running as Secure Perfect 6.0 clients, you will need to upgrade the client computers now. Secure Perfect 6.1 supports client computers running Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP

Professional, Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server. You may want to review your Secure Perfect 6.1 architecture for the options available.



You MUST have the Secure Perfect 6.1 Database Server computer set up and running before you attempt to install Secure Perfect 6.1 on the client computers!

The process of upgrading client computers observes a specific sequence of steps. Each step is detailed in the sections that follow.

1. “Stop Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Client Computer”
2. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 Software (page 16.56)

1. Stop Services on Secure Perfect 6.0 Client Computer

Before proceeding, the Secure Perfect services must be stopped.

► To stop services on the SP 6.0 client computer:

1. Click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, then **Services**.

Result: The **Services** window displays.

2. Locate the three Secure Perfect services:

Secure Perfect Diagnostics
Secure Perfect Manager
Secure Perfect System Manager

You will need to scroll down.

- If the **Status** columns are blank, then the services are not running and do not need to be stopped.
- If the **Status** columns display **Started**, then the services are running and need to be stopped.

3. Select **Secure Perfect Diagnostics** service and click **Stop**. Stopping the **Diagnostic** service will stop the **Manager** and **System Manager** as well if **Yes** is clicked on the **Stop Other Services Window**.

Result: The **Status** columns should now be blank.

4. If the Secure Perfect API service is running, stop that service now.
5. Exit the **Services** application.

2. Install Secure Perfect 6.1 Software

► To install Secure Perfect 6.1 software:

1. You **MUST** be logged in as the local administrator user. If not, log off and log back on as a user with these permissions.
2. Insert the Secure Perfect 6.1 CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. If using the typical installation procedure, review [Chapter 4 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 eZ or Professional Edition Server Software](#) and [Chapter 9 - Installing Secure Perfect 6.1 Software on Additional Clients](#). Then follow the instructions in the order as listed.

If taking advantage of the SP 6.1 features, review your selection of options for installing the Secure Perfect components.

4. Open and log on to the Secure Perfect 6.1 client program.

Upgrade Configuration Notes - Ensuring Success

Here are a few pointers for a most efficient transition to Secure Perfect 6.1:

- ☐ When your Secure Perfect 6.1 system is fully converted and upgraded, log on to the Secure Perfect application as one of your previously defined operators.
- ☐ If you need to change the host for each micro, you will need to change this assignment by taking the micros offline and selecting **Micro** from the **Device** menu, then completing the change on the **Micro Form**,

Micro Definition tab. Select a **Host Computer** from the drop-down list.

- ☐ If you are changing a Micro/5-PX to a Micro/5-PXN, follow these steps:
 1. Select **Devices**, then **Micro**. The **Micro Form** opens with the **Micro Definition** tab displayed.
 2. Click **Search** for a list of previously defined micros.
 3. From the list of records, select the micro that you are replacing with a Micro/5-PXN.
 4. Select the **Micro Type** as **Micro/5PXN**.
 5. Select **Connection type** from the drop-down list as either **Network** or **Network + Dial-up**.
 6. Change the **PC Name**, if applicable.
 7. On the **Port Settings** tab, enter the **IP Address** of your network micro.
 8. **Save** the micro record.
 9. Repeat steps 2 through 8 for all micros that will be replaced by a Micro/5-PXN CPU.
- ☐ Downstream micros do not require reconfiguration since they will automatically inherit the connection type and port settings from the head-of-line micro.
- ☐ If you need to reconfigure the layout of your system where you are breaking a line of micros and creating multiple head-of-line Micro/5-PXN micros, you must do the following:
 1. Change the **Micro Type** to **Micro/5PXN** and back to **Micro/5PX** so the Head of Line option becomes enabled.
 2. In the **Head of Line**, select **Yes**, then **Micro Type** as **Micro/5PXN**.

3. Select **Connection type** from the drop-down list as either **Network** or **Network + Dial-up**.

Save the micro record, then repeat steps 1 through 3 for each micro that requires a change in configuration.

Appendix A: UL Certification Requirements

This chapter provides a list of installation requirements necessary for a UL-listed Secure Perfect system.



In this appendix:

[“UL Specifications and Requirements” on page A.2](#)

UL Specifications and Requirements

Secure Perfect 6.1 is a UL-listed Grade A system (*UL 1076 Grade A Proprietary Burglary Requirements/UL 294 Access Control Requirements*). You must adhere to the following requirements in a UL-listed installation:

1. The computer and monitor shall be completely duplicated. Provision for switchover within 6 minutes is required (30 seconds for manual transfer of cables and 5 minutes 30 seconds for the system boot sequence).
2. Compatibility has been verified only with a Micro/5 protected premise-control unit using the Micro/5-PXN CPU board and the Micro/PXN-2000 using the Micro/5-PXN board.
3. The system shall be connected to a listed surge suppressor with a maximum marked rating of 330 volts.
4. The installation instructions shall specify signal line transient protection complying with the *Standard for Protectors for Data Communications and Fire Alarm Circuits, UL 479B*, with a maximum marked rating of 50 volts.
5. The equipment shall be installed in a temperature-controlled environment. Twenty-four hours of backup power shall be provided to the HVAC system. The HVAC system shall be capable of maintaining a temperature between 55° and 95° F.
6. The installation instructions shall specify that, in addition to the main power supply and secondary power supply that are required to be provided at the central supervisory station, the system shall be provided with an uninterruptable power supply (UPS) with sufficient capacity to operate the computer equipment for a minimum of 15 minutes. If more than 15 minutes is required for the secondary power supply to supply the UPS input power, the UPS shall be capable of providing input power for at least that amount of time. The UPS shall comply with the *Standard for Uninterruptable Power Supply Equipment, UL 1778*, or the *Standard for Fire Protective Signaling Devices, UL 1481*.
7. A UL-listed printer shall be provided.
8. Signal prioritization shall be set up as follows (from highest to lowest): Alarm, Trouble, Supplementary (such as access control).

9. Polling of a receiving unit must not exceed 200 seconds.
10. Exit and Entry delay must not exceed 60 seconds.
11. Communication between Host and Protected Premise Units must consist of an independent, dedicated, and direct Ethernet line. Communication over LAN and WAN has not been investigated by UL.
12. Any communication failure shall be treated as a compromise of the Grade A proprietary burglar alarm system.
13. Elevator Control, DVR, CCTV, Camera functions, and Keypad Alarm Response have not been evaluated by UL.

NOTES:

Index

A

- Access 2002 on Professional Server 1.4
- access to the GE security business Web site 1.6, 10.3
- API Service 4.21, 5.73, 6.93, 7.93, 9.14, 11.4

B

- backing up
 - Enterprise Server 14.3
 - Enterprise Server Secure Perfect designs, graphics, images, signatures 14.10
 - Enterprise Server Secure Perfect folder 13.4, 14.5, 14.10
 - Enterprise Server SecurePerfect database 14.5
 - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectArchive 14.7
 - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectHistory 14.8
 - Global Edition databases 8.35
 - Professional Server 13.3
 - Professional Server designs, graphics, images, signatures 13.6
 - Professional Server Secure Perfect databases 13.5
- before you begin 1.7

C

- capacities 10.2
 - configurations supported by operating systems 1.5
 - license capacities 10.2
- capture card 1.3, 2.4
- certification requirements
 - UL A.1
- changing computer name
 - in System Properties 11.7
 - SQL Server Client Tools 11.7
 - using SPServer utility 11.7
- Clear TempDB log 14.21
- client
 - defining in the SP system 9.2
- client computers, adding to SP database 4.27, 5.79, 8.40
- client file structure 9.20
- Clustering 3.19, 5.10
- computer name
 - changing server 11.7
- conventions, notational and typographical 1.19

- converting
 - Global Database 8.13
 - upgrading 16.1
- create database 5.7, 5.8, 6.22, 6.31, 6.46, 6.60, 6.75, 7.18, 7.27, 7.43, 7.56, 7.70
- Create SP Database 11.5
- Custom configuration options 5.12, 6.17, 7.14
- Custom installation
 - Enterprise Edition 5.10, 6.13, 7.9
 - Global 6.13, 7.9
 - Professional 4.6, 7.86
 - Professional client 9.8

D

- database
 - creating 11.5
 - creating in Global custom installation 6.22, 6.31, 6.46, 6.60, 6.75, 7.18, 7.27, 7.43, 7.56, 7.70
 - deleting from Enterprise Server 15.6
 - deleting from Professional Server 15.7
 - shrinking 14.20
- Demo Mode 10.8
- DFS 8.2
 - Distributed File System Root 8.3
 - New Replica 8.11
- Dfs
 - Dfs Link 8.8
- Directory File Services (DFS) 8.2
- DirectX 4.2, 4.3, 5.2, 5.3, 5.27, 5.28, 5.40, 5.51, 5.62, 5.63, 5.67, 6.10, 6.11, 6.37, 6.51, 6.52, 6.65, 6.81, 6.85, 6.86, 7.6, 7.7, 7.34, 7.48, 7.49, 7.61, 7.76, 7.81, 9.4, 9.5
- Distributed COM Configuration 2.7, 2.8, 3.8
- documentation 1.20
- domain user name 6.16, 7.13, 7.88
- domain, adding a computer to an existing domain 6.8, 7.4

E

- e-mail accounts
 - setting 11.7
- Enterprise Edition 5.1, 10.2
- Enterprise Manager 3.14, 6.25, 6.34, 6.49, 6.62, 6.78, 7.22, 7.31, 7.46, 7.59,

- 7.74, 8.43, 11.11, 14.2, 14.3, 14.4, 14.5, 14.7, 14.8, 14.11, 14.13, 14.14, 14.15, 14.17, 14.18, 14.20, 14.22
- eZ Edition 4.1, 4.6, 10.2
- eZ/Professional Edition 4.6
- F**
- folders
 - client 9.20
 - server structure 4.22, 5.74, 6.94, 7.94
 - shared 4.23, 5.75, 6.95, 7.95, 9.20
- G**
- Global Edition 6.1, 7.1
 - adding additional clients to the database 8.38
 - benefits 6.2
 - converting the Global Database Server 8.13
 - Custom installation 6.13, 7.9
 - sample configuration 6.3
- guidelines 1.11
- H**
- hard drive space, reclaiming 14.19
- hardware
 - recommended minimum requirements 1.3
- Help system
 - accessing Secure Perfect 11.6
- I**
- Imaging
 - login setup 9.17
 - share permissions 9.19
 - status 9.17
- installation guidelines 1.11
- installing
 - Custom 5.10, 6.13, 7.9
 - Custom client 9.9
 - Custom Professional 4.6, 7.86
 - Custom Server computer 5.10, 6.13, 7.9
 - Global Edition 6.1, 7.1, 8.1
 - Quick Start Guide 1.2
 - Typical 4.5, 5.6
 - Typical client 9.7
- interfaces
 - Visitor System 1.7
 - Web Reporting 1.7
- L**
- license
 - capacities 10.2
 - Demo Mode 10.8
 - entering 10.6
 - first time 10.6
 - following the licensing sequence 10.11
 - if you do not license during the SP
 - Installation sequence 10.10
 - obtaining 10.3
 - program 10.5
 - Summary 10.12
 - What's Next 10.13
- logging off 12.1
- logging on 11.4
- M**
- machine seed key 10.5, 10.6, 10.9, 10.10
- MDAC 4.2, 4.23, 5.2, 5.27, 5.40, 5.51, 5.63, 5.67, 5.75, 6.10, 6.37, 6.38, 6.51, 6.65, 6.81, 6.85, 6.95
- microcontrollers supported 2.2
- minimum requirements 1.3
- monitor settings
 - professional server 2.5, 3.5
 - standard server 3.7
- N**
- network board 2.3, 3.3
- network properties
 - client 2.5, 3.4
- new features 1.7
- non-English operating systems 4.3, 5.3, 5.28, 5.40, 5.51, 5.63, 5.67, 6.11, 6.38, 6.52, 6.65, 6.81, 6.86, 7.6, 7.34, 7.49, 7.61, 7.76, 7.81, 9.5
- notational and typographical conventions 1.19
- O**
- operating system (also see non-English operating systems) 2.4, 3.6
- operating systems and configuration 1.5
- P**
- password
 - default SP 11.7
 - GE security business 10.4
 - sa 3.12
- password account 6.16, 7.13, 7.88
- pinging

-
- First Time License computer 9.2
 - pinging additional client computers 4.25, 5.77, 8.38
 - Professional Edition 4.1, 10.2
 - publication 6.4, 6.5, 7.22, 7.31, 7.46, 7.59, 7.74
- Q**
- Quick Start Guide 1.2
- R**
- reclaiming hard drive space 14.19
 - recovery
 - SP Enterprise system 13.2, 14.2
 - Registry Editor 15.4
 - related documentation 1.20
 - removed sections 1.21
 - removing
 - Secure Perfect 15.2
 - Replication 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, 6.7, 6.26, 6.35, 6.49, 6.63, 6.79, 6.96, 7.3, 7.96, 8.2, 8.6, 8.8, 8.9, 8.12, 8.37
 - restoring
 - Enterprise Server 14.11
 - Enterprise Server Secure Perfect folder 14.19
 - Enterprise Server SecurePerfect database 14.11
 - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectArchive 14.14
 - Enterprise Server SecurePerfectHistory 14.16
 - Global Edition databases 8.36
 - Professional Server 13.6
- S**
- server file structure 4.22, 5.74, 6.94, 7.94
 - server registration 11.11
 - service pack 1.4, 1.5, 1.12, 2.2, 2.4, 3.6, 3.18, 3.19, 4.2, 4.5, 4.9, 4.24, 5.2, 5.3, 5.27, 5.40, 5.51, 5.63, 5.67, 5.76, 6.10, 6.37, 6.51, 6.65, 6.81, 6.85, 6.96, 7.6, 7.34, 7.48, 7.61, 7.76, 7.81, 7.90, 7.96, 9.4, 10.12, 13.2, 14.2
 - services
 - auto start on client 9.13
 - auto start on Server 4.20, 5.72, 6.92, 7.92
 - overview 11.2
 - setup
 - initial steps for Secure Perfect 1.16
 - Windows 2000/ Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition 1.14
 - Windows 2000/Windows XP Professional Server 1.12
 - setup outlines 1.11
 - shared folders 4.23, 5.75, 6.95, 7.95, 9.20
 - shrink archive 14.21
 - shrinking
 - database 14.20
 - shutting down 12.1
 - software
 - recommended minimum requirements 1.3
 - SQL Server
 - installation 3.10
 - removing 15.8
 - removing MSDE 15.9
 - verification of installation and setup 3.13
 - SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3.18
 - SQL Server Agent 3.14, 3.16
 - Subscription 6.5
 - subscription 6.4, 6.5, 7.22, 7.31, 7.46, 7.59, 7.74
 - synchronization 6.2, 6.5, 8.36, 8.37, 8.38
- T**
- training 1.21
 - Typical installation
 - client 9.7
 - Server 4.5, 5.6
- U**
- UL Specifications and Requirements A.2
 - UL-listed A.2
 - uninstalling
 - Global Edition 8.42
 - Secure Perfect 15.1
 - upgrading
 - 5.0 to 6.0 System 16.1
 - Ensuring Success 16.56
 - Global Edition computers 16.2
 - Global Edition Global Database 8.16
 - Global Edition Regional Database 8.26
 - prior to version 3.1 16.2
 - user account 2.6, 3.5
 - defining additional user accounts 11.6
 - user password 2.7, 2.9, 3.6, 3.9
- V**
- Visitor System Interface 1.7
- W**
- What's New 1.7
-

Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 **4.10**
 configuring Launch and Access permissions
 4.14
 configuring local security settings **4.16**
 configuring Windows Firewall **4.10**
 creating new Registry Key **4.17**

Despite rigorous product testing, some problems cannot be detected in advance. Please let us know if you discover any defects in our software. We value your feedback and want to ensure that our software meets your expectations.

Software Defect Report

Date: _____

First Name: _____

Last Name: _____

Company Name: _____

Phone: _____ - _____

e-mail: _____

GE Security Business Partner: _____

Contact: _____

Application Software: _____ Version: _____

HW Model: _____ OS Version: _____

Hardware
Platform:

- ☐ Intel PC
☐ RS/6000

Operating
System:

- ☐ Windows
☐ AIX
☐ Linux

Severity:

- ☐ Data Loss
☐ System Crash
☐ Function Loss
☐ Inconvenience
☐ Cosmetic

Replication:

- ☐ Every Time
☐ Frequently
☐ Intermittent
☐ One Time Only

Problem Description:

(Please be as specific as possible, and explain what you were doing when the problem occurred.)

Please fax this form to:

GE Customer Support

(561) 998-6233

Customer Survey

Title of this book: Secure Perfect 6.1 Installation Manual

My overall rating of this book:

- ☐ Excellent
- ☐ Good
- ☐ Satisfactory
- ☐ Fair
- ☐ Poor

What I liked most about this book:

What I would change, add, delete, etc. in future editions of this book:

Please return this form to:

Attn: Technical Writing
GE Security, Inc.
791 Park of Commerce Blvd., Ste. 100
Boca Raton, FL 33487

or e-mail your comments to:
bctdocs@ge.com

